





As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol  **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

 **Safety Labels** P. 82


A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You **WILL** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You **CAN** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders*

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders*

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

* Not available on all models

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Safe Driving P. 31

For Safe Driving P. 32

Seat Belts P. 36

Airbags P. 49

Instrument Panel P. 83

Indicators P. 84

Gauges and Displays P. 105

Controls P. 121

Clock P. 122

Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 126

Opening and Closing the Windows P. 150

Adjusting the Seats P. 169

Climate Control System* P. 195

Features P. 201

Audio System* P. 202

General Information on the Audio System* P. 276

Driving P. 369

Before Driving P. 370

Towing a Trailer P. 374

When Driving P. 379

Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 413

Refueling P. 415

Maintenance P. 419

Before Performing Maintenance P. 420

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 460

Cooling System*/Climate Control System* Maintenance P. 476

Handling the Unexpected P. 485

Tools P. 486

If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 487

Overheating P. 502

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 504

When You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 528

Information P. 531

Specifications P. 532

Identification Numbers P. 540

Contents

Child Safety P. 59

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 81

Safety Labels P. 82

Opening and Closing the Tailgate P. 144

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 152

Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 183

Security System P. 148

Adjusting the Mirrors P. 168

Heating and Cooling System* P. 192

Audio System Basic Operation P. 209, 227, 247

Customized Features* P. 280

Audio Error Messages* P. 274

Hands-Free Telephone System P. 300, 327, 350

Braking P. 403

Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions P. 418

Parking Your Vehicle P. 408

Maintenance Schedule P. 423

Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 466

Cleaning P. 478

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 430

Battery P. 471

Accessories and Modifications P. 483

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 447

Remote Transmitter Care P. 473

Engine Does Not Start P. 494

Fuses P. 507

Jump Starting P. 498

Emergency Towing P. 525

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 501

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 542

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 31

Instrument Panel P. 83

Controls P. 121

Features P. 201

Driving P. 369

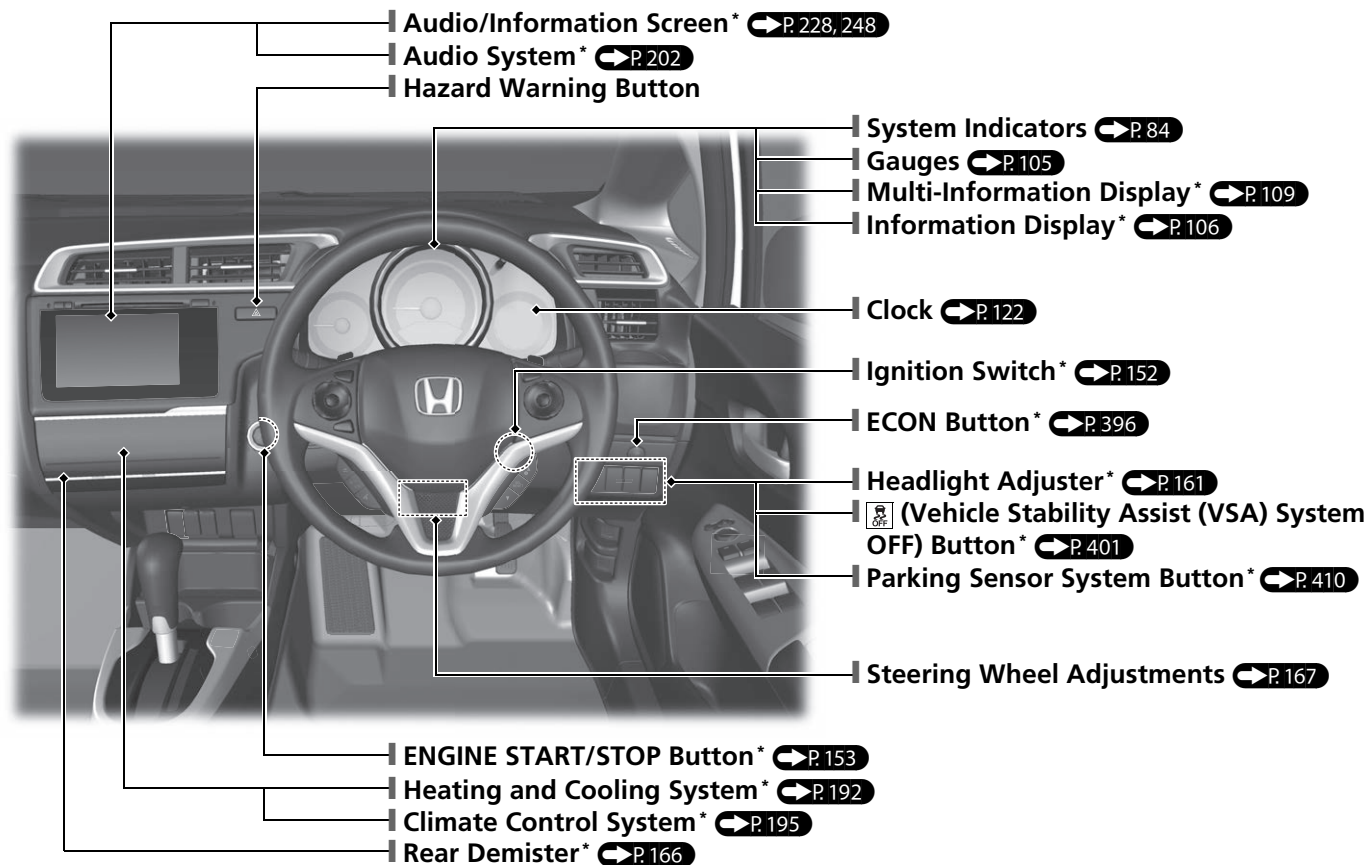
Maintenance P. 419

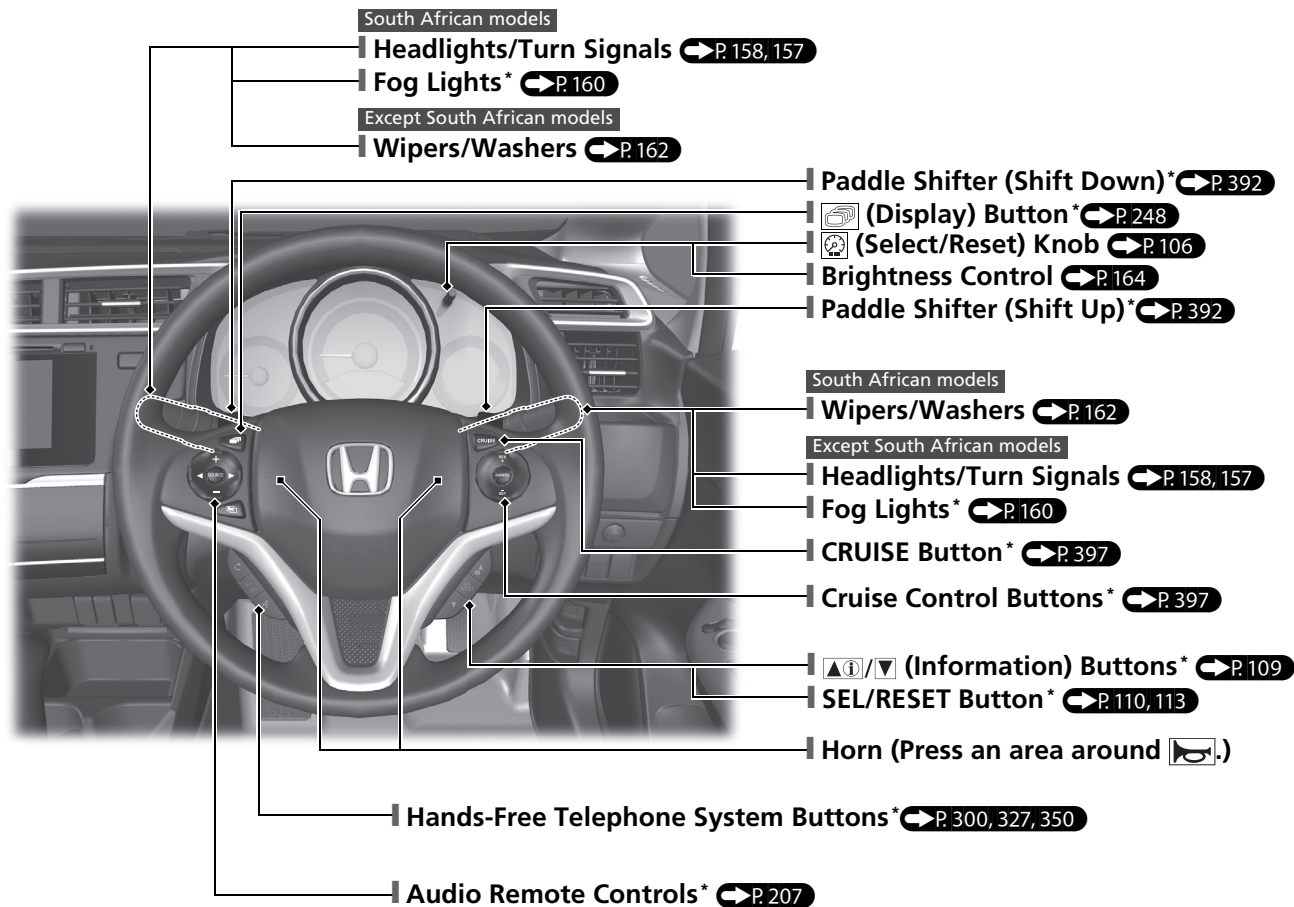
Handling the Unexpected P. 485

Information P. 531

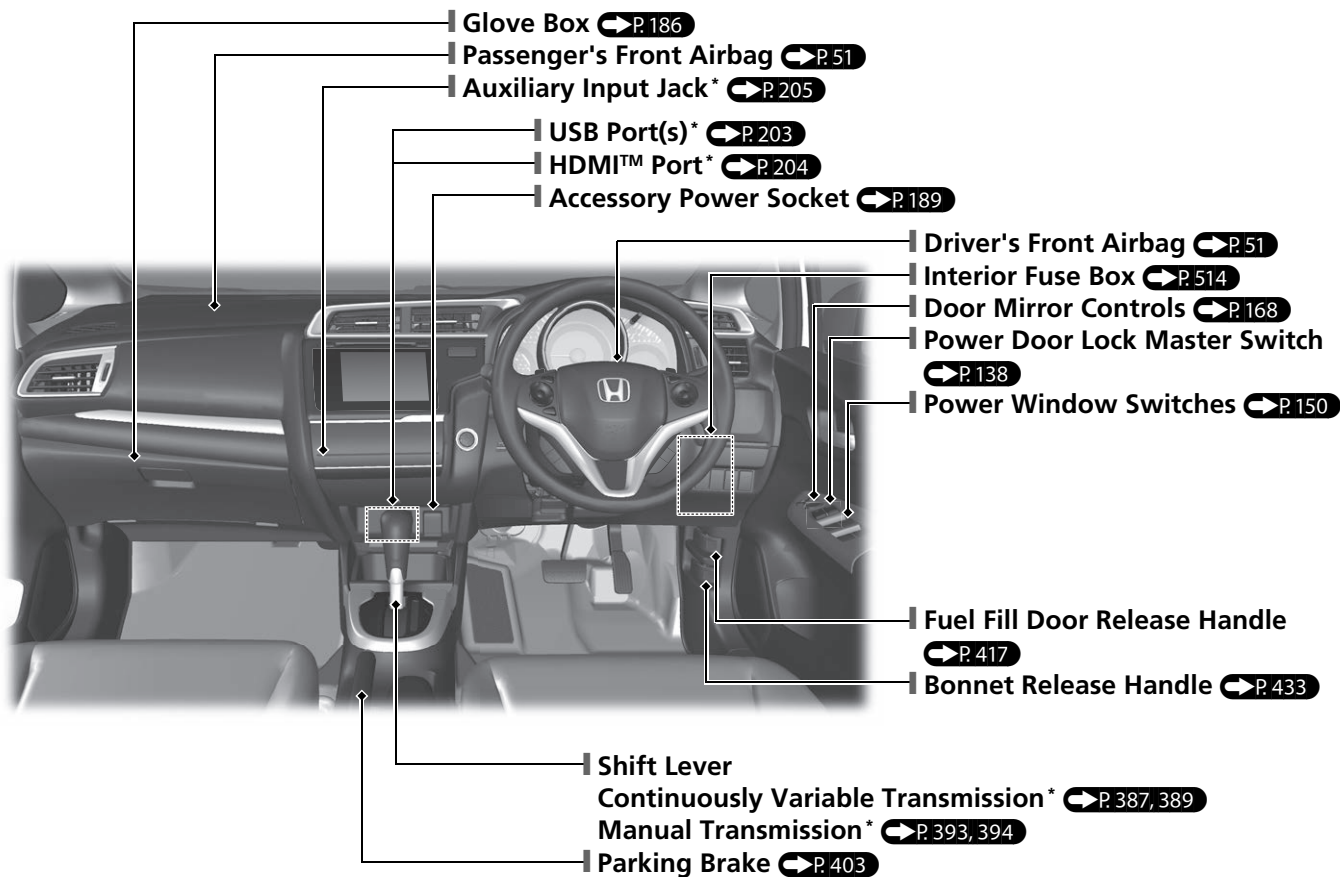
Index P. 543

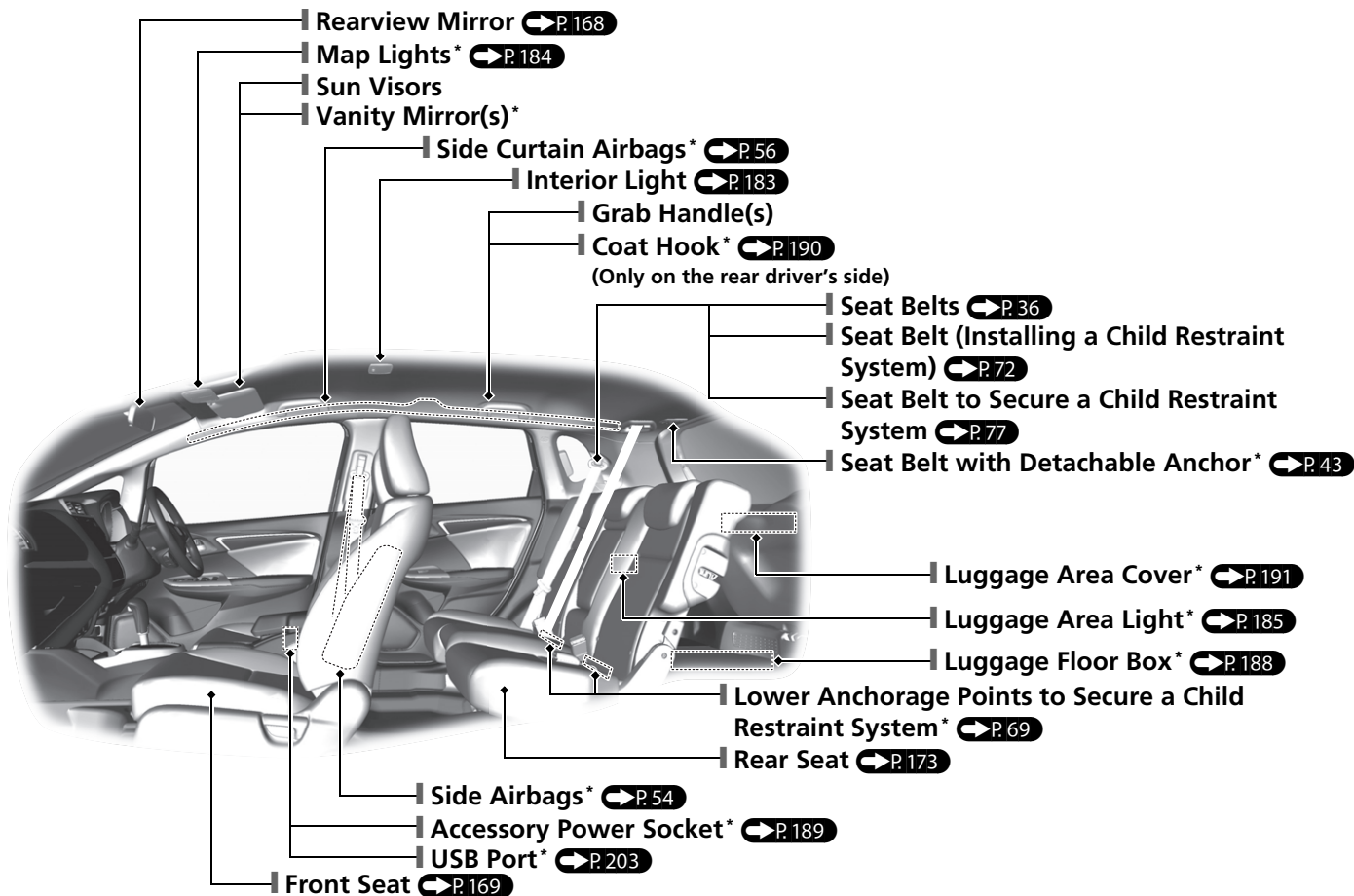
Visual Index



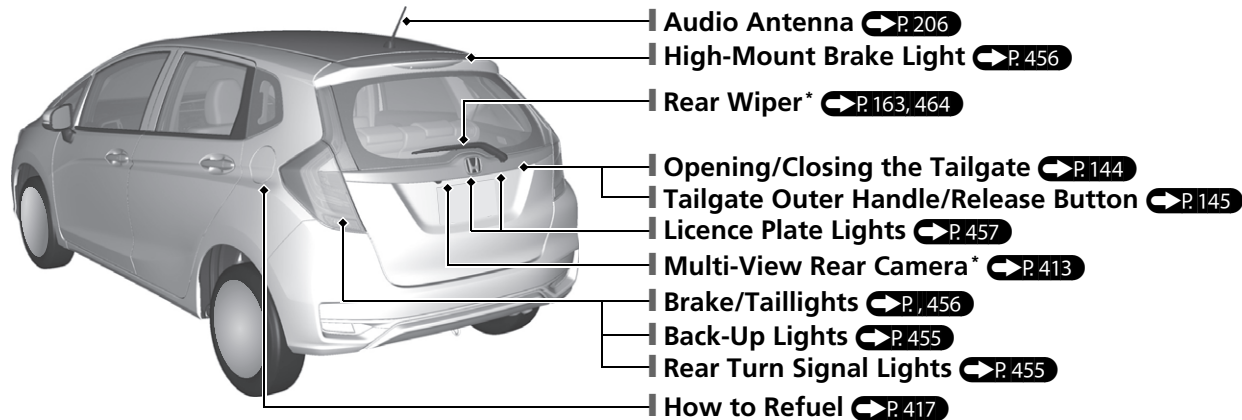
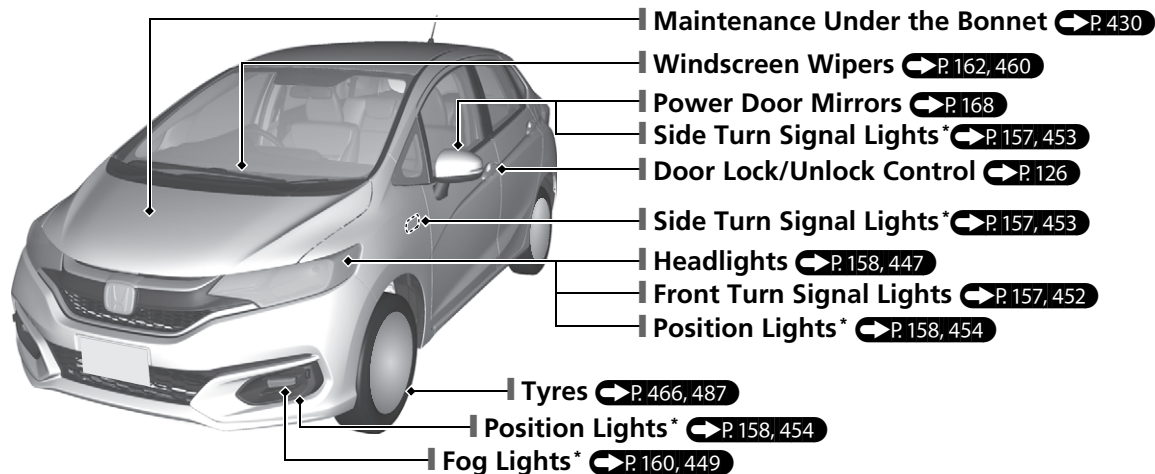


Visual Index





Visual Index

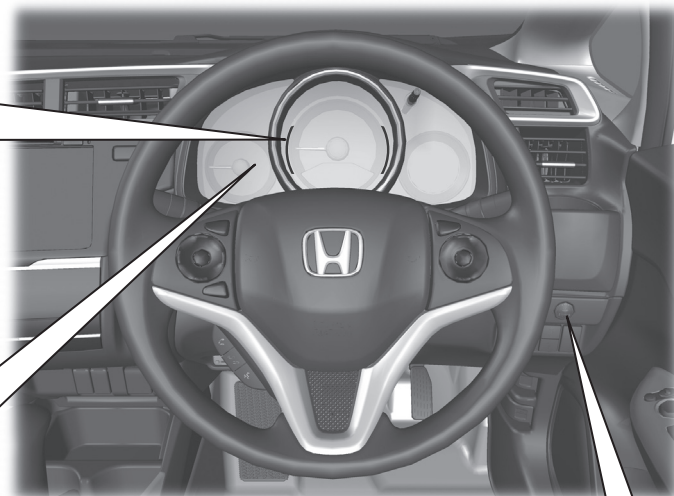


Eco Assist System*

Ambient Meter

- The colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.

ECON Mode Indicator* ➡ P.96
Comes on when ECON button is pressed.



ECON Button* ➡ P.396
Helps to maximise fuel economy.



Safe Driving ➡ P.31

Before Driving Checklist ➡ P.35

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Seat Belts ➡ P.36

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Exhaust Gas Hazard ➡ P.81

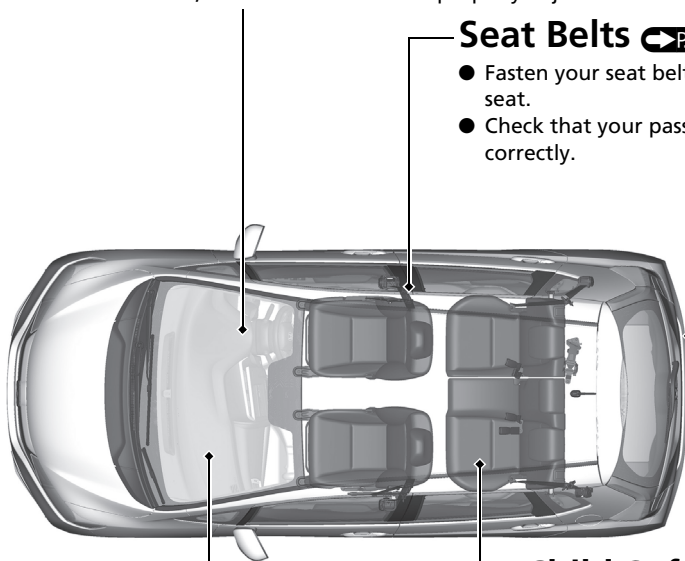
- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Child Safety ➡ P.59

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

Airbags ➡ P.49

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.















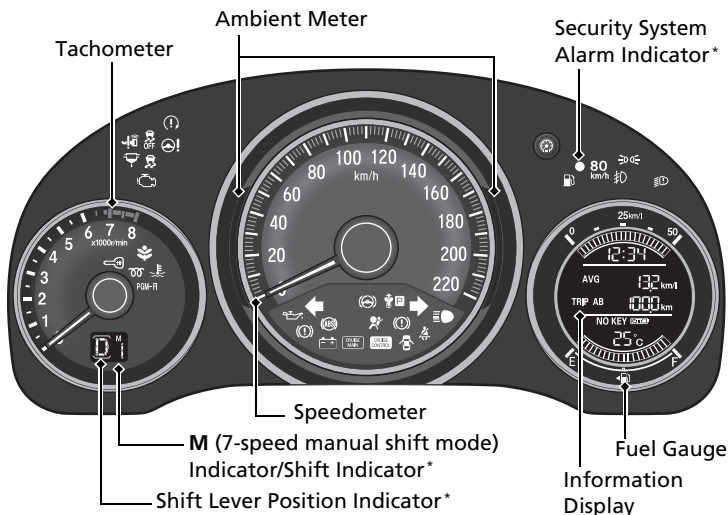
Instrument Panel

Gauges  / Information Display*  / Multi-Information Display*  / System Indicators 



Models with information display

System Indicators




-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  Charging System Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator*
-  VSA OFF Indicator*
-  Immobilizer System Indicator
-  Keyless Access System Indicator*
-  Starter System Indicator*
-  Shift to Park Indicator*
-  Rotate Wheel Indicator*
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  High Temperature Indicator (Red)















Lights Indicators

-  Lights On Indicator
-  High Beam Indicator
-  Fog Light Indicator*
-  Light Control Indicator*

System Indicators

-  Glow Plugs Indicator*
-  PGM-FI PGM-FI Indicator*
-  Water in Fuel Indicator*












System Indicators

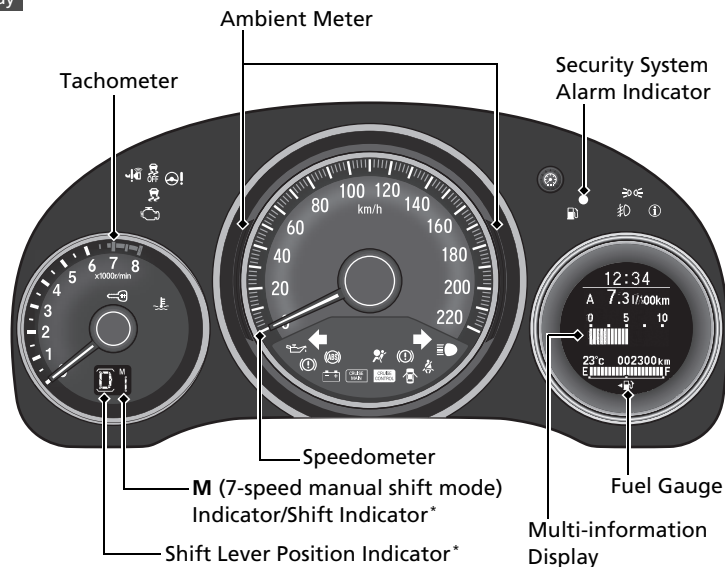
-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  Brake System Indicator (Amber)
-  Door and Tailgate Open Indicator
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  CRUISE MAIN Indicator*
-  CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*
-  ECON Mode Indicator*
-  Speed Alarm Indicator*

* Not available on all models




Models with multi-information display

System Indicators











-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  Charging System Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator
-  VSA OFF Indicator
-  Immobilizer System Indicator
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  High Temperature Indicator (Red)
-  Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)
-  System Message Indicator
-  Keyless Access System Indicator



Lights Indicators

-  Lights On Indicator
-  High Beam Indicator
-  Fog Light Indicator*

System Indicators

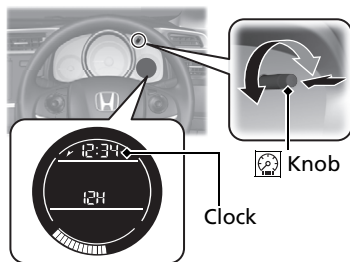
-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  Brake System Indicator (Amber)
-  Door and Tailgate Open Indicator
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  CRUISE MAIN Indicator*
-  CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*

Controls ➡ P.121

Clock ➡ P.122

Audioless models

Models with monochrome audio system with CD player



- 1 Press the (Select/Reset) knob repeatedly to show the clock adjustment display.
▶ The displayed time begins flashing.
- 2 Turn the knob to adjust the time.
▶ As you increase or decrease the minutes, the hour moves forward or backward.
- 3 Press the knob again to set the time.

Models with display audio system/colour audio system/monochrome audio system without CD player

The clock in the information display*/multi-information display* is automatically updated along with the audio system's clock display.

Models with monochrome audio system without CD player








- 1 Press the **MENU** button to select the menu mode.
- 2 Rotate to select **Clock Adjustment**. The display time begins flashing.
- 3 Rotate to select 12/24 hour mode, hour, or minute, then press .
- 4 Rotate to make the adjustment.
- 5 Press to enter your selection.
- 6 Rotate to select **set**, then press to complete clock adjustment.

These indications are used to show how to operate the **LIST/SEL** (Selector) knob.

- Rotate to select.
- Press to enter.

Models with colour audio system






- 1 Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- 2 Rotate  to change hour, then press .
- 3 Rotate  to change minute, then press .
- 4 Select **SET**, then press .

These indications are used to show how to operate the **LIST/SELECT** (Selector) knob.

- Rotate  to select.
- Press  to enter.

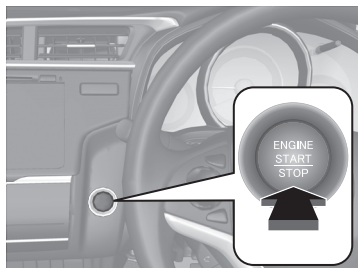
Models with display audio system



- 1 Select the  (HOME) icon, then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **System, Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
- 3 Touch the  /  icon to adjust the numbers up or down.
- 4 Select **OK**.

ENGINE START/STOP Button* ➔ P.153

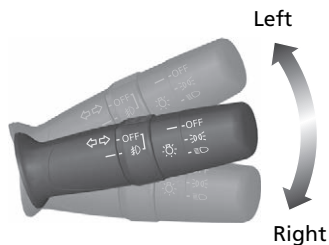
Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



Turn Signals ➔ P.157

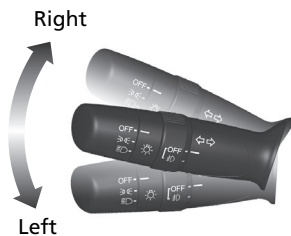
Except South African models

Turn Signal Control Lever



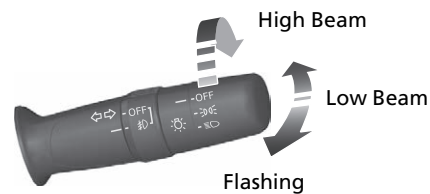
South African models

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights ➔ P.158

Light Control Switches

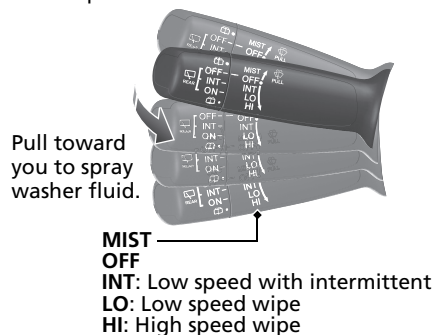


Wipers and Washers

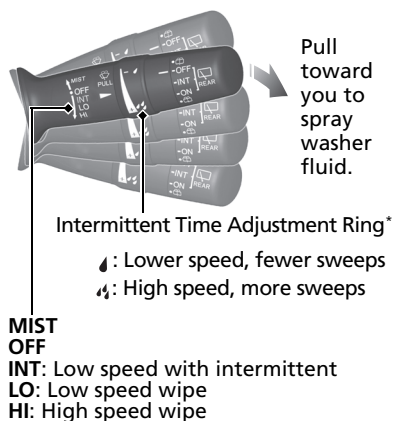
➔ P.162

Except South African models

Wiper/Washer Control Lever



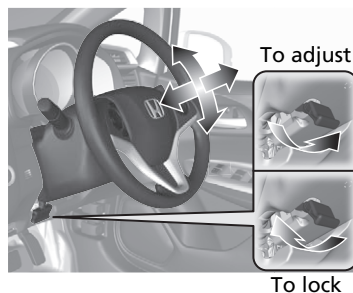
South African models



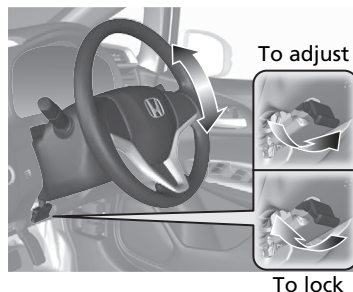
Steering Wheel ➔ P.167

- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.

Height and Distance Adjustment Type*



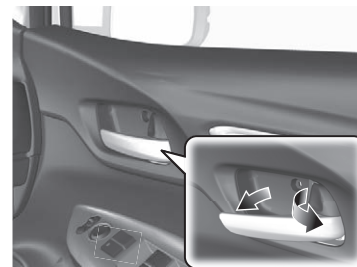
Height Adjustment Type*



Unlocking the Driver's Door from the Inside

➔ P.138

- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it in one motion.

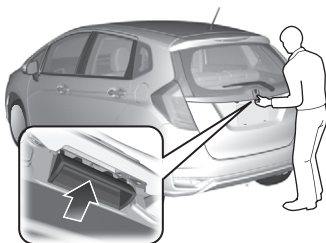


- Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

South African models

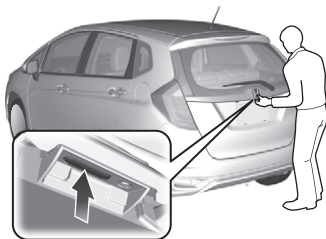
The front passenger's door also unlocks and opens in one motion.

Tailgate ➞ P.144



Models without keyless access system

- With all the doors unlocked, pull the tailgate outer handle, and lift up to open it.




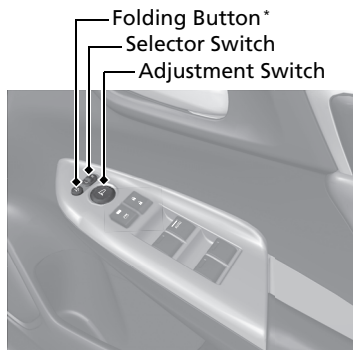
Models with keyless access system

- With all the doors unlocked, press the tailgate release button on the tailgate to open it.
- Press the tailgate release button to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless access remote.


Power Door Mirrors

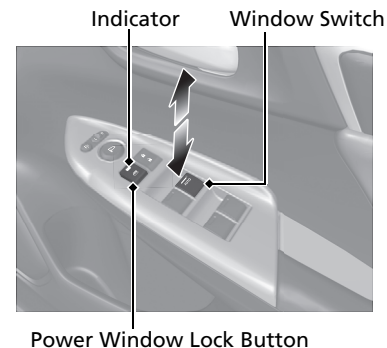
➞ P.168

- With the ignition switch in ON ^{*1}, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button* to fold in and out the door mirrors.









Power Windows ➞ P.150

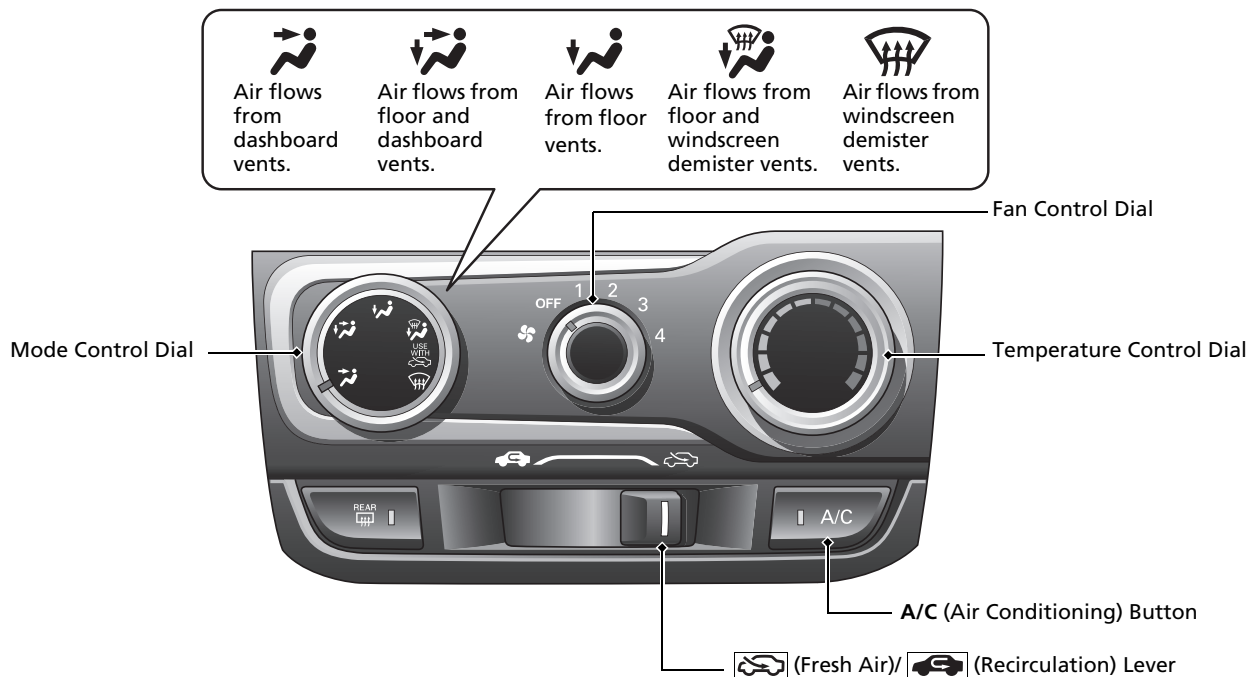
- With the ignition switch in ON ^{*1}, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



^{*1}: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

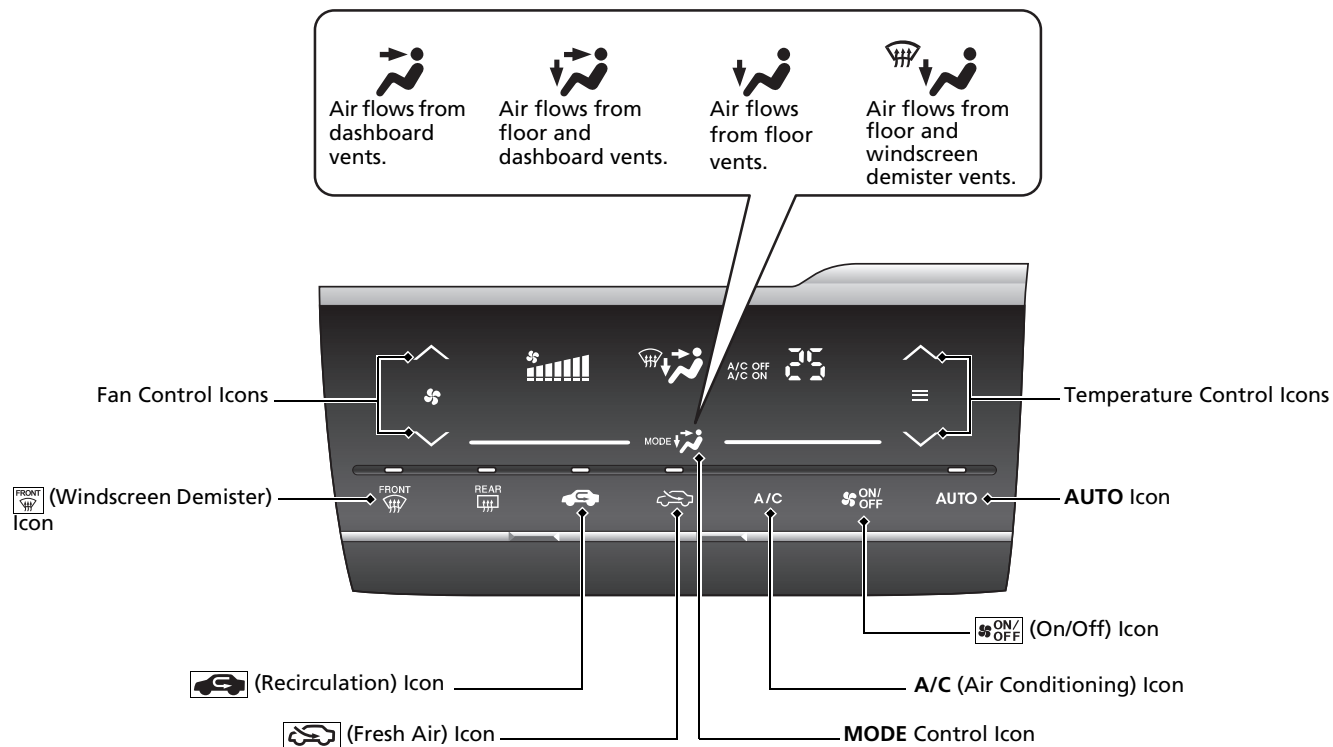
Heating and Cooling System* ➔ P.192

- Rotate the fan control dial to adjust the fan speed.
- Rotate the mode control dial ( /  /  /  / ) to select the vents air flows from.
- Rotate the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature.
- Rotate the fan control dial to **OFF** to turn the system off.
- Rotate the mode control dial to  to defrost the windscreen.



Climate Control System* ➔ P.195

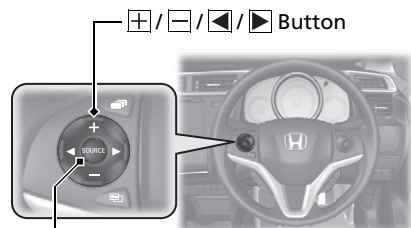
- Select the **AUTO** icon to activate the climate control system.
- Select the **ON/OFF** icon to turn the system on or off.
- Select the **FRONT** icon to defrost the windscreen.





Features P. 201

Audio Remote Controls*


 P. 207

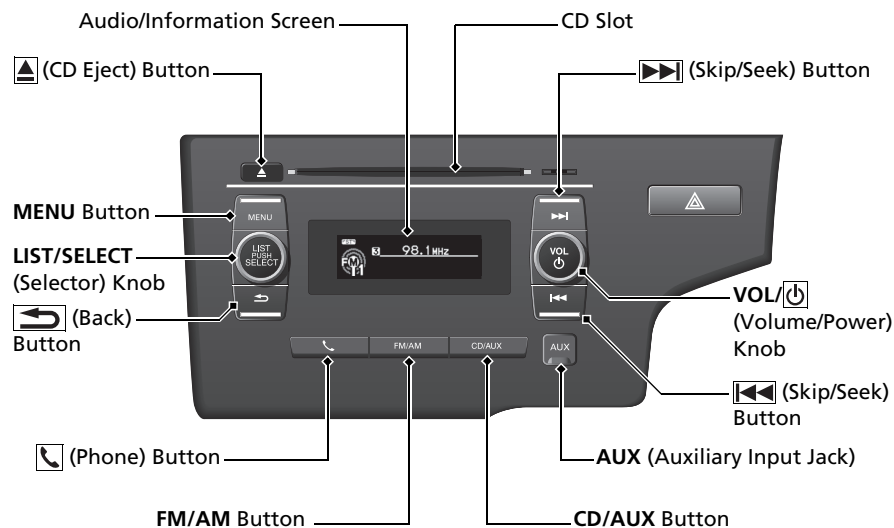


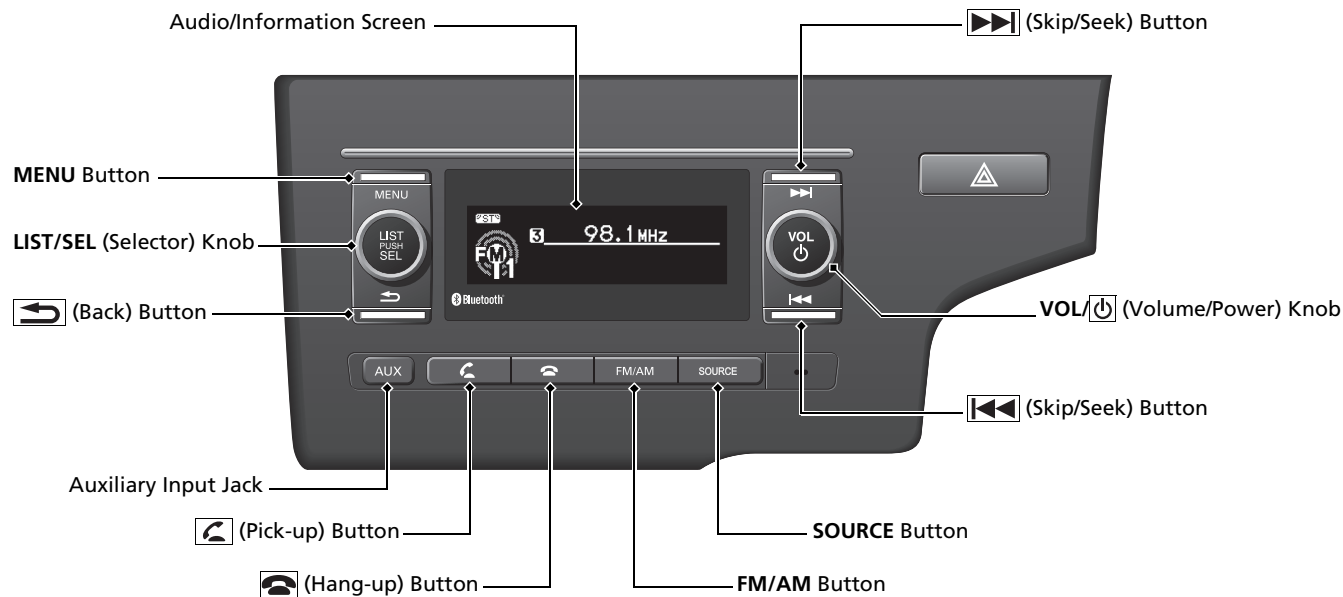
SOURCE Button

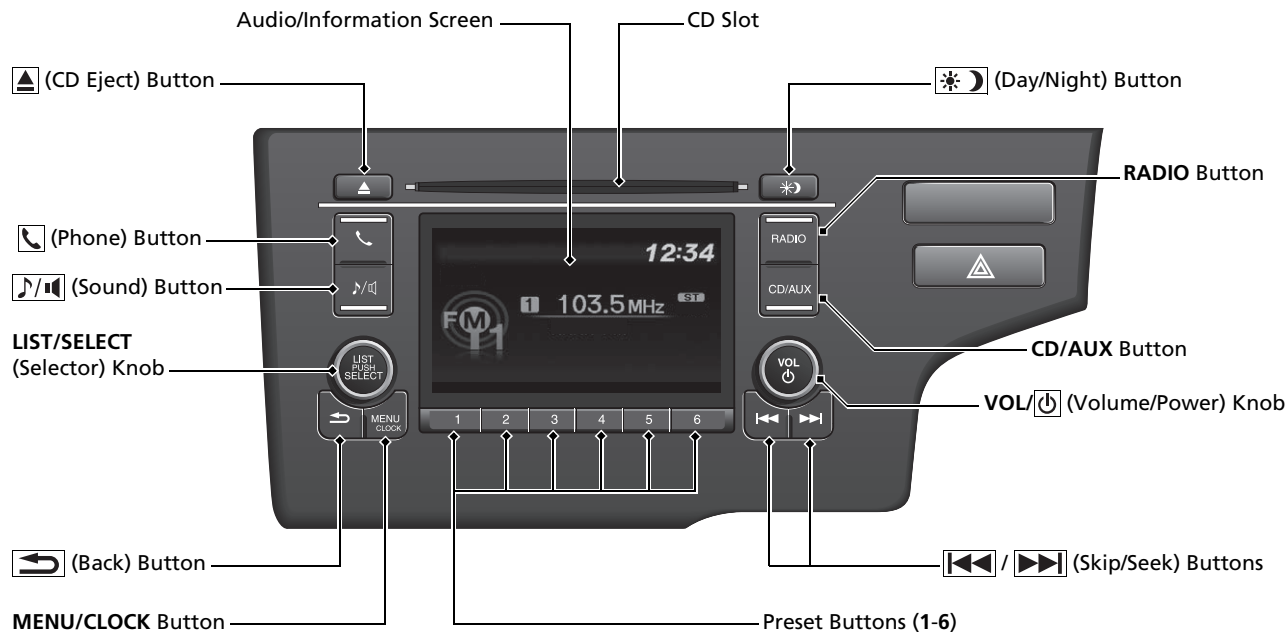
-  Button
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **SOURCE** Button
Press to change the audio mode: FM/AM/CD*/USB/iPod/Bluetooth® Audio/Apps*/AUX*/AUX HDMI™*.
-  Button
Radio: Press to change the preset station.
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.
CD*/USB device:
Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
Press and hold to change a folder.

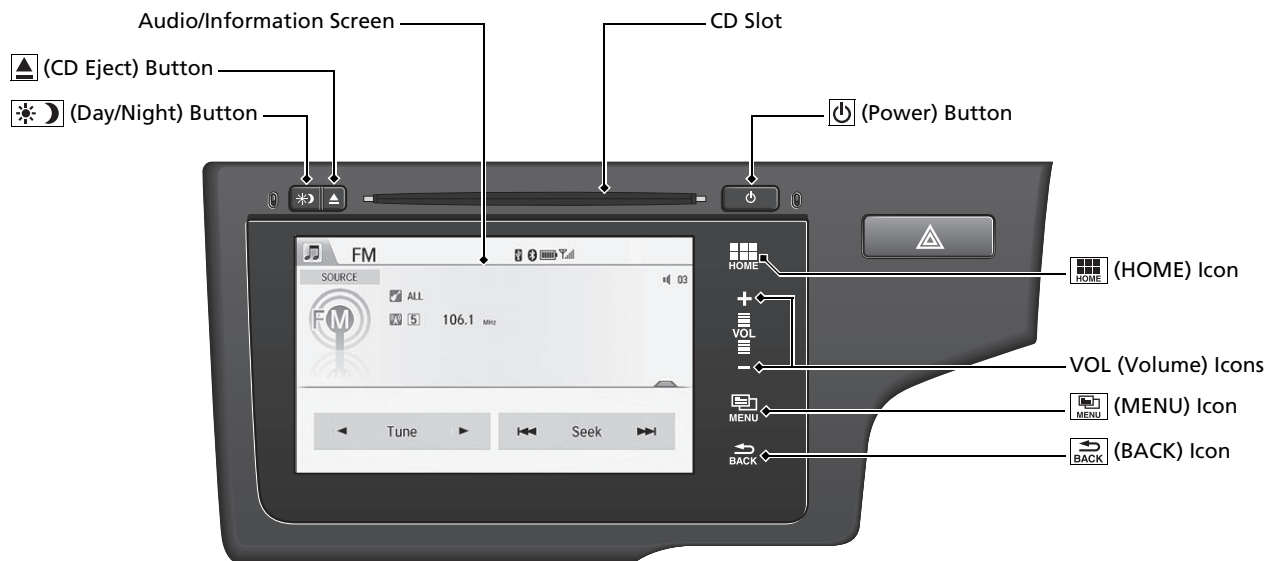
Audio System* P. 209, 227, 247

Models with monochrome audio system with CD player  P. 209









Driving

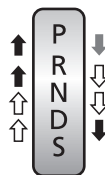
Manual Transmission*

Continuously Variable Transmission*

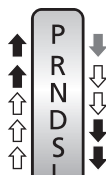
- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Shifting

Models with
paddle shifter



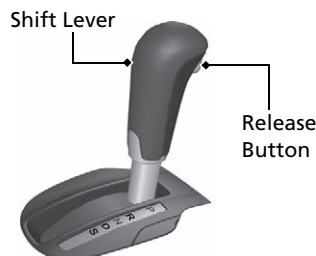
Models without
paddle shifter



Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of **P**.

Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.

Press the release button to move the shift lever.



Models without paddle shifter

S

Drive (S)

- Better acceleration
- Used to increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills

L

Low

- Used to further increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills

P

Park

Turn off or start the engine. Transmission is locked.

R

Reverse

Used when reversing.

N

Neutral

Transmission is not locked.

D

Drive

Normal driving.
On models with paddle shifter, 7-speed mode can be used temporarily.

Models with paddle shifter

S

Drive (S)

7-speed manual shift mode can be used.

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode*

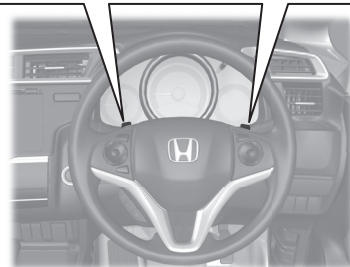
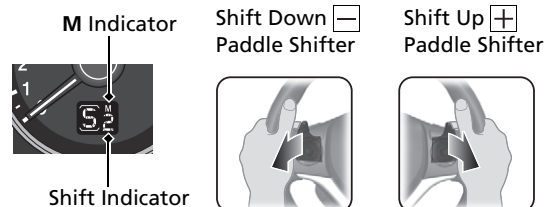
- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

When the shift lever is in **S**

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

When the shift lever is in **D**

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.



VSA On and Off* ➡ P.401

- The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering, and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold button until you hear a beep.

Cruise Control* ➡ P.397

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press the **-/SET** button when the vehicle speed is above 40 km/h.

Refueling ➡ P.415

Petrol models

Fuel recommendation:

Indonesian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher recommended

Models for other countries

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

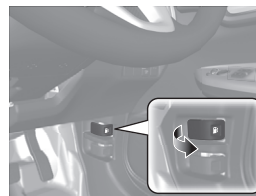
Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

Diesel models

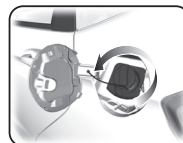
Fuel recommendation: Automotive Diesel Fuel

Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

- 1 Pull the fuel fill door release handle.



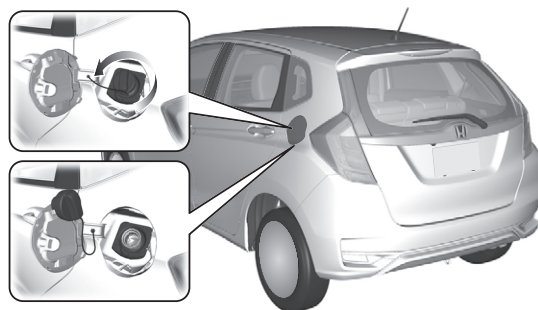
- 2 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.



- 3 Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.



- 4 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.

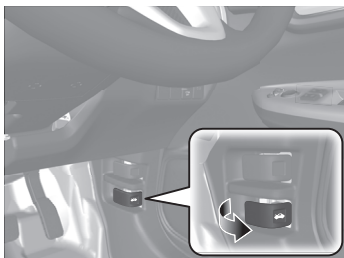


Maintenance [P. 419](#)

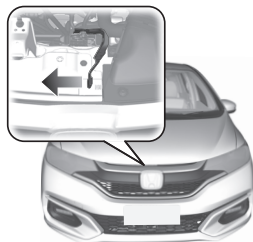
Under the Bonnet [P. 430](#)

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake/clutch* fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

- 1** Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



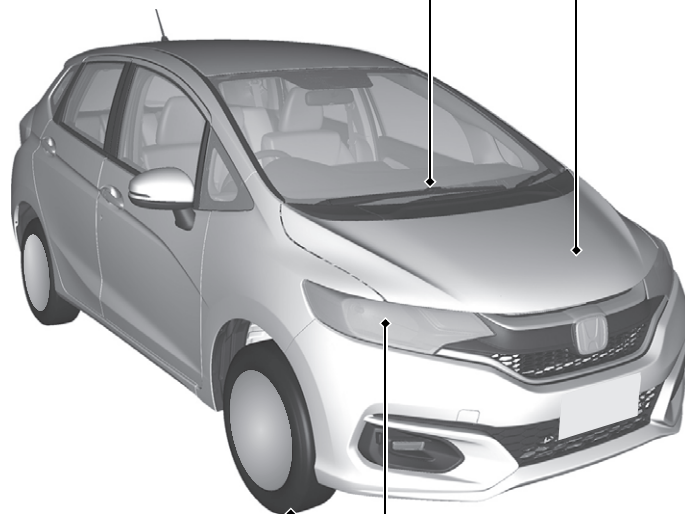
- 2** Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3** When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades [P. 460](#)

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen.



Tyres [P. 466](#)

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights [P. 447](#)

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected ➡ P.485

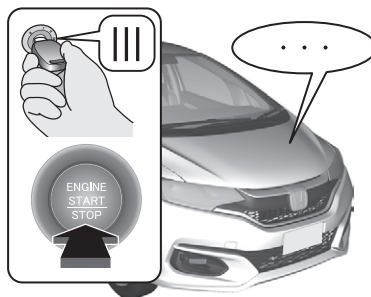
Flat Tyre ➡ P.487

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the luggage area.



Engine Won't Start ➡ P.494

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Overheating ➡ P.502

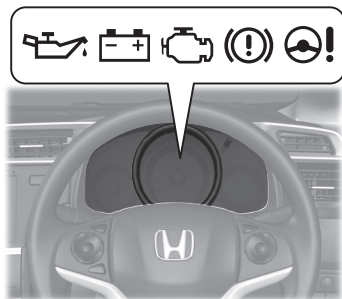
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



Indicators Come On

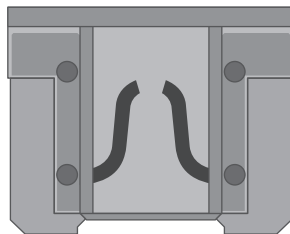
➡ P.504

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



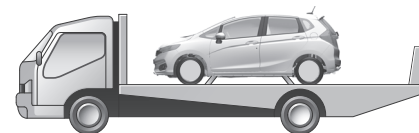
Blown Fuse ➡ P.507

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing ➡ P.525

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q

Models without keyless access system

The ignition switch does not turn from **0** to **I**.
Why?

Models with keyless access system

The power mode does not change from **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)** to **ACCESSORY**.
Why?

A

• The steering wheel may be locked.

Models without keyless access system

• Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.

Models with keyless access system

• Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



Q

Models without keyless access system

The ignition switch does not turn from **I** to **0** and I cannot remove the key.
Why?

Models with keyless access system

The power mode does not change from **ACCESSORY** to **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**.
Why?

A

The shift lever should be moved to **P**.



Q

Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

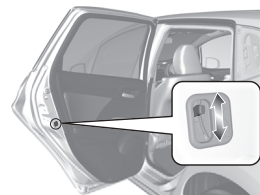
A

This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➡ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ➡ P.405

Q The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, push the lever to the unlock position.



Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.

Models without keyless access system

- The key is left in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

A The beeper sounds when:

- Driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake lever is not fully released.

Q Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q **Indonesian models**
Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 88 or lower on this vehicle?

A Unleaded petrol with a research octane number of 91 or higher is recommended.
Use of a lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of a petrol with a research octane less than 88 can lead to engine damage.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	32
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	34
Safety Checklist	35

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts	36
Fastening a Seat Belt	41
Seat Belt Inspection.....	47
Anchorage Points.....	48

Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	49
Types of Airbags	51
Front Airbags (SRS)	51
Side Airbags*	54
Side Curtain Airbags*	56
Airbag System Indicators.....	57
Airbag Care	58

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers	59
Safety of Infants and Small Children	63
Safety of Larger Children	78

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	81
--------------------------	----

Safety Labels

Label Locations	82
-----------------------	----

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

⌘ Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

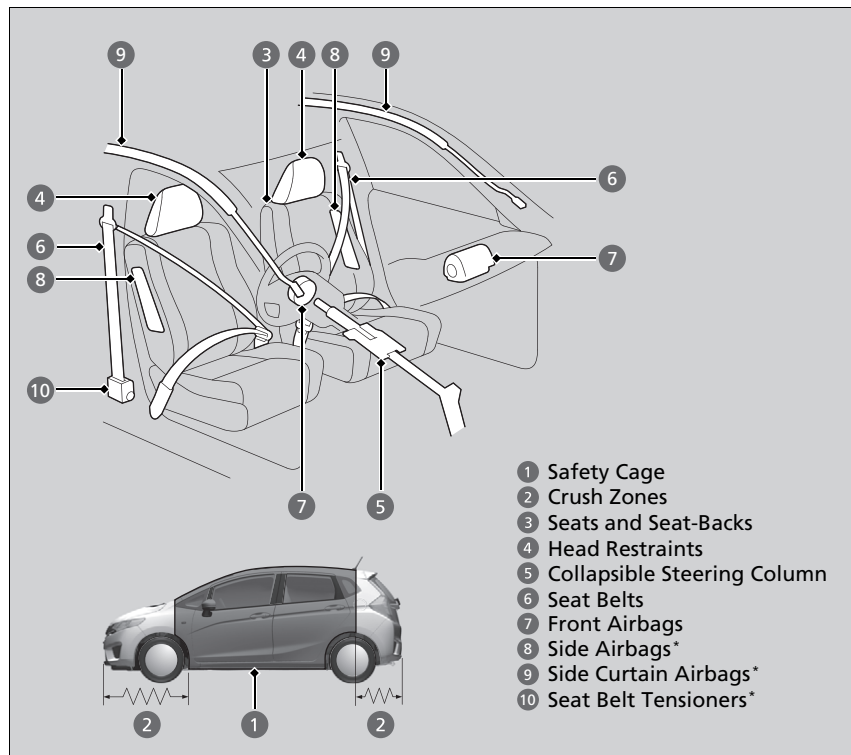
■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

►► Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

➤ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 169

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

➤ **Head Restraints** P. 178

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

➤ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 41

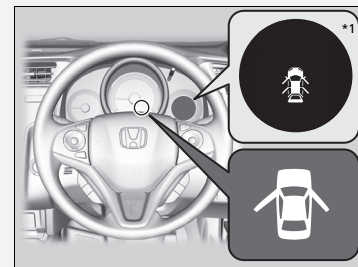
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.

➤ **Child Safety** P. 59

➤ Safety Checklist

If the door and tailgate open indicator is on, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the indicator goes off.

➤ **Door and Tailgate Open Indicator** P. 89



*1: Models with multi-information display

About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

The front and rear outer/centre* seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

The rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child restraint systems.

➤ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 72

►► About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Models with lap seat belt

Your vehicle's rear centre seat is equipped with the lap seat belt. This seat belt does not come with an emergency locking retractor.

* Not available on all models

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

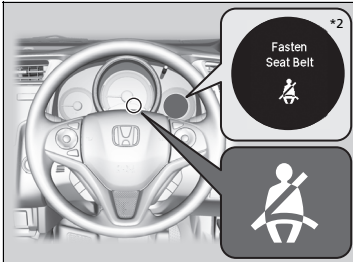
- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

►► About Your Seat Belts


Models with lockable retractor seat belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

Seat Belt Reminder



The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger* or both to fasten their seat belts.

If the ignition switch is turned to ON ^{*1} and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.


*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display

* Not available on all models

Seat Belt Reminder

Models with front passenger's seat belt reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON ^{*1}.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

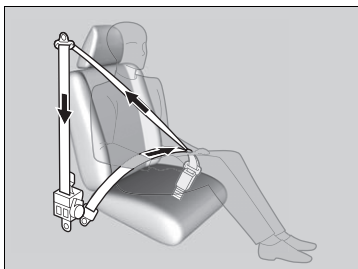
- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners*

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



►► Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners*

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

Models with side curtain airbags

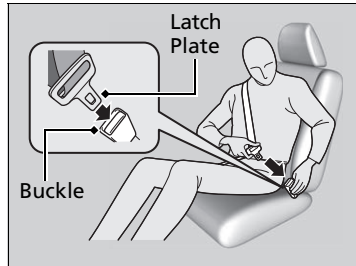
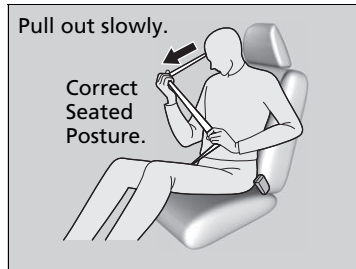
During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

Fastening a Seat Belt

■ Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

► **Adjusting the Seats** P. 169



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.

2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

► Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

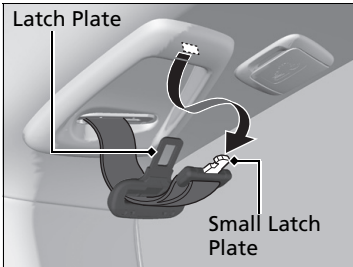
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

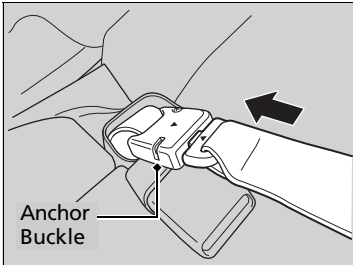


3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

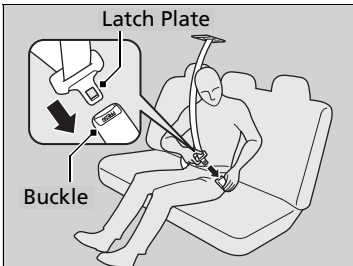
■ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor*



1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchor buckle.



3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

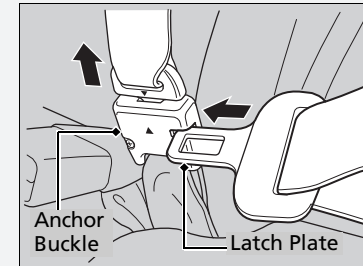
►► Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor*

⚠ WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

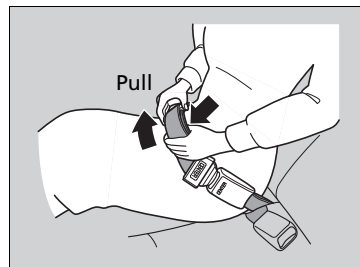
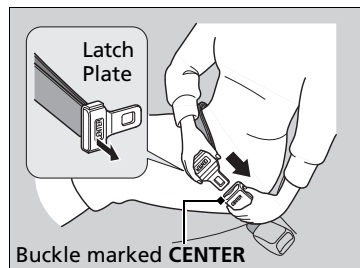
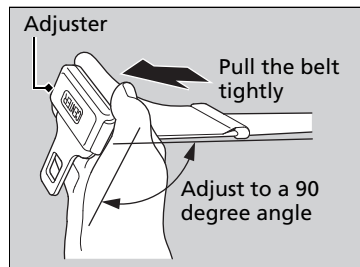
Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.



* Not available on all models

Lap Belt*



1. Hold the latch plate perpendicular to the tightly-pulled belt. The belt length becomes adjustable.

2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle.

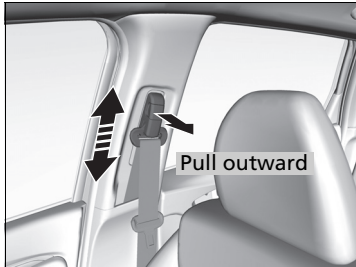
► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

3. Position the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up the belt so it fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack.

■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor*

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the release outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

▣ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor*

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

* Not available on all models

■ Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

► Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

▶▶ Seat Belt Inspection

WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

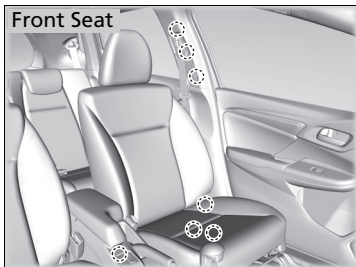
Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

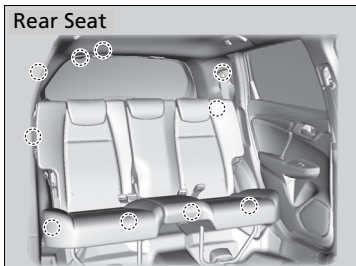
WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Anchorage Points

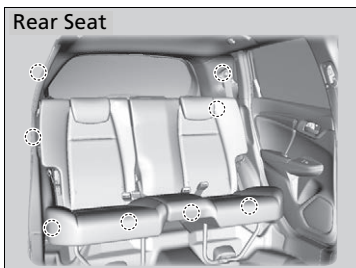


When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



Models with three lap/shoulder seat belts

The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.



Models with lap seat belt

The outer positions of the rear seat have lap/shoulder belts.

The centre position has a lap belt.

Airbag System Components

The front, front side*, and side curtain* airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS**


AIRBAG.

Models with side airbags

- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG.**

Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG.**

- An electronic control unit that, when the ignition switch is ON *¹, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, rollover sensor, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.

- Automatic front seat belt tensioners*.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side* impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, and sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

► Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags**: Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags***: Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags***: Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.


Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON *1.

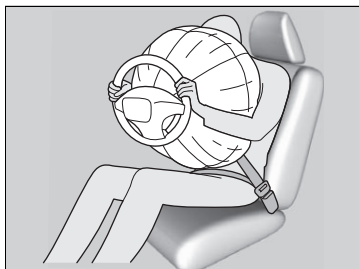
After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags* and side curtain airbags* have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags* offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

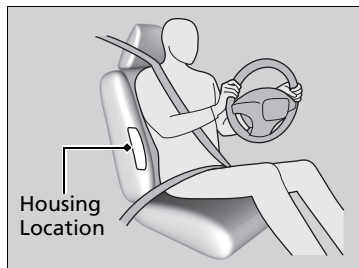
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

* Not available on all models

Side Airbags*

The side airbags help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



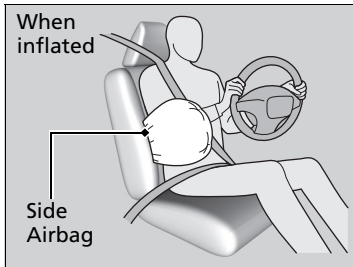
The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Side Airbags*

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

▣ Side Airbags*

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.

Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

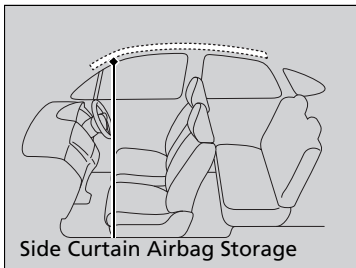
Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

* Not available on all models

Side Curtain Airbags*

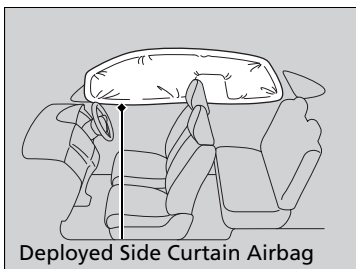
The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

►► Side Curtain Airbags*

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

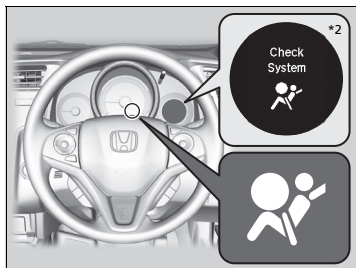
Models with coat hook

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the multi-information display*.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON *1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

▶▶ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display

* Not available on all models

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

» Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

Malaysian and Indian models

Child restraint systems must meet UN Regulation No. 44 or the regulations of the subject countries.

 **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 66

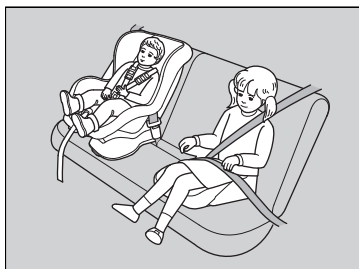
Except Malaysian and Indian models

We recommend that child restraint systems meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129*, or the regulations of the subject countries.

 **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 66

* Not available on all models

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag* can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

⚠ WARNING

⚠ AIRBAG



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

For Some types

⚠ WARNING



Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.
DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY can occur.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor. Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

► **Safety Labels** P. 82

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

For some types

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

WARNING



Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

 **Opening/Closing the Power Windows P. 150**

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

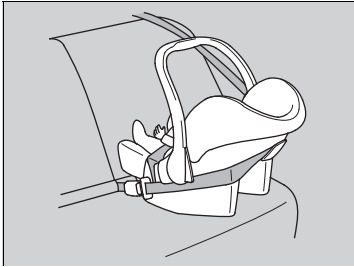
Models with lockable retractor seat belts

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.
- Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

►► Protecting Infants

⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:

⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

► Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

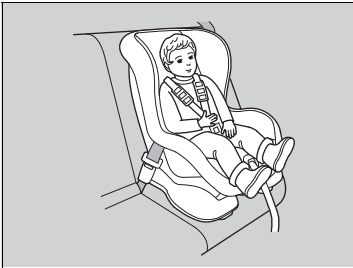
If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

►► Protecting Smaller Children

⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage* compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether* for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISO FIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129*, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

►► Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage*-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage*-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

■ The Recommended Child Restraint System for Malaysia

Various types of child restraint systems are available. Not all types are suitable for your vehicle. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used on each seating position.

Mass group		Seating position		
		Front passenger	Rear passenger	
			Rear Left/Right side	Rear centre
group 0	Up to 10 kg	X	U	U
group 0+	Up to 13 kg	X	U or IL (Honda BABY SAFE ISOFIX)	U
group I	9 kg to 18 kg	UF ^{*1,*2}	U or IUF (Size class A, B1, B)	U
group II	15 kg to 25 kg	UF ^{*1,*2}	U	U
group III	22 kg to 36 kg	UF ^{*1,*2}	U	U

U: Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for front facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in this list.

IUF: Suitable for front facing ISOFIX child restraint system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

*1: Adjust the seat-back angle to the most upright position (front most lock position).

*2: Move the front seat to its rearmost position.

A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer’s instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

The particular child restraints in the table are Honda Genuine Parts. They are available from your dealer.

For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.

■ The Recommended Child Restraint System for India

Various types of child restraint systems are available. Not all types are suitable for your vehicle. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used on each seating position.

Mass group		Seating position		
		Front passenger	Rear passenger	
			Rear Left/Right side	Rear centre
group 0	Up to 10 kg	X	U	X
group 0+	Up to 13 kg	X	U	X
group I	9 kg to 18 kg	UF*1	U	X
group II	15 kg to 25 kg	UF*1	U	X
group III	22 kg to 36 kg	UF*1	U	X

U: Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for front facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

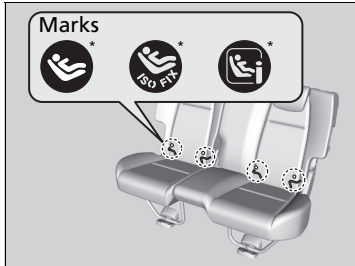
*1: Adjust the seat-back angle to the upright position (front most lock position).

A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer's instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.

■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System *

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two rear outer seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



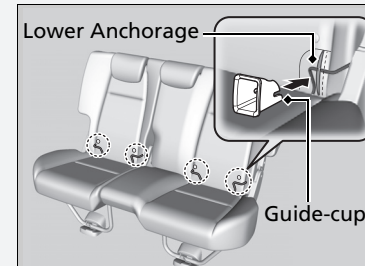
1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.
2. Make sure to lock the seat-back in the upright position.
3. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.

► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System *

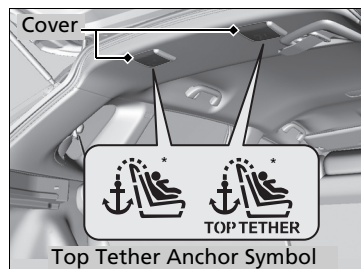
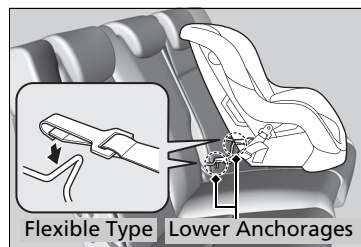
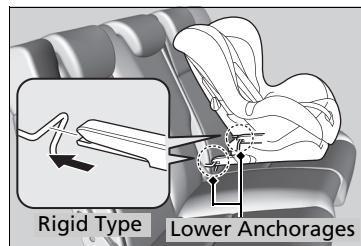
⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint system to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



* Not available on all models



4. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

► When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

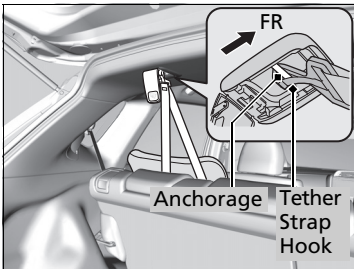
5. Open the anchorage cover.
6. Route the tether strap over the seat-back. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
7. Secure the tether strap hook onto the anchorage.
8. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

►► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System *

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

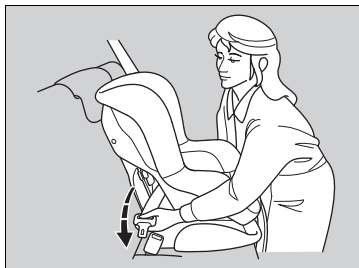
WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.



9. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
10. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor* is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

* Not available on all models

■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



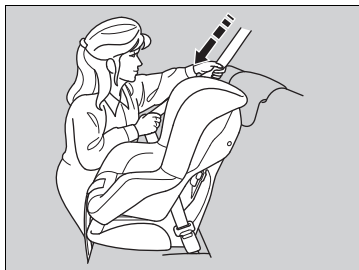
1. Make sure to lock the seat-back in the upright position.
2. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.

All models

3. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
4. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
 - Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
5. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.

Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

6. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.

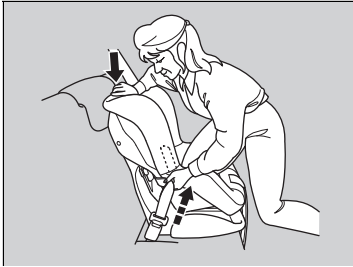


►► Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To check if the lap/shoulder belt is equipped with the lockable retractor, pull the lap part of the lap/shoulder belt all the way out, let the belt retract slowly, then pull the belt again gently. If the belt is locked, the belt is equipped with the lockable retractor.

The seat belt with a lockable retractor has a label as shown in the image.





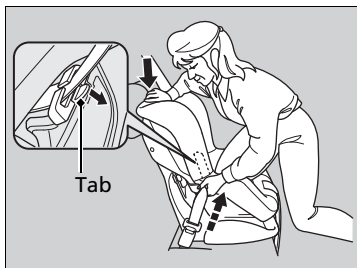
7. Let the seat belt completely wind up into the retractor, then try to pull it out to make sure the retractor is locked.
 - If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 4 – 6.
8. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
 - When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.

✕ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

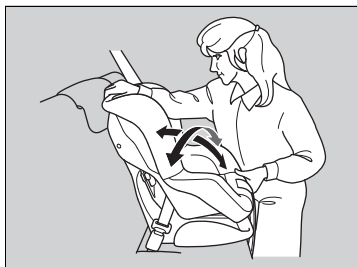
Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

After the child restraint system is installed properly, check if the lockable retractor is activated and the belt is fully retracted and locked. To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.



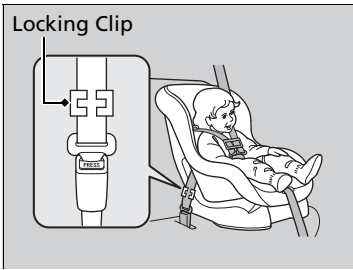
Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor

- 6.** Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
- 7.** Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
 - When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
- 8.** Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
 - While pulling down the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.



All models

- 9.** Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- 10.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 to 5, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

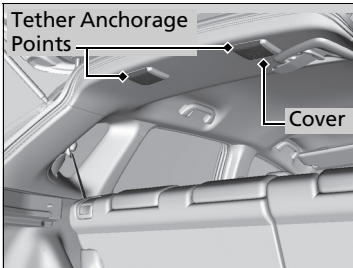
- 6.** Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate.
Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate.
Unbuckle the seat belt.
- 7.** Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
- 8.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 9 and 10.

■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap Belt*



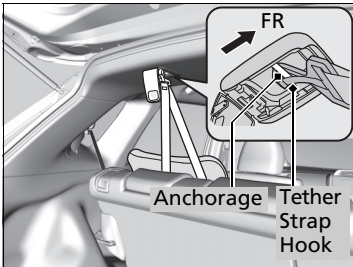
1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the seat manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
 - Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Pull hard on the loose end of the belt to remove any slack.
 - When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
4. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.

■ Adding Security with a Tether*



Two tether anchorage points are provided on the ceiling for rear outer seating positions. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.
2. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
3. Open the anchorage cover.
4. Route the tether strap over the seat-back. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
5. Secure the tether strap hook onto the anchorage.
6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.



▣ Adding Security with a Tether*

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system when using the seat belt or lower anchors.

* Not available on all models

Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

►► Safety of Larger Children

⚠ WARNING

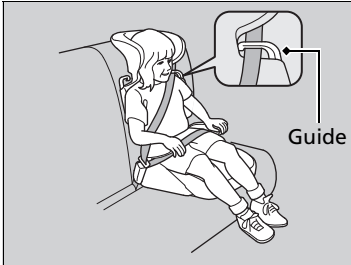
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.


Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.

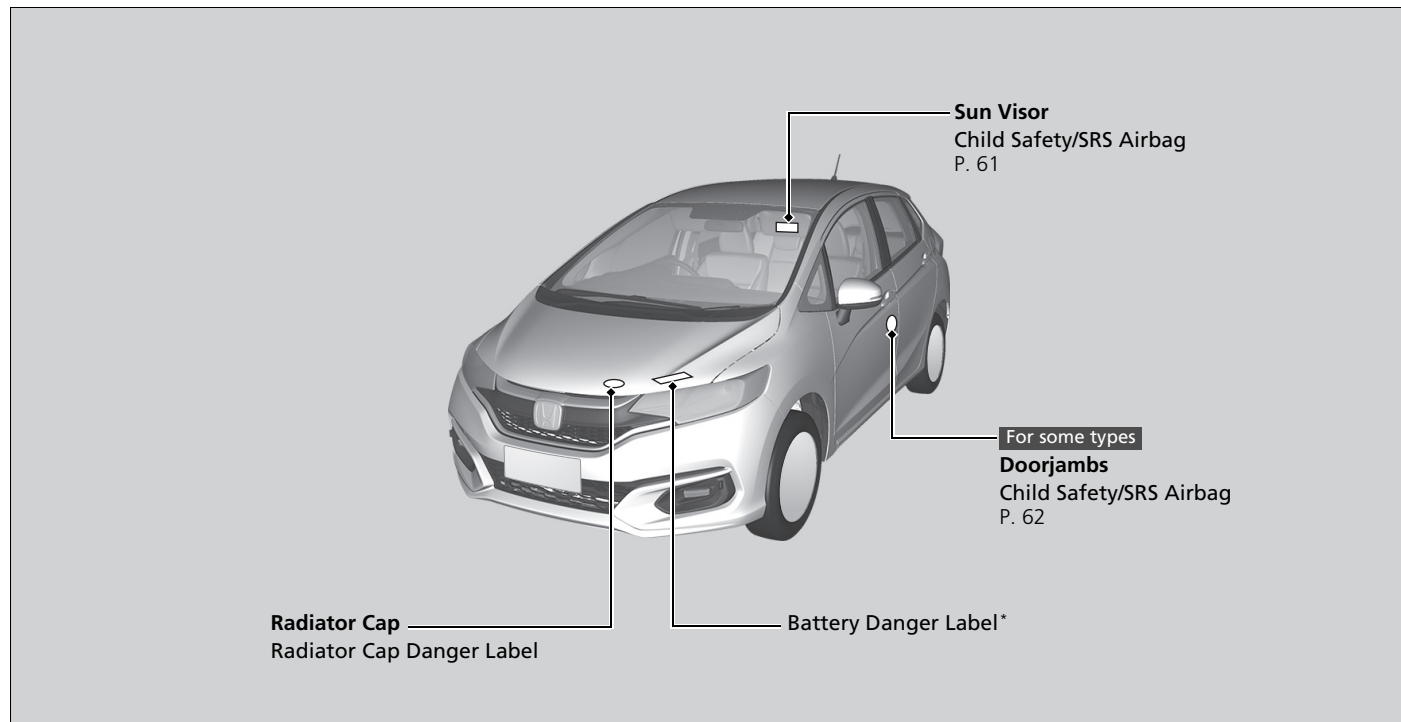
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

* Not available on all models

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.













Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.












Indicators	84
Information Display Warning and Information Messages*	99
Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages*	100
Gauges and Displays	
Gauges	105
Information Display*	106
Multi-Information Display*	109

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ²
	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 505 Comes on along with the ABS indicator* - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On P. 505 	<div></div> <div></div> <div></div>
	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div></div>








*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ²
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place.  If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On P. 504 Diesel models  Starting the Engine P. 379, 382 	
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, and goes off either when the engine starts or after several seconds if the vehicle did not start. Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Blinks while driving - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer.  If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 505 	



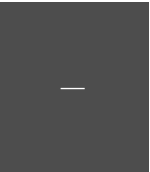

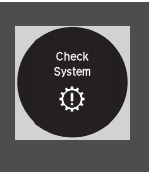


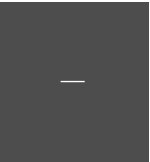
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ²
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on when the battery is not charging. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Turn off the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* and rear demister in order to reduce electricity consumption. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► If the Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 504 	
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on and the beeper* sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}. Blinks while driving if you have not fastened the seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. <p>Models with front passenger's seat belt reminder</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on about a few seconds later. Blinks while driving if the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The beeper* stops and the indicator goes off when you fasten the seat belt. Stays on after you have fastened the seat belt - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <p>Models with front passenger's seat belt reminder</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when the front passenger fastens their seat belt. Stays on after the front passenger has fastened the seat belt - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Seat Belt Reminder P. 39 	 

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
	Shift Lever Position Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates the current shift lever position. 	 Shifting P. 387, 389	
	Transmission Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks while driving - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	
	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when 7-speed manual shift mode is applied. 	 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode P. 391	








*1: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 5.3 Litres left). Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. 	
		<p>Diesel models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The fuel gauge needle is at the E* or fuel gauge dot disappeared*. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Even if you depress the accelerator pedal, the engine speed (RPM) will not increase. Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible then restart the engine. The vehicle speed limit will be released when refueling 10.0 litres or more.  Refueling P. 415 	
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Supplemental restraint system Side airbag system* Side curtain airbag system* Seat belt tensioner* 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

*1 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.










*2 : Models with multi-information display

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ²
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *¹, then goes off. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 405 	
	Door and Tailgate Open Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *¹, then goes off. Comes on if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed. The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Goes off when all doors and the tailgate are closed. 	







*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ²
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Blinks when VSA is active. Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA or hill start assist system*. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System* P. 400  Hill start assist system* P. 381, 384 	<div></div> <div></div>
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on when you deactivate VSA. 	 VSA On and Off P. 401	—




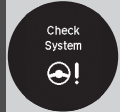




*1 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2 : Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message ^{*2}
	High Temperature Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Blinks when the engine coolant temperature goes up, and stays on if the temperature continues to rise. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Goes off, then comes on blue when the engine coolant temperature is low. Blinks while driving - Drive slowly to prevent overheating. Stays on while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place and allow the engine to cool.  Overheating P. 502 	 
	Low Temperature Indicator (Blue) [*]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the engine coolant temperature is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the indicator stays on after the engine has reached normal operating temperature, there may be a problem with the temperature sensors. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. 	—










*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ²
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 506 	
	System Message Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the multi-information display appears at the same time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> While the indicator is on, press the /▼ (information) button to see the message again. Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the multi-information display. Take appropriate action for the message. The multi-information display does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the button is pressed. 	


*1 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2 : Models with multi-information display






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
	Glow Plugs Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*2}, then goes off. Comes on for a while when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*2} under the extremely low ambient temperature condition, then goes off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The engine is cold. Do not start the engine until the indicator goes off.  Starting the Engine P. 379, 382 Goes off quickly even when ambient temperature is extremely low - Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. 	
PGM-FI	PGM-FI Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*2}, then goes off. Comes on while driving if there is a problem with the engine control system. Comes on if you do not use the proper fuel for the climate or regional conditions. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  If the PGM-FI Indicator Comes On P. 506 Use of inadequate fuel may reduce engine power.  Fuel recommendation P. 416 	

*1: Models with multi-information display

*2: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
	Water in Fuel Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Comes on when water has accumulated in the fuel system.• Comes on if you have parked your vehicle for an extended period.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Have a dealer drain off the water from the system as soon as possible. Accumulated water may cause damage to the fuel system.• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—








*1 : Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. Blink along with all turn signals if you press the hazard warning button. Models with emergency stop signal Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does not blink or blinks rapidly - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Replacing Light Bulbs P. 452, 453, 455 ➤ Emergency Stop Signal P. 407 	—
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. 	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on whenever the light switch is on. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you remove the key from the ignition switch*, or set the power mode* to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened. 	—
	Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the fog lights are on. 	—	—
	Light Control Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the headlights with LED. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	—

*1: Models with multi-information display









* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. Comes on if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks - Models without keyless access system You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK , pull the key out, and then insert the key and turn it to ON  again. Models with keyless access system You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then select the ON mode again. Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. 	—
	ECON Mode Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off. Comes on when the ECON mode is on. 	 ECON Button * P. 396	—





*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
<div>Models with ambient meter</div>  <div>Indicator</div> <div>Models without ambient meter</div>  <div>Indicator</div>	Security System Alarm Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when the security system alarm has been set. 	 Security System Alarm* P. 148	—
	CRUISE MAIN Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the CRUISE button. 	 Cruise Control* P. 397	—
	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you have set a speed for cruise control. 	 Cruise Control* P. 397	—
	Keyless Access System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	—

*1: Models with multi-information display

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
	Starter System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on if the starting system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As a temporary measure, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and clutch pedal (manual transmission only), and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	—
	Shift to Park Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice after moving the shift lever to P. 	—
	Rotate Wheel Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the steering wheel is locked. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button. 	—
	Speed Alarm Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II^{*2}, then goes off. Comes on when your vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h. A reminder tone sounds about every two minutes. Blinks when your vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. A reminder tone sounds continuously. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This indicator keeps illuminating while your vehicle speed is faster than 80 km/h. This indicator keeps blinking while your vehicle speed is faster than 120 km/h. 	—


*1 : Models with multi-information display

*2 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Information Display Warning and Information Messages*



The following messages appear only on the information display.





Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
NO KEY	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.
KEY  BATT	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when the keyless remote's battery becomes weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Replace the battery as soon as possible. ➤ Replacing the Button Battery P. 475


* Not available on all models

Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages*



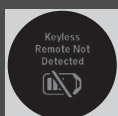
The following messages appear only on the multi-information display. Press the /  (information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.



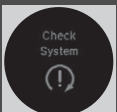

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<p>Continuously variable transmission models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears while you are customizing the settings and the shift lever is moved out of P. <p>Manual transmission models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears while you are customizing the settings and the parking brake is released.	<p>➤ Customized Features P. 113</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the ignition switch is in ON II.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears when the vehicle speed reaches the set speed. You can set two different speeds for the alarm.	<p>➤ List of customizable options P. 116</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears if there is a problem with the headlights with LED.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.


Instrument Panel

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery. Appears when the battery is not charging. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ☞ Checking the Battery P. 471 Appears along with the battery charging system indicator - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger to reduce electricity consumption. ☞ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 504


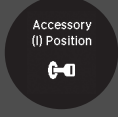
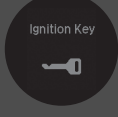
Models with keyless access system



Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>(White)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. 	—
 <p>(Amber)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless remote inside the vehicle. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Goes off when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door. ☞ Keyless Remote Reminder P. 155

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace the battery as soon as possible. ► Replacing the Button Battery P. 473
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the keyless remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times. 	► If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 496
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the starting system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As a temporary measure, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if you press the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice after moving the shift lever to P.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the steering wheel is locked. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button.



Models without keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY I from ON II. (The driver's door is closed.) 	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY I. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0, then remove the key.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK 0. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remove the key from the ignition switch.


Message	Condition	Explanation
 *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears in white when you turn the ignition switch to START  before fully depressing the clutch pedal.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Turn the ignition switch after fully depressing the clutch pedal.

*1 : Manual transmission models

Models with Parking sensor system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">If there is a problem with any of the sensors, the appropriate sensor indicator(s) comes on.	

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

■ Ambient Meter*

Changes colour to reflect your driving style.

Green: Fuel efficient driving

Blue green: Moderate acceleration/deceleration

Blue: Aggressive acceleration/deceleration The ambient meter colour changes in accordance with your brake or accelerator pedal operation.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Information Display*

Models with ambient meter

The information display shows the fuel gauge, odometer, trip meter, and other gauges.

Switching the Display

Press the  (select/reset) knob to change the display.

Switching the Display

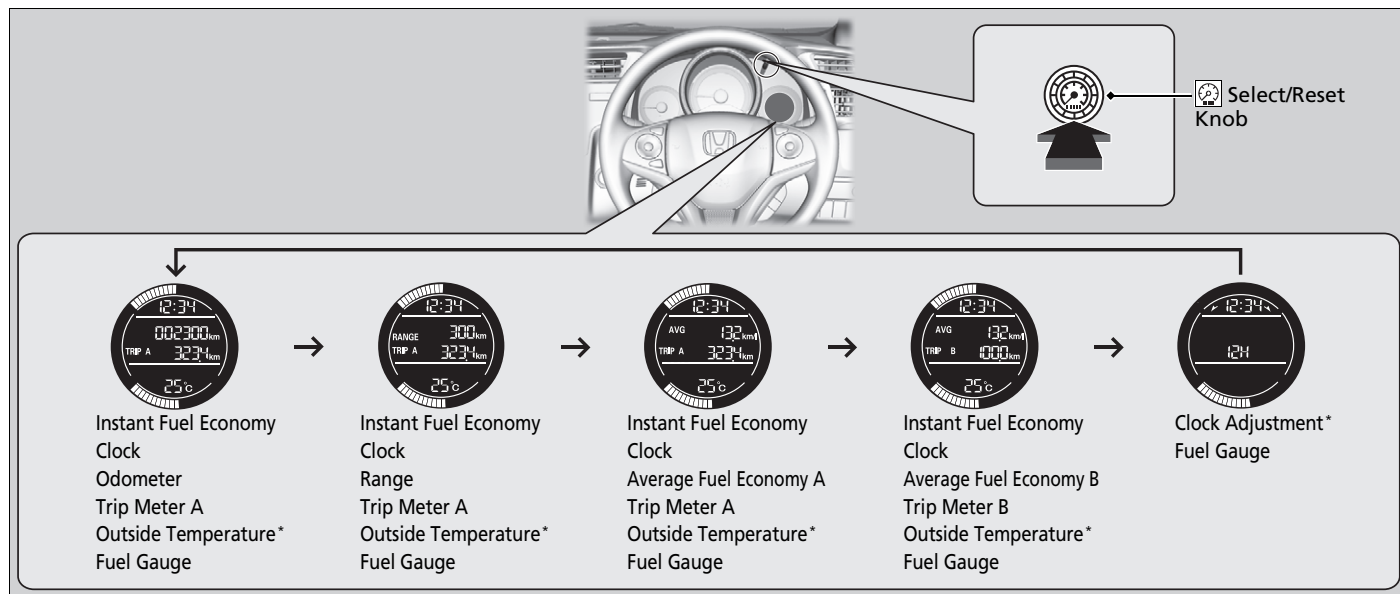
Audioless models

Models with monochrome audio system with CD player

► **Adjusting the Clock** P. 123

Models with display audio system

Some of the items on the information display also appear on the audio/information screen. They also change along with the information display changes while the fuel consumption is shown.



■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l.


■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Trip A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the  (select/reset) knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.


■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

■ Average Fuel Economy


Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

▣ Trip Meter

Switch between trip A and B by pressing the  (select/reset) knob.




■ Outside Temperature*

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, the outside temperature indicator blinks for ten seconds.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature indicator

Adjust the temperature reading up to $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}.
2. Press and hold the  (select/reset) knob for 10 seconds or more while the outside temperature is shown on the information display.
 - The information display goes into temperature adjustment mode. The display starts showing from -3°C to $+3^{\circ}\text{C}$.
3. Release the  (select/reset) knob when the right adjustment amount is shown.
 - The adjustment is complete.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.


» Outside Temperature*

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

» Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Multi-Information Display*

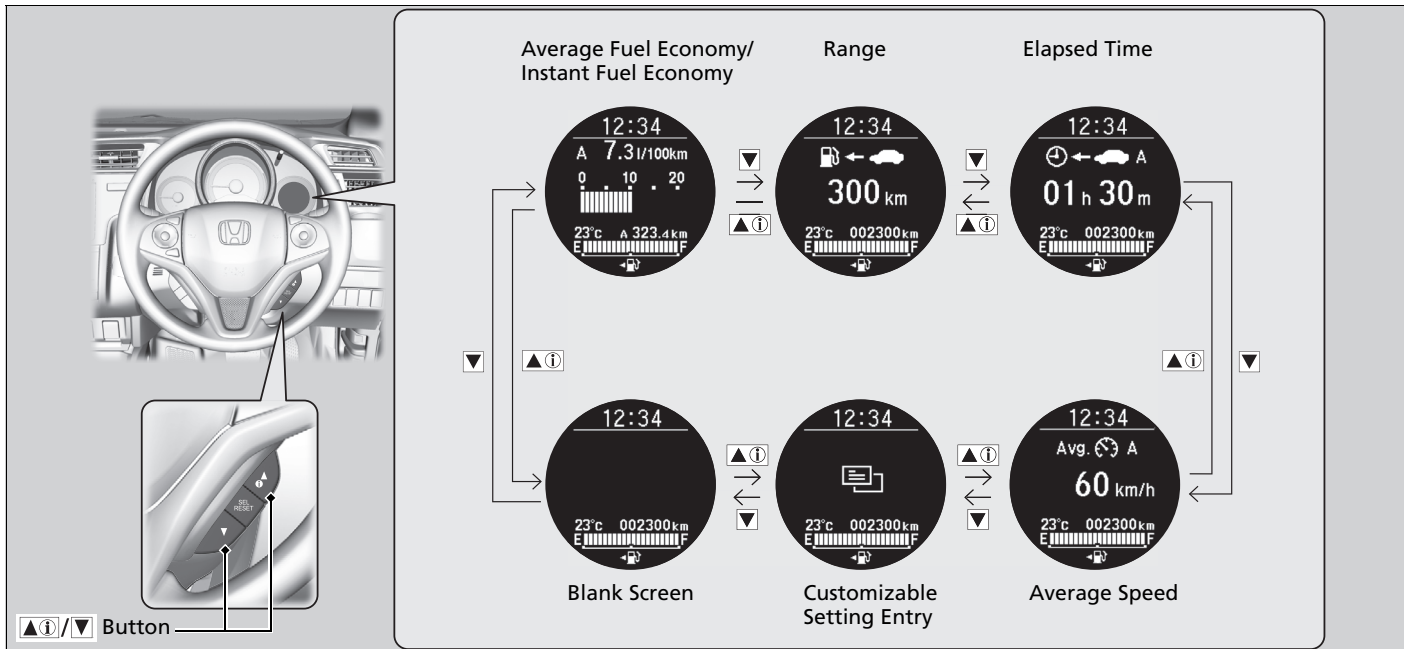
The multi-information display shows the fuel gauge, odometer, trip meter, outside temperature*, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

Switching the Display

Main displays

Press the / (information) button to change the display.

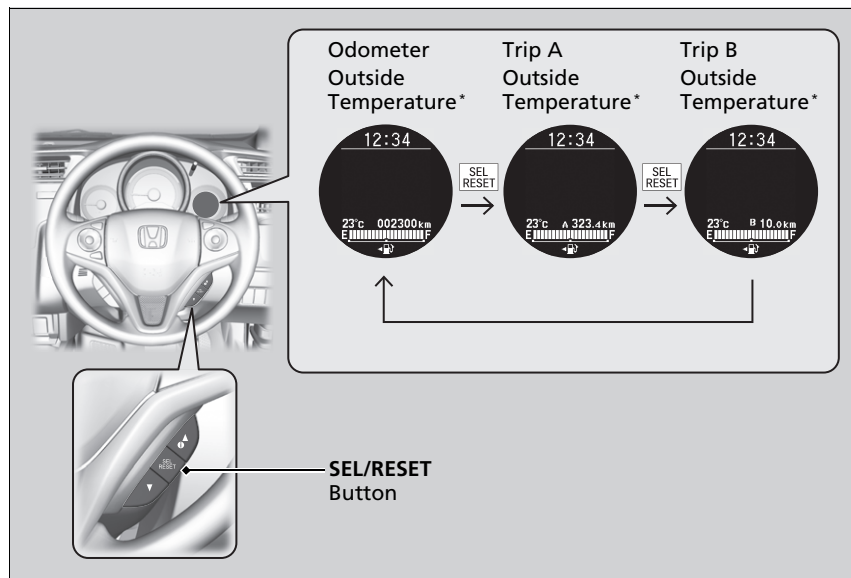


* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Lower displays

Press the **SEL/RESET** button to change the display.



■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Trip A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since trip A or trip B was reset.

▣ Trip Meter

Switch between trip A and B by pressing the **SEL/RESET** button.

▣ Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 113

▣ Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 113

■ Average Speed


Shows the average speed in km/h since trip A or trip B was reset.

■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km.

■ Outside Temperature*

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you turn the ignition switch to ON , the outside temperature indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

» Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

► **Customized Features** P. 113

» Outside Temperature*

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.


It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the multi-information display's customized features to correct the temperature.

► **Customized Features** P. 113

» Fuel Gauge

NOTICE





You should refuel when the reading approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

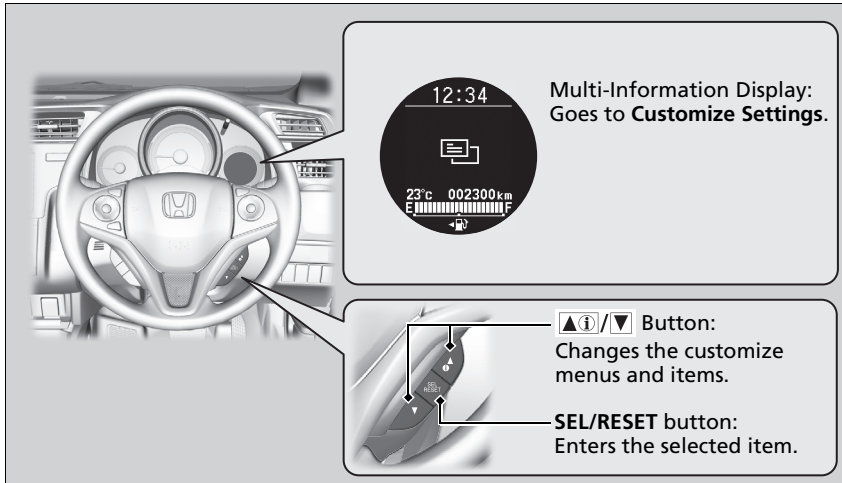
The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Customized Features


Use the multi-information display to customize certain features.

How to customize

Select the  (Customize Settings) screen by pressing the  button while the ignition switch is in ON , the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift lever is in  (continuously variable transmission), and the parking brake is set (manual transmission). Press the **SEL/RESET** button to enter the customizing mode.




Customized Features

To customize other features, press the  button.

► **List of customizable options** P. 116

► **Example of customization settings** P. 118

When you customize settings:

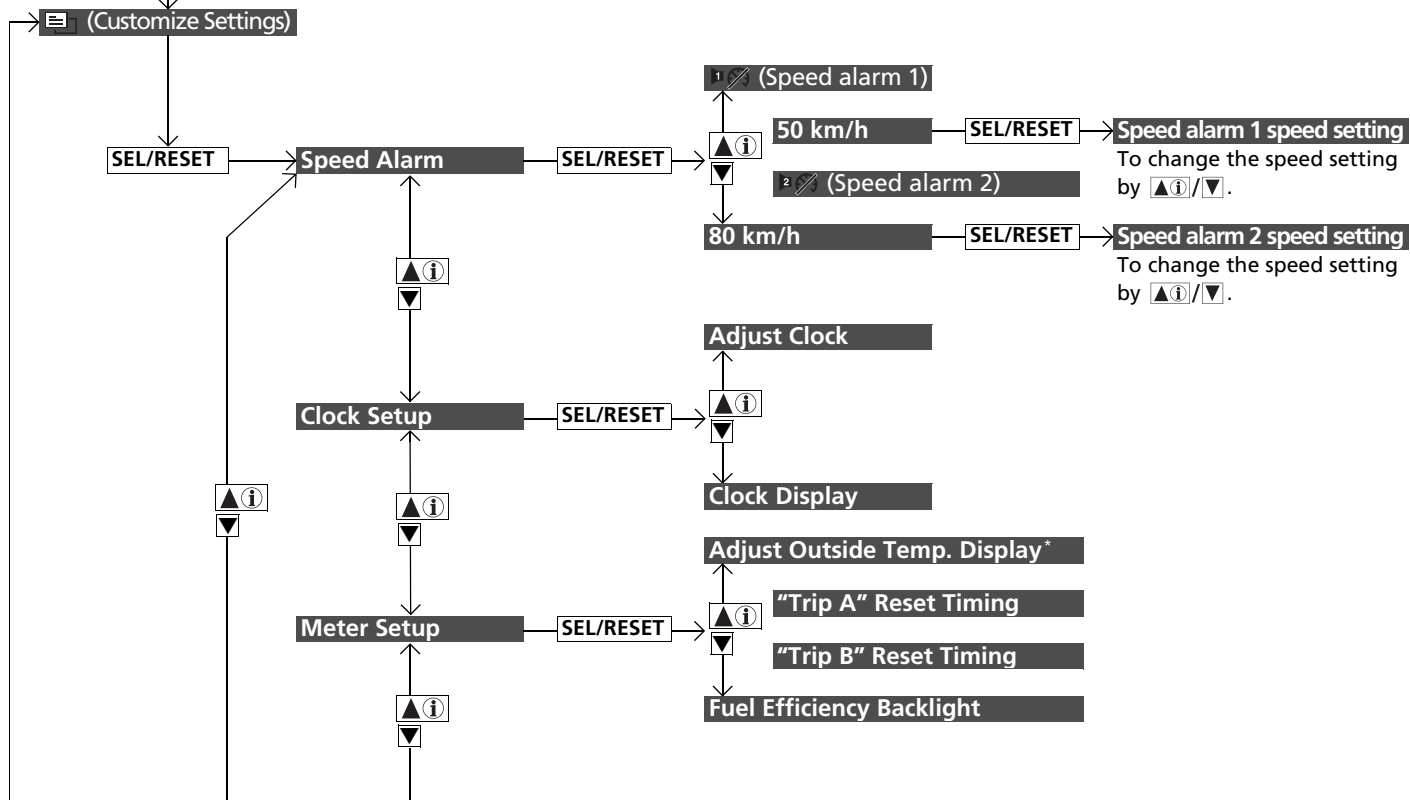
Continuously variable transmission models
Shift to .

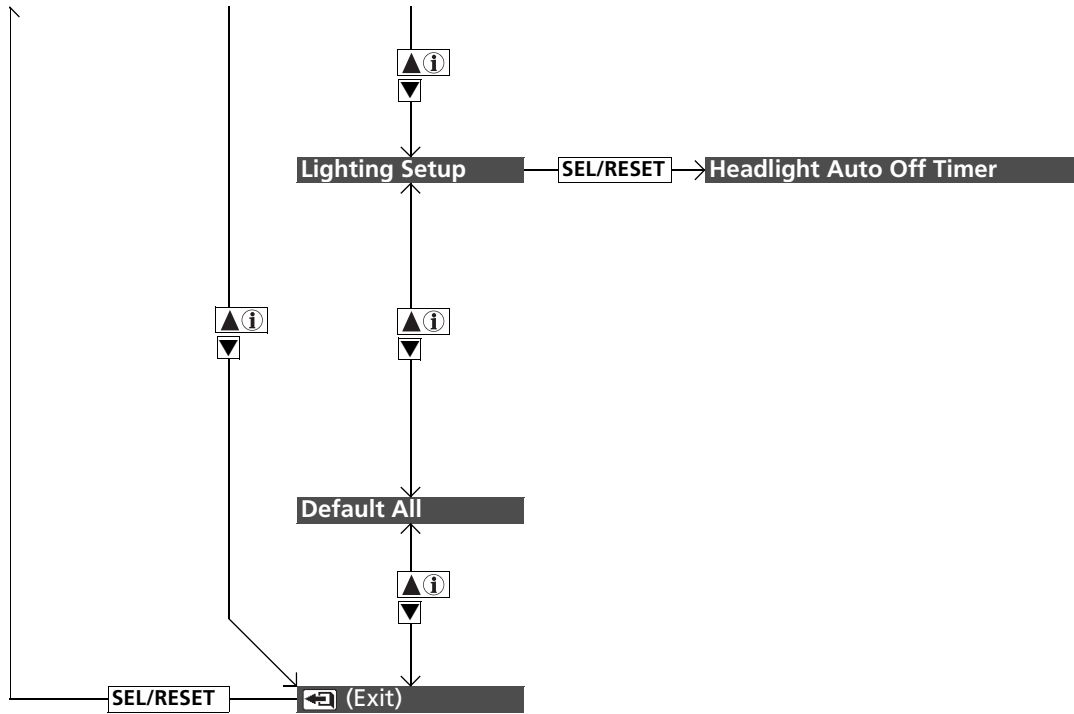
Manual transmission models
Set the parking brake.

■ Customization flow

Press the /▼ button.

Instrument Panel





■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Speed Alarm	Speed alarm setting*2	Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.	Speed alarm 1 On (🚗🔊)/Off (🚗🔇)*1 [50 km/h]
			Speed alarm 1 speed setting over 5 km/h with 5 km/h steps
			Speed alarm 2 On (🚗🔊)/Off (🚗🔇)*1 [80 km/h]
			Speed alarm 2 speed setting over 5 km/h with 5 km/h steps

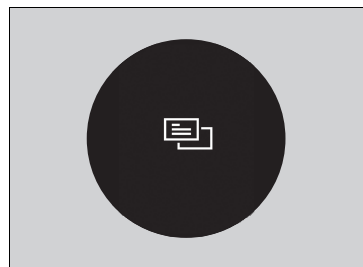
*1 : Default Setting
*2: You can turn the speed alarm on or off while driving.



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Clock Setup	Adjust Clock	Adjusts the clock.	hour (00 - 23), minute (00 - 59)
	Clock Display	Changes the setting of the clock display.	24h, 12h^{*1}, OFF
Meter Setup	Adjust Outside Temp. Display[*]	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C^{*1} ~ +3°C
	“Trip A” Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/ Manual Reset^{*1}
	“Trip B” Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/ Manual Reset^{*1}
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	ON^{*1}/OFF
Lighting Setup	Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver’s door.	60sec/30sec/15sec^{*1}/0sec
Default All	—	Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default.	Cancel/OK

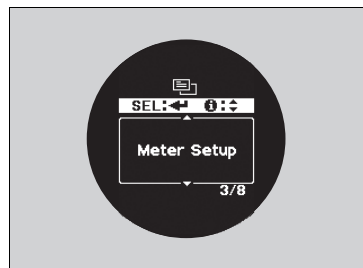
*1: Default Setting

■ Example of customization settings

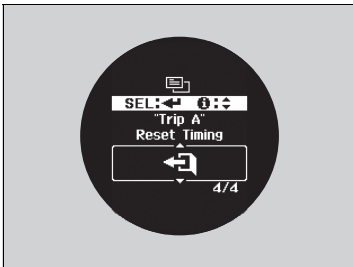
The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manual Reset**.



1. Press the  button until  (customize settings) appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.



2. Press the  button until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.



4. Press the button until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Refueled**, **When Ignition Is Turned Off**, **Manual Reset**, or (Exit).
5. Press the button and select **When Refueled**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - The **When Refueled Setup** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
6. Press the button until (Exit) appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock	122
Locking and Unlocking the Doors	126
Key Types and Functions	126
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength*.....	129
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	130
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	137
Childproof Door Locks	139
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*.....	140
Customizing the Auto Door Locking/ Unlocking Setting*	141
Opening and Closing the Tailgate	144
Security System	
Immobilizer System	148

Security System Alarm*.....	148
Opening and Closing the Windows	150
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel	
Models without keyless access system	
Ignition Switch.....	152
Models with keyless access system	
ENGINE START/STOP Button	153
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison	156
Turn Signals.....	157
Light Switches	158
Fog Lights*	160
Daytime Running Lights*	160
Headlight Adjuster*	161
Wipers and Washers	162
Brightness Control.....	164
Rear Demister Button*	166

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	167
Adjusting the Mirrors	
Interior Rearview Mirror.....	168
Power Door Mirrors.....	168
Adjusting the Seats	
Front Seats	169
Rear Seats	173
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items	
Interior Lights	183
Interior Convenience Items	186
Heating and Cooling System*	192
Using Vents, Heating* and A/C	192
Climate Control System*	195
Using Automatic Climate Control	195
Automatic Climate Control Sensors	199

* Not available on all models

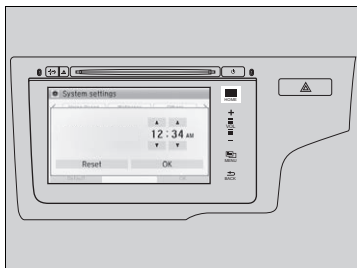
Adjusting the Clock




You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON *1.

Adjusting the Time

Models with display audio system

Using the settings menu on the audio/information screen




1. Select the  (HOME) icon, then select **Settings**.
2. Select **System, Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Adjust the hours and minutes by selecting  / .
4. Select **OK** to set the time.

Adjusting the Clock


Models with display audio system

The clock in the information display*/multi-information display* is automatically adjusted along with the audio system's clock display.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

 **Customized Features*** P. 287

You can turn the clock display on and off.

 **Customized Features*** P. 287

The clock is automatically updated when your smartphone is connected to the audio system.

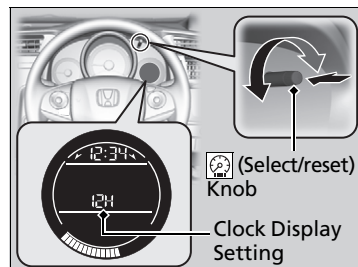
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.




* Not available on all models

Audioless models





Models with monochrome audio system with CD player

■ Using the knob in the information display



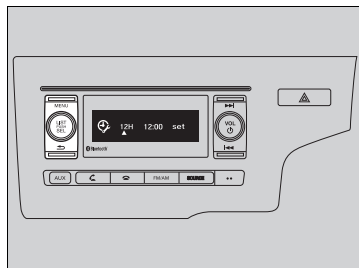
1. Press the  (select/reset) knob repeatedly to show the clock adjustment display.
▶ The clock display begins to blink.
2. Turn the  knob to adjust the time.
▶ Turn to the right to increase the minutes.
The hour reading goes up by one after 59 is displayed.
▶ Turn to the left to decrease the minutes.
The hour reading goes down by one after 00 is displayed.
3. Press the  to set the time.









■ Changing the clock display

1. Press the  knob repeatedly to show the clock adjustment display.
2. Press and hold the  knob. The clock display setting changes.
▶ Pressing the  knob changes the setting between **12h**, **24h** and **OFF**.
▶ Select **OFF** to turn off the clock display in the information display.
3. Press the  knob to enter your selection.

Models with monochrome audio system without CD player

■ Using the selector knob



1. Press the **MENU** button to select the menu mode.
2. Rotate  to select the clock adjustment mode, then press . The display time begins flashing.
3. Rotate  to select the item you want to change (hour, minute). Then press .
4. Rotate  to make the adjustment.
5. Press  to enter your selection. The display returns to the clock adjustment. Repeat steps 3 to 5 to adjust other items.
6. Rotate  and select **set**, then press  to complete clock adjustment.

▶▶ Adjusting the Clock



Models with monochrome audio system without CD player


These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.


Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

To change the setting between **12H** and **24H**:

Rotate  to select the clock adjustment mode, then press . The display time begins flashing.

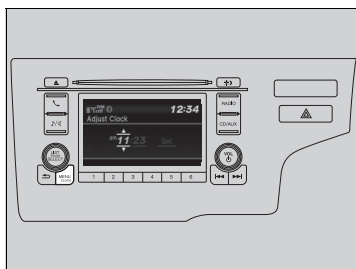
Rotate  to select **12H** or **24H**.







Press  to complete clock mode.

The clock in the information display*/multi-information display* is automatically adjusted along with the audio system's clock display.

Models with colour audio system

■ Using the MENU/CLOCK button



1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
▶ **Adjust Clock** is selected.
2. Rotate  to change hour, then press .
3. Rotate  to change minute, then press .
4. To enter the selection, rotate  and select **Set**, then press .

▶▶ Adjusting the Clock

Models with colour audio system

These indications are used to show how to operate the **LIST/SELECT** (Selector) knob.



Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

▶ **Customized Features*** P. 280

You can also select **Adjust/Clock** by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate  to select **Adjust/Clock**, then press .

The clock in the information display*/multi-information display* is automatically adjusted along with the audio system's clock display.

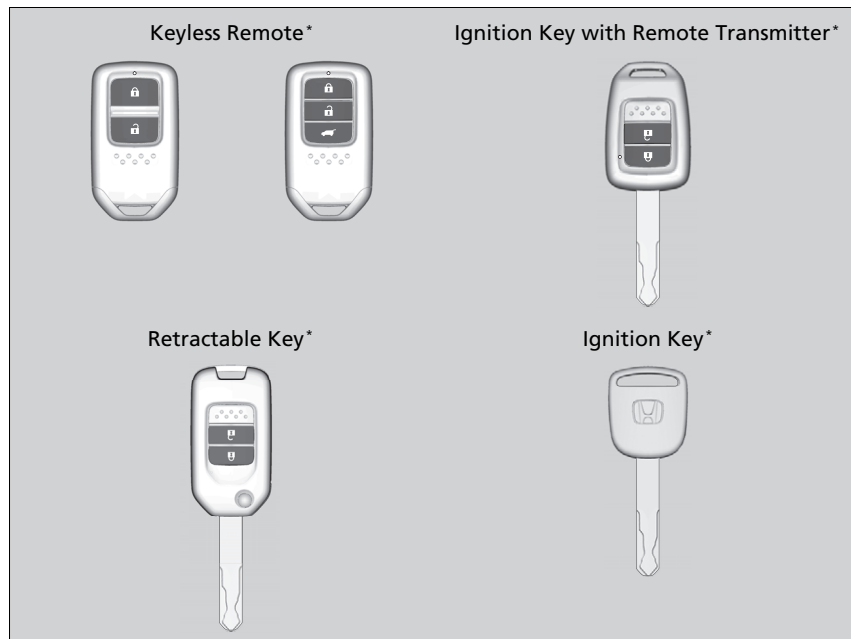
* Not available on all models

Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:

Use the key to start and stop the engine and to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

You can also use the remote transmitter* or keyless access system* to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.



Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 148

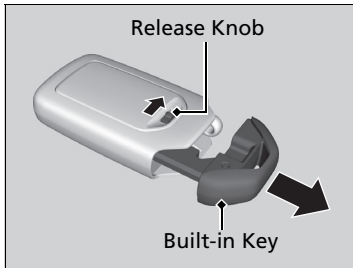
Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter*/keyless access system* may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

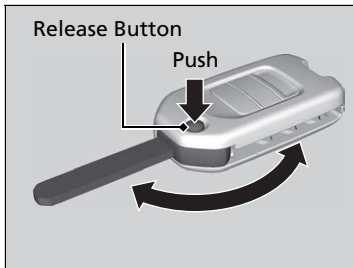
■ Built-in Key*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

■ Retractable keys*



The key folds up inside the remote transmitter.

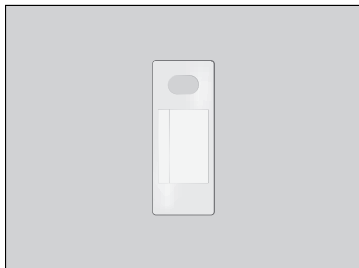
1. Press the release button to release the key out from the transmitter.
► Make sure to fully extend the key.
2. To close the key, press the release button then push the key inside the transmitter until you hear a click.

▣ Retractable keys*

If the key is not fully extended, the immobilizer system may not work properly, and the engine may not start. Avoid contact with the key whenever it extends or retracts.

* Not available on all models

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

▣ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength*

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery.

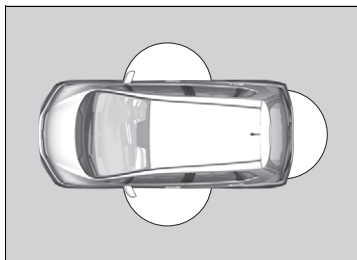
Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

* Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System *



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate. You can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle. You can open the tailgate within about 80 cm radius from the tailgate release button.

► Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

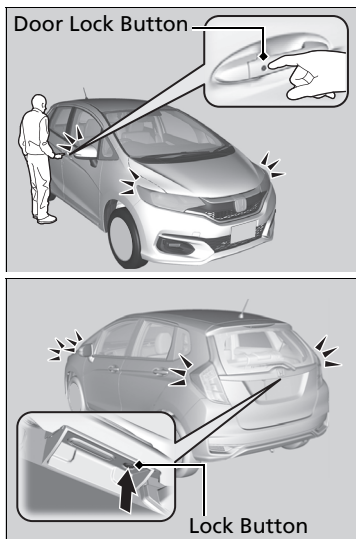
► **Interior Lights** P. 183

► Using the Keyless Access System *

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors and tailgate using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.



■ Locking the doors and tailgate

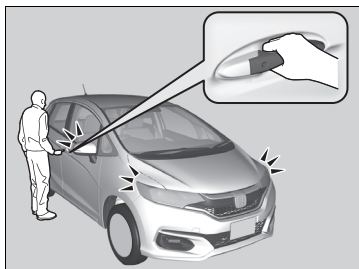
Press the door lock button on the front door or the tailgate.

- Some exterior lights flash three times; the beeper sounds three times; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.

► Using the Keyless Access System*

- You cannot unlock the door by gripping the handle after two seconds of locking it.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

* Not available on all models



■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Except South African models

Grab the front door handle:

- All the doors and tailgate unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds.

South African models

Grab the driver's door handle:

- The driver's door unlocks.
- Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

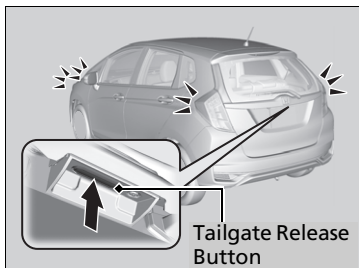
- All doors and the tailgate unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds.

All models

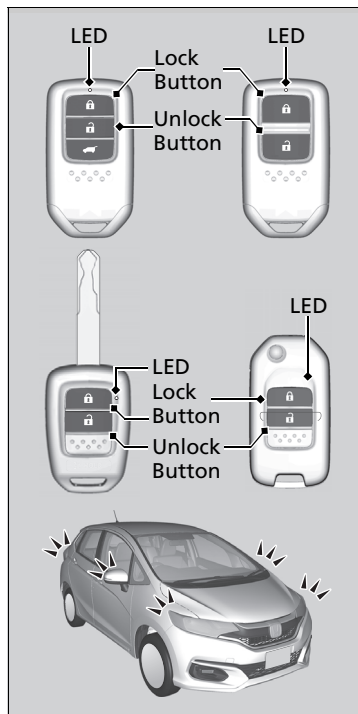
Press the tailgate release button:

- All the doors and tailgate unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds.

➤ **Using the Tailgate Outer Handle/Release Button** P. 145



■ Using the Remote Transmitter*



■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system* sets.

▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter*

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

* Not available on all models

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

Except South African models

- Some exterior lights flash once, and all doors and the tailgate unlock.

South African models

Once:

- Some exterior lights flash once, and the driver's door unlocks.

Twice:

- The remaining doors and the tailgate unlock.

» Using the Remote Transmitter*

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

Models without keyless access system

The remote transmitter will not work when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

You can lock or unlock doors and tailgate using the remote transmitter or keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

All models

The remote transmitter will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

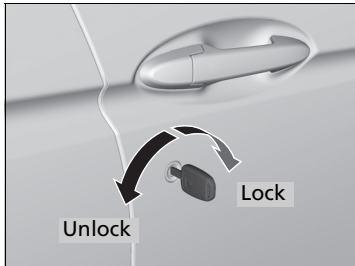
If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 473

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

► Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

■ South African models

When you lock the driver's door with a key, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.

■ Except South African models

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all of the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

■ Models with retractable key

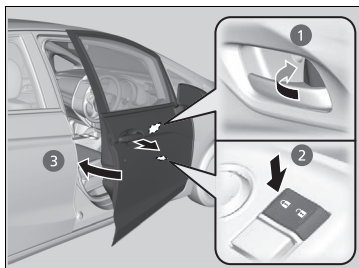
If you are using the retractable key, make sure it is fully extended.

Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system* to alarm. Always unlock the doors and tailgate with the remote transmitter.

* Not available on all models

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch* in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passengers' doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

Models without keyless access system

The doors and the tailgate cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

The doors and the tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

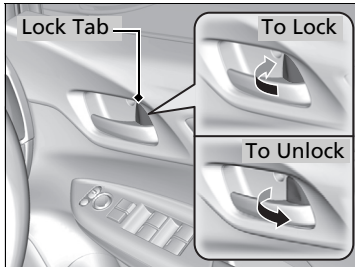
► Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

» Using the Lock Tab

Except South African models

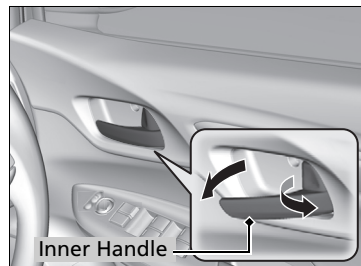
When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

South African models

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

■ Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle



Except South African models

Pull the driver's door inner handle.

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

South African models

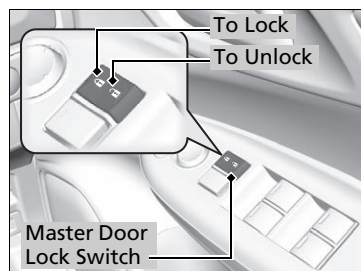
Pull the front door inner handle.

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Except South African models

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

►► Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle

The driver and front passenger* door inner handles are designed to allow the front seat occupant to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

► **Childproof Door Locks** P. 139

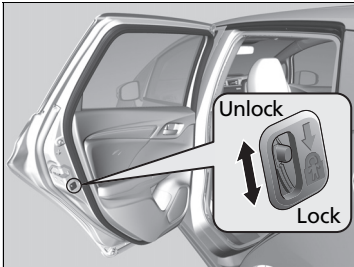
►► Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

⌘ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors/the driver's door automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors and the tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

■ Auto Door Unlocking

Continuously variable transmission models

■ Park unlock mode

Except South African models

All doors and the tailgate unlock when the shift lever is moved into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

South African models

The driver's door unlocks when the transmission is put into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

Manual transmission models

■ Ignition switch unlock mode

Except South African models

All doors and the tailgate unlock when the ignition switch is moved out of ON **II***1.

South African models

The driver's door unlocks when the ignition switch is moved out of ON **II***1.

South African models

The settings can be changed to unlock all doors.

*1 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

⌘ Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the master door lock switch.

⌘ Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting* P. 141

Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting *

You can customize the auto door locking/unlocking setting to your liking using the master door lock switch.

List of the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Customizable Options

■ Auto door locking

Mode	Description
Drive Lock Mode * ¹	All doors and the tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.
Continuously variable transmission models Park Lock Mode	All doors and the tailgate lock when the transmission is taken out of P with the brake pedal depressed.
Off	The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.

■ Auto door unlocking

Mode	Description
Continuously variable transmission models Park Unlock Mode	All doors and tailgate unlock when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.* ⁴ The driver's door unlocks when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.* ²
Ignition Switch Unlock Mode	All doors and tailgate unlock when the ignition switch is moved out of ON II * ⁵ , * ⁶ . The driver's door unlocks when the ignition switch is moved out of ON II * ³ , * ⁶
Off	The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.

*1: Default setting

South African models

*2: Default setting for continuously variable transmission models

*3: Default setting for manual transmission models

Except South African models

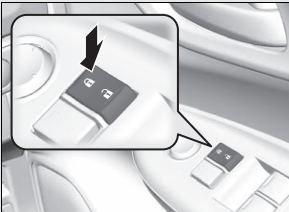
*4: Default setting for continuously variable transmission models

*5: Default setting for manual transmission model

*6: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Locking Options


Steps	Drive Lock Mode*2	Park Lock Mode*1	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Make sure the shift lever is in P *1.		
2	Turn the ignition switch to ON II *3.		
3	The driver's door must be closed at this stage.		Open the driver's door.
4	Move the shift lever out of P *1 with the brake pedal depressed.	—	
5	Press and hold the front of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click. <div></div>		
6	Move the shift lever to P *1.	—	
7	Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *3 within 20 seconds. ▶ Customization is completed.		

*1 : Continuously variable transmission models only

*2 : Default setting

*3 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Customizing Flow for Auto Door Unlocking Options

Steps	Ignition Switch Unlock Mode		Park Unlock Mode* ¹		Off
	To unlock driver's door* ^{2,*4}	To unlock all doors* ²	To unlock driver's door* ^{3,*4}	To unlock all doors* ³	
1	Apply the parking brake. Make sure the shift lever is in P * ¹ .				
2	Turn the ignition switch to ON II * ⁵ .				
3	The driver's door must be closed at this stage.				Open the driver's door.
4	Move the shift lever out of P with the brake pedal depressed* ¹ .		—		
5	Press and hold the rear of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click.				
6	Release the switch.	Keep pressing the switch for another five seconds to hear one more click. Release the switch.	Release the switch.	Keep pressing the switch for another five seconds to hear one more click. Release the switch.	Release the switch.
7	Move the shift lever to P * ¹ .		—		
8	Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 * ⁵ within 20 seconds. ►Customization is completed.				

*1: Continuously variable transmission models only

*2: Default setting for manual transmission models

*3: Default setting for continuously variable transmission models

*4: South African models only

*5: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

- Open the tailgate all the way.
 - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

📖 **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 81

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle/Release Button



Models with keyless access system

When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate release button and lift open the tailgate.



Models without keyless access system

When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked.

Pull up the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

►► Using the Tailgate Outer Handle/Release Button

Models with keyless access system

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

South African models with keyless access system

- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the tailgate. The beeper sounds and the tailgate cannot be closed.

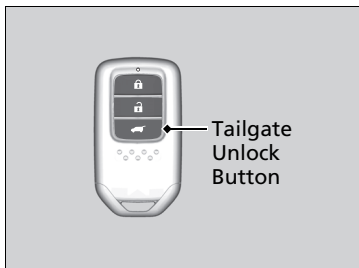
If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



All models

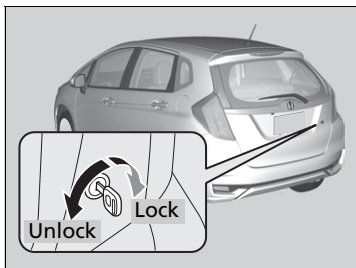
To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

Using the Remote Transmitter*



Press the tailgate unlock button to unlock the tailgate.

Using the Key*



Insert the key in the cylinder unlock and open the tailgate.

* Not available on all models

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Security System Alarm *

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are opened without the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some the exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*, or turn the ignition switch to ON **III***1. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

» Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.

Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your key, contact your dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your engine, contact your dealer.

» Security System Alarm *


Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

Except South African models with keyless access system, Indonesian, and Malaysian models

The security alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets. If the cause of the alarm continues, alarming will repeat several times at about 5 second intervals.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK *¹.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, the remote transmitter, or keyless access system*.


Models without keyless access system

- The key has been removed from the ignition switch.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter, keyless access system* or when the ignition switch is turned to ON *¹.
The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

*¹: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Security System Alarm*

South African models with keyless access system, Indonesian, and Malaysian models

The security alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates. The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

If you unlock a door with the key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

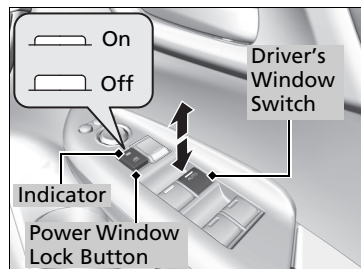
The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON **II***¹, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all of the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function*



Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.

To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Models with auto-open/close function

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***¹.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it stops closing and reverse direction.

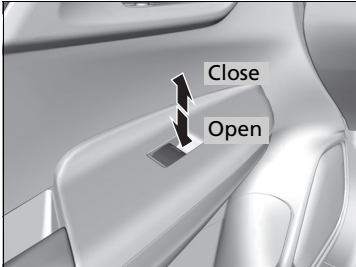
The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

*1 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

■ Opening/Closing the Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function



To open: Push the switch down.

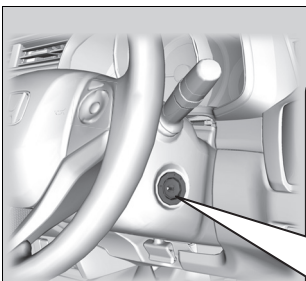
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

Models without keyless access system

Ignition Switch



0 LOCK: Insert and remove the key in this position.

I ACCESSORY: Operate the audio system* and other accessories in this position.

II ON: This is the position when driving.

III START: This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON **II** when you let go of the key.

Ignition Switch

Manual transmission models

⚠ WARNING

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

Continuously variable transmission models

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in **P**.

All models

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK **0** or ACCESSORY **I**, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

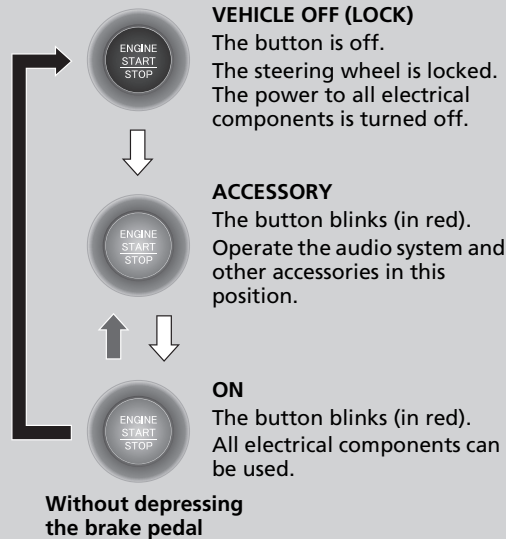
If the key won't turn from LOCK **0** to ACCESSORY **I**, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

Models with keyless access system

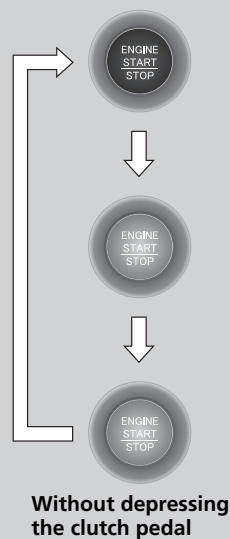
ENGINE START/STOP Button

Changing the Power Mode

Continuously Variable Transmission



Manual Transmission

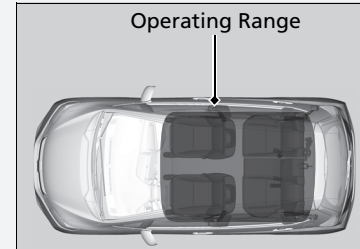


- ➡ Press the button.
- ➡ Press the button without the shift lever in **P**.
- ➡ Shift to **P** then press the button.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range

You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on (in red), if the engine is running.

If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

➡ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**
P. 496

Continued

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P**^{*1} and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock.

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

📖 **Changing the Power Mode** P. 153

🔑 ENGINE START/STOP Button

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

*1: Continuously variable transmission models

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to **ACCESSORY**, a warning beep sounds.

■ Keyless Remote Reminder



Warning buzzers may sound from inside and/or outside the vehicle to remind you that the keyless remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

■ When the power mode is in **ON**

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, a warning buzzer sounds from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the information display notifies that the remote is outside of the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in **ACCESSORY**

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

▶ Keyless Remote Reminder









When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

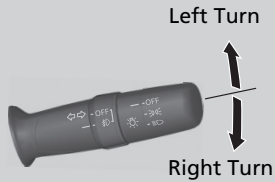
Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

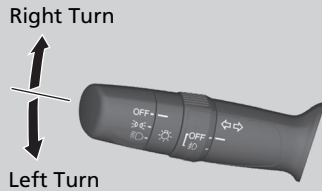
Ignition Switch Position	LOCK 0 (with/without the key) 	ACCESSORY I 	ON II 	START III 
Without Keyless Access System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.• The steering wheel is locked.• No electrical components can be used.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Engine is turned off.• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Normal key position while driving.• All electrical components can be used.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use this position to start the engine.• The ignition switch returns to ON II when you release the key.
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) 	ACCESSORY 	ON  Button is: Blinking On	START 
With Keyless Access System and ENGINE START/STOP Button	Button-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.• The steering wheel is locked.• No electrical components can be used.	Button-Blinking in red <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Engine is turned off.• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.	Button-Blinking in red (engine is turned off) On in red (engine is running) <ul style="list-style-type: none">• All electrical components can be used.	Button-On in red <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.


Turn Signals

Except South African models



South African models



The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

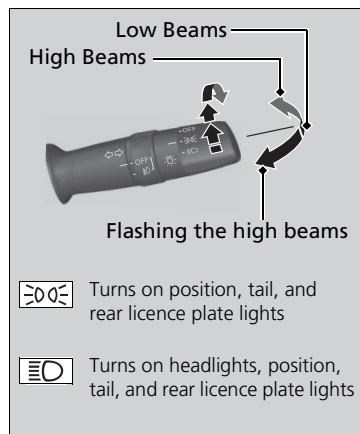
■ One touch turn signal

When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

This feature can be used when signalling for a lane change.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Light Switches



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the position of the ignition switch*¹.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

►► Light Switches

Models without keyless access system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

Models with keyless access system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

► Lights On Indicator P. 95

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature*

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes.

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

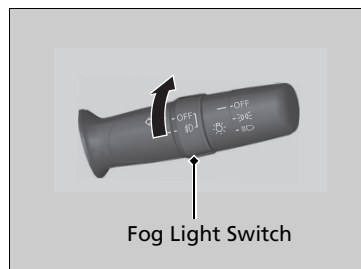
⌘ Automatic Lighting Off Feature*

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 113

* Not available on all models

Fog Lights*



Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

Daytime Running Lights*

The daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is off.

Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) will turn off the daytime running lights.

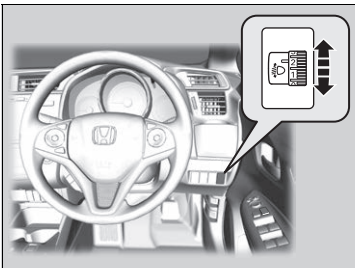
The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on.


► Fog Lights*

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

► **Fog Light Indicator*** P. 95

Headlight Adjuster*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

■ To select the adjusting dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle’s riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible vehicle weight and maximum permissible axle weight	1
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible vehicle weight and maximum permissible axle weight	2

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

⌘ Headlight Adjuster*

Models with LED Type Headlight

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

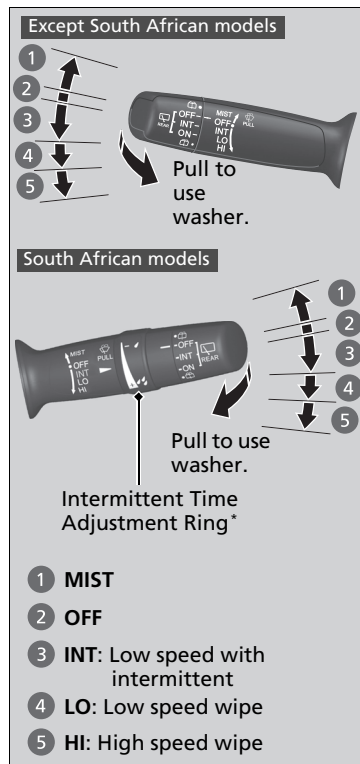
South African models with keyless access system


You may need to alter the headlight beam distribution.

➤ **Adjusting Headlight Distribution*** P. 402

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wiper/Washer



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, LO, HI)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

► Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.



The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

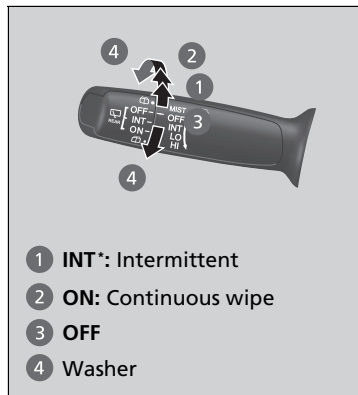
If the wipers stop operating due to any obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.


Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY  or LOCK *1, then remove the obstacle.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

■ Rear Wiper/Washer*



The rear wiper and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*, ON)

Rear wiper without INT

The wiper operates continuously.

Rear wiper with INT

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer ()

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.

Rear wiper with INT

Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse*

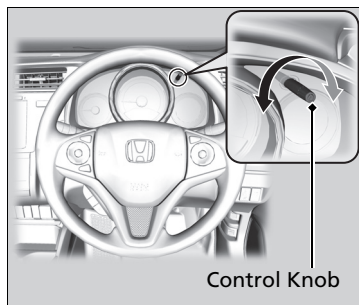
When you shift the transmission to  with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low speed wipe)	Continuous
HI (High speed wipe)	


*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Brightness Control



Control Knob

When the brightness of the meter will be reduced, and the ignition switch is ON ^{*1}, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.


Brighten: Turn the knob to the right.

Dim: Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beeper* when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

» Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:

- The ignition switch is in ON .
- The position lights are turned on.

To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper* sounds.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Models with information display




Models with multi-information display



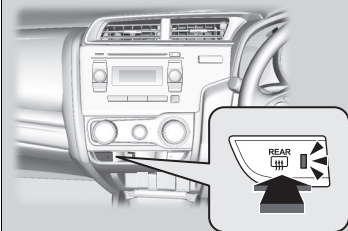
■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the information display/multi-information display while you are adjusting it.

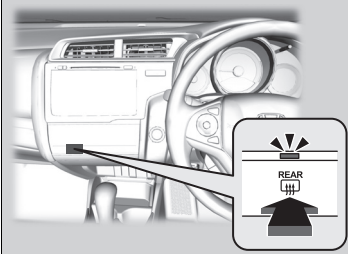
Rear Demister Button *

Press the rear demister button or touch the icon to demist the rear window when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

Models with heating and cooling system



Models with climate control system



Models with climate control system

The rear demister automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature.

However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

►► Rear Demister Button *

NOTICE

When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires.

It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the demister heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted.

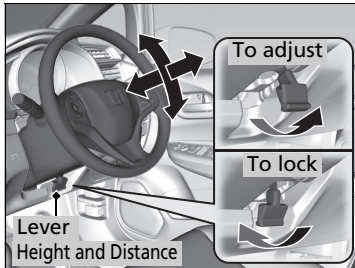
Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

*1 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance* from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



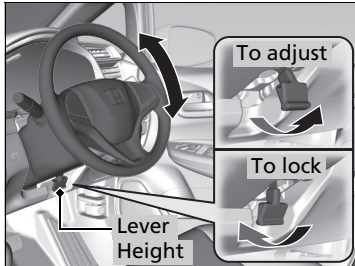
1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
 - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.

Height and distance adjustment type

2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Height adjustment type

2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
 - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up and down.



Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

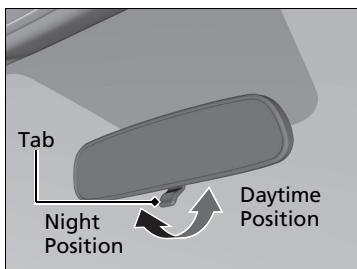
* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

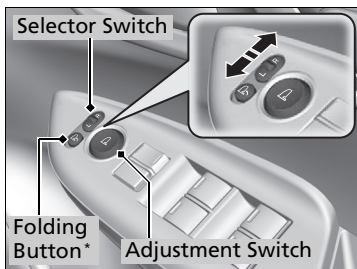
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.


Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

Mirror position adjustment

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

Folding door mirrors*

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.


*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

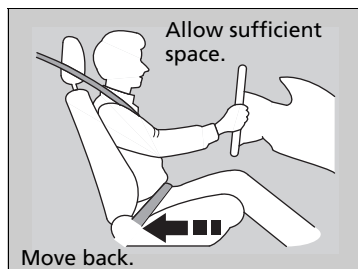
Interior Rearview Mirror

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

 **Front Seats** P. 169

Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Adjusting the Seats

⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

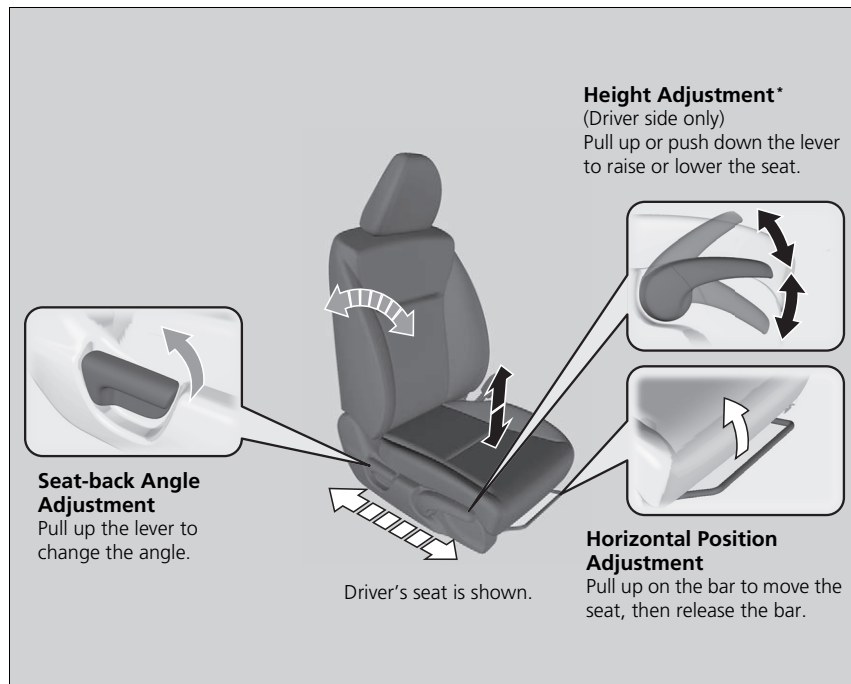
In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out*. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

* Not available on all models

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

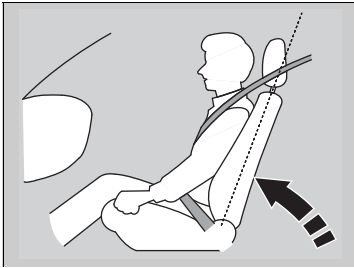
■ Adjusting the front seat



► Adjusting the front seat

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

►► Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

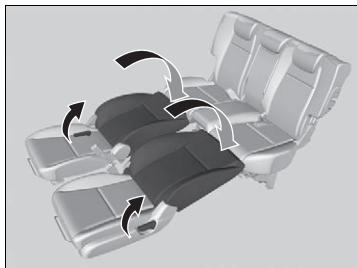
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

■ Reclining the Front Seats*

Reclining the seat-backs on the front seats until they are level with the rear seat cushions provides a large cushioned area that can (and should only) be used when the vehicle is safely parked.



1. Remove the front head restraints while pushing the release button.
► Store the head restraints in the luggage area.
2. Adjust the front seats forward as far as possible.
3. While pulling the seat-back angle adjustment lever, pivot the seat-back backward until it is level with the rear seat cushion.
4. Move the front seat backward until it touches the rear seat.
5. Unlatch the detachable anchor from the anchor buckle, and store the rear centre seat belt.

■ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor*

P. 43

6. Adjust the rear seat-back to the desired position.

To return the front seats and rear centre seat belt to their original positions, reverse this procedure.

When you return a seat-back to its upright position, hold the seat-back to keep it from going up too quickly.

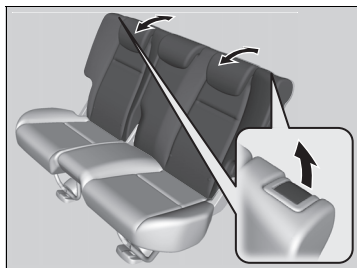
► Reclining the Front Seats*

Both front seats must be returned to their normal upright position, and the head restraints reinstalled and properly adjusted before driving.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints P. 180

Rear Seats

■ Adjusting the Rear Seat-Backs*



Pull the lever on the right to change the angle of the right half of the seat-back, and left for the left half.

►► Adjusting the Rear Seat-Backs*

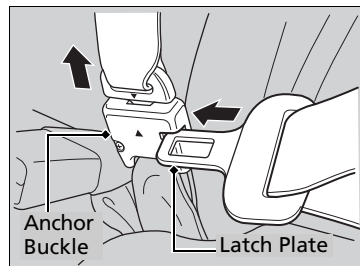
⚠ WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

* Not available on all models

■ Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seat(s) can be folded down in one piece/in halves to allow for additional storage space.



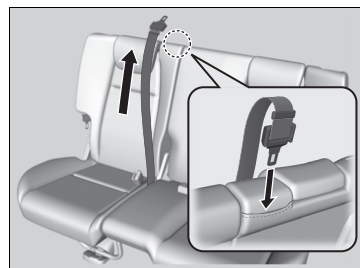
■ Before folding down the seat

Models with detachable seat belt

Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.

Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.

➤ **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor*** P. 43



Models with split type seat-back and centre lap belt

Store the lap belt into the holder on the seat-back.

Models with adjustable head restraint

Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.

➤ **Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions*** P. 179

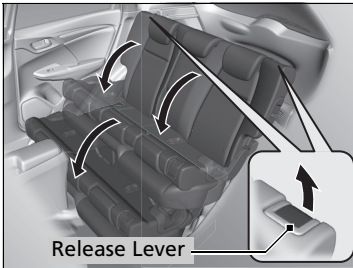
►► Folding Down the Rear Seats

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

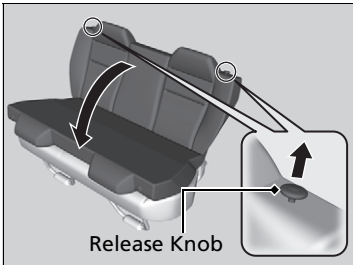
Make sure the seat-back, head restraints and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt is re-positioned in the holding slot.



■ To hold down the seat

Models with split type seat-back

Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.



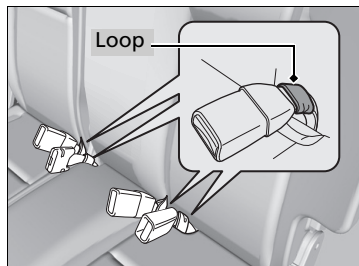
Models with one piece type seat-back

Pull the release knob and fold down the seat-back.

All models

To return the seat to the original position, pull up the seat-back in the upright position.

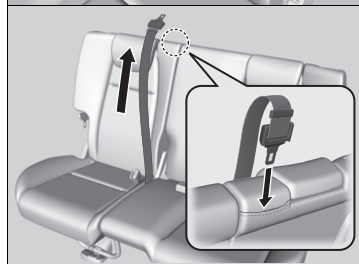
■ Folding the Rear Seat Up*



Separately lift up the left and right rear seat cushions to make room for luggage area.

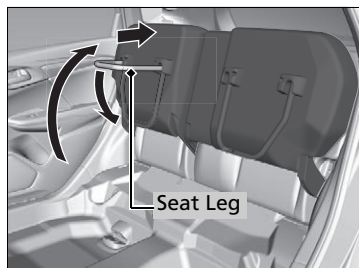
■ Lifting up the seat cushion

1. Make sure the seat belt buckles are in their loops on the seat.



Models with split type seat-back and centre lap belt

Store the lap belt into the holder on the seat-back.

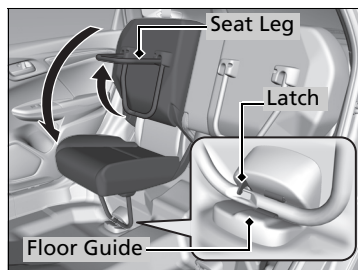


2. Pull up the rear seat cushion.
3. Fold the seat leg down while pushing the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it.

►► Folding the Rear Seat Up*

After you fold the seat up, or put it back in the original position, make sure the seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back.

Check if there are any items on the seat before you pull the seat cushion up. Check if there are any obstacles around the floor guide before you put the seat back in the original position.



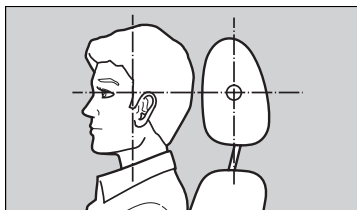
■ Putting the seat in the original position

1. Hold the seat cushion in the upright position, and pull up the seat leg fully.
 - The seat cushion can abruptly fall down once you pull up the seat leg.
2. Slowly put down the seat cushion and set the seat leg in the floor guide.
 - A latch comes out when the leg is set properly.

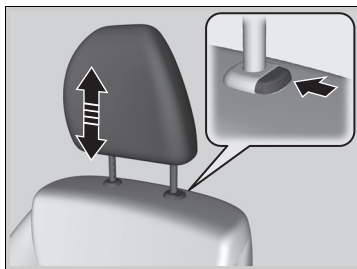
Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in both front seating positions. Rear seat also has head restraints on outer* and centre* seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions



Position head in the centre of the head restraint.



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button.

►► Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions

⚠ WARNING

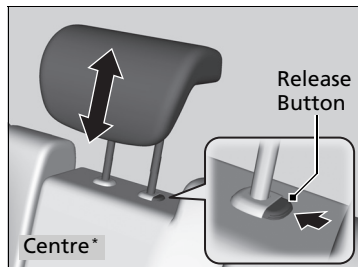
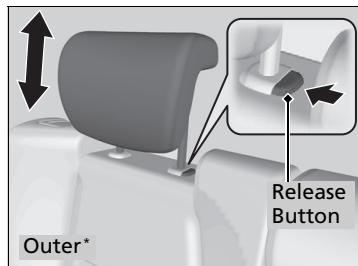
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly.

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions*



A passenger sitting in a back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

▣ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions*

When you use the head restraint in a rear seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.

* Not available on all models

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove the head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall the head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

▣ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

To remove and install the rear outer head restraint, recline the seat-back slightly forward as the space between the ceiling and the seat-back is limited.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

►► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

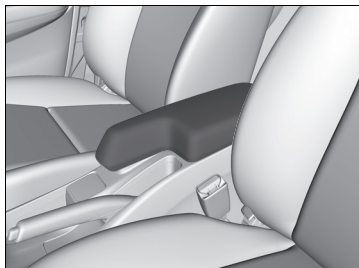
WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Armrest*

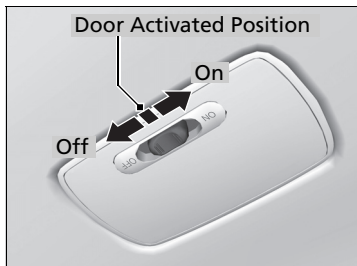
■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switch



■ ON

The interior light comes on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior light comes on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

Models without keyless access system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ OFF

The interior light remains off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switch

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds.

The light goes off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

Models without keyless access system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

Models with keyless access system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), but do not open a door.

The interior light goes off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON **II***1.

Models without keyless access system

- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

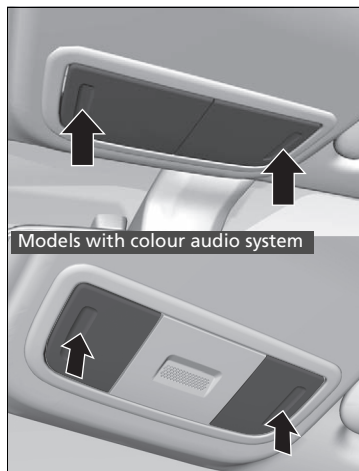
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, or without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

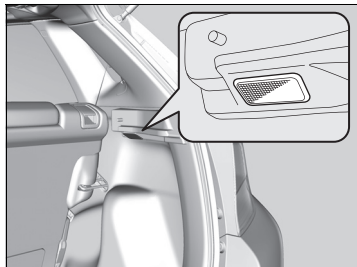
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Map Lights*

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.



■ Luggage Area Light*

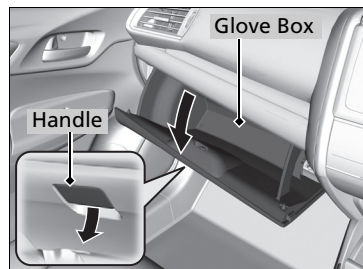


The light comes on when you open the tailgate.

* Not available on all models

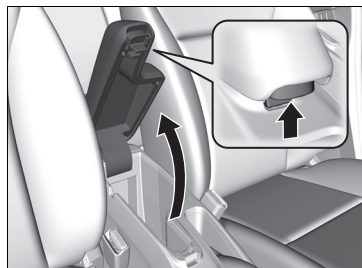
Interior Convenience Items

■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

■ Console Compartment*



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

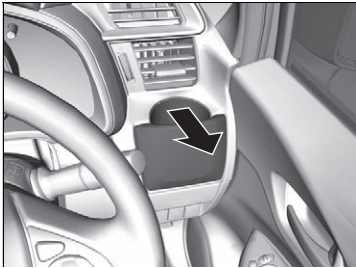
» Glove Box

⚠ WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

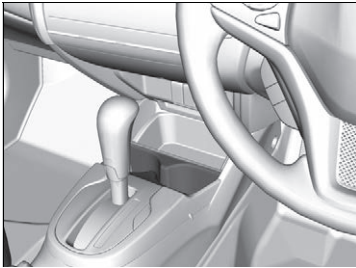
Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Beverage Holders

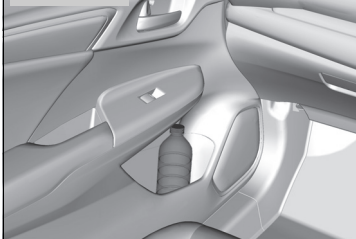


■ Front seat beverage holders

Pull the lid backward to use the front panel beverage holder.



Front Door



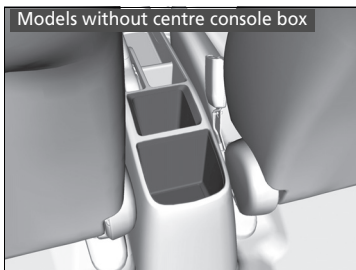
The beverage holder is at the front of each door.

» Beverage Holders

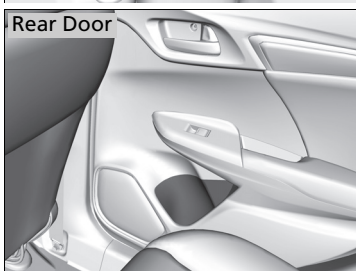
NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

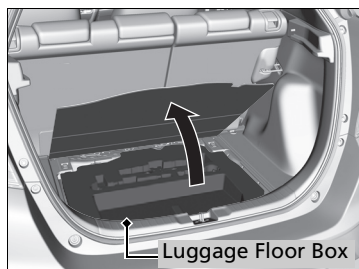


■ Rear seat beverage holders



The beverage holder is at the front of each door.

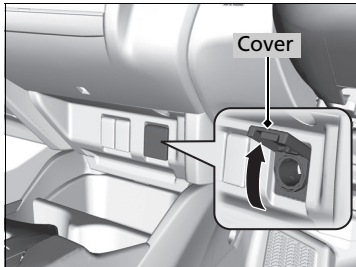
■ Luggage Floor Box*



Pull up the luggage area floor lid.

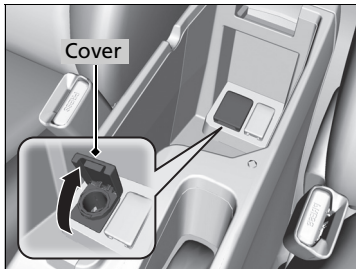
■ Accessory Power Socket(s)

The accessory power socket can be used when the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II***¹.



■ Accessory power socket (console panel)

Open the cover to use it.



■ Accessory power socket (console compartment)*

Open the console lid and the cover to use it.

» Accessory Power Socket(s)

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

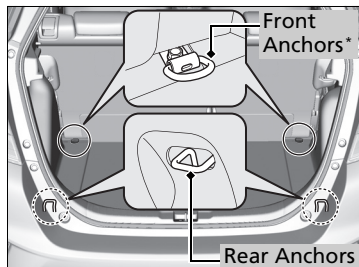
Continued

■ Coat Hook*



There is a coat hook on the rear right grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

■ Tie-down Anchors*



The tie-down anchors on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

▣ Coat Hook*

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

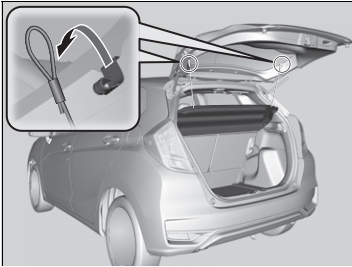
▣ Tie-down Anchors*

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

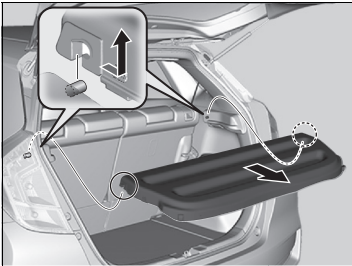
■ Luggage Area Cover*

The luggage area cover may be removed to give you more luggage room.

■ To remove the luggage area cover



1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the strap* on each side of the tailgate.



3. Disengage the support rods, then remove the luggage area cover.

Reverse this procedure to install the luggage area cover.

After reinstalling the luggage area cover, make sure it is latched securely.

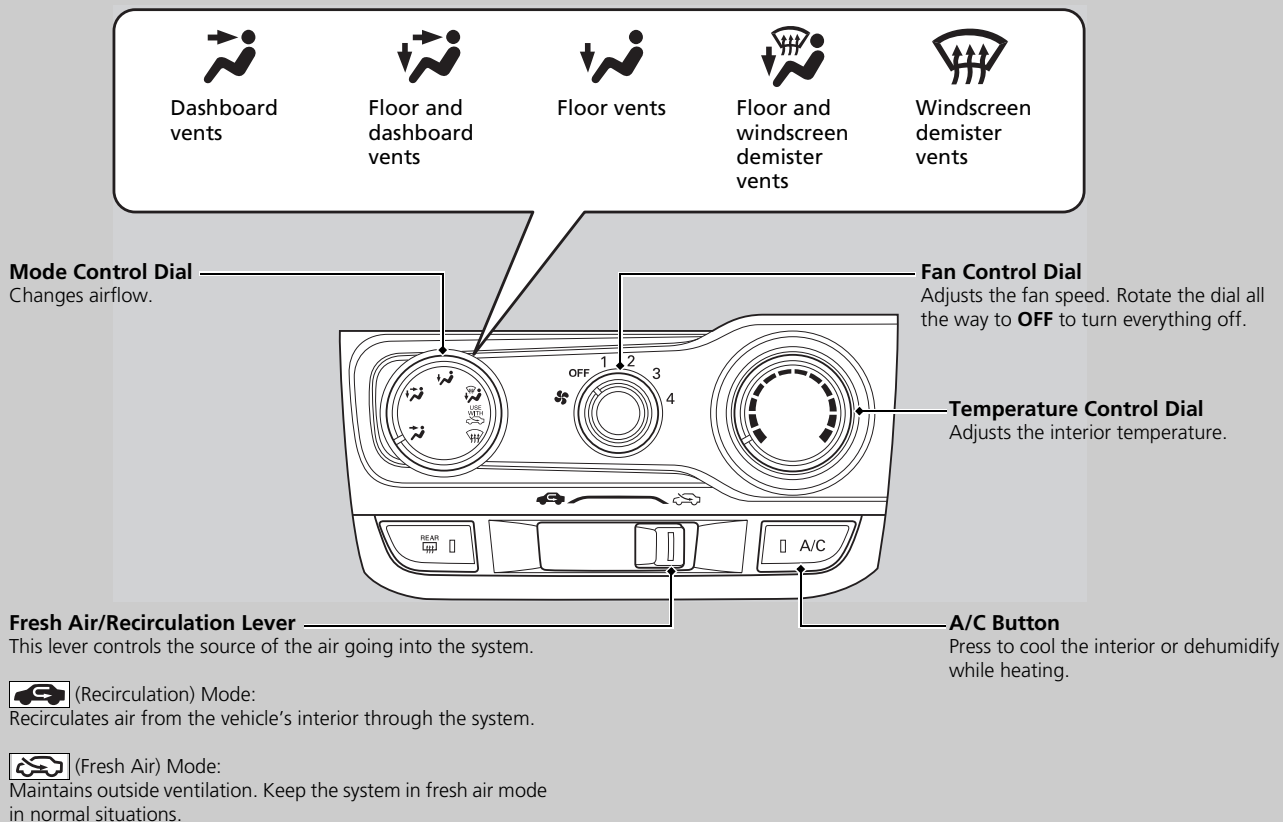
* Not available on all models

▣ Luggage Area Cover*

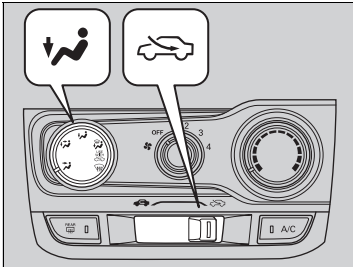
Do not place items on the luggage area cover, or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop.

Do not apply excessive pressure to the cover, such as leaning on it to retrieve an item.



Using Vents, Heating* and A/C





■ Heating*



The heater uses heat from the engine coolant to warm the air.



1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Select  and .
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.

■ To rapidly warm up the interior

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Select .
3. Set the temperature to maximum warm.
4. Select .

■ To dehumidify the interior

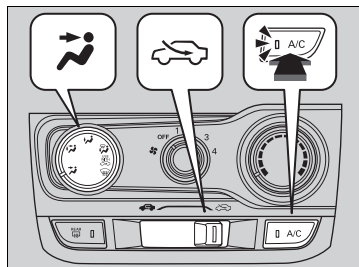
When used in combination with the heater, the air conditioning system makes the interior warm and dry and can prevent the windows from fogging up.



1. Turn the fan on.
2. Press the **A/C** button to turn on the air conditioning.
3. Select  and . Adjust the temperature to your preference.

►► To rapidly warm up the interior



Change to fresh air mode as soon as the interior gets warm enough. The windows may fog up if kept in recirculation mode.

■ Cooling

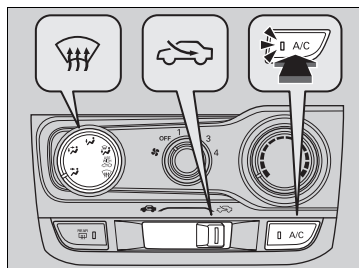




1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Select  and .
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.
4. Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).

■ To rapidly cool down the interior



1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Select .
3. Set the temperature to maximum cool.
4. Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).
5. Select .

■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



1. Set the fan to the high speed.
2. Select .
3. Select .
4. Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).

■ To rapidly defrost the windows

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Select .
3. Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).
4. Select .
5. Set the temperature to maximum warm.

►► To rapidly cool down the interior

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows.

►► Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

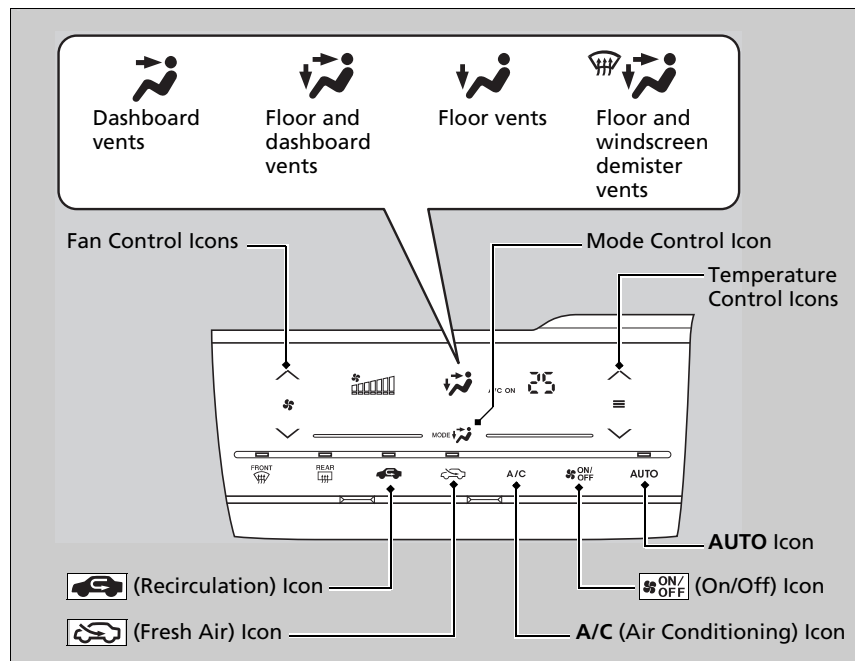
►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.

If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated* or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Select the **AUTO** icon.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control icons.
3. Select the **ON/OFF** icon to cancel.

* Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any icons are selected while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the icon that was selected will take priority.

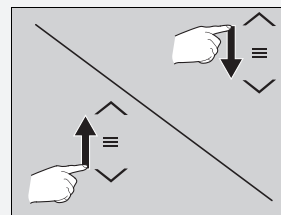
The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the icon that was selected will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** icon is selected.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.



When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.


You can raise or lower the temperature or fan speed setting flicking either control icon.




Continued

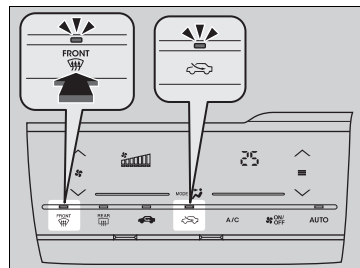
■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Select the  or  icon to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.


 Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

 Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.



■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows




South African models

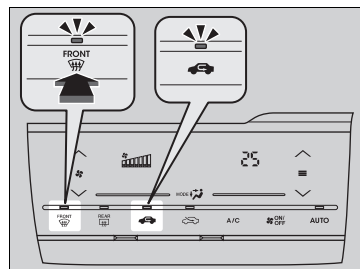
Select the  icon to turn the air conditioning system on and automatically switch the system to fresh air mode.

Except South African models

Select the  icon to turn the air conditioning system on. Select  to switch the system to fresh air mode.

All models


Select the  icon again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.



■ To rapidly defrost the windows

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select the  icon.

►► Using Automatic Climate Control

Selecting the  icon switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

Models with ECON button

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

►► Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

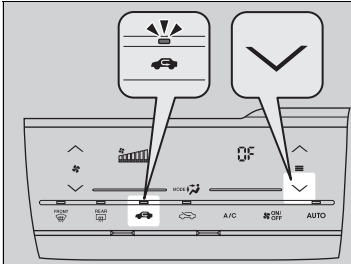
If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

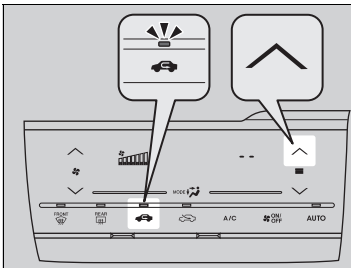
■ Turning On and Off the Touch Screen Beep

You hear the beep when operating the climate control system on the touch screen. This can be turned on and off.



To turn off the beep:

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
2. Touch the of the temperature control icon five times while pressing and holding the .
3. Release the , after -- blinks five times and **OF** is displayed.



To turn on the beep:

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
2. Touch the of the temperature control icon five times while pressing and holding the .
3. Release the , after **OF** blinks five times and -- is displayed.

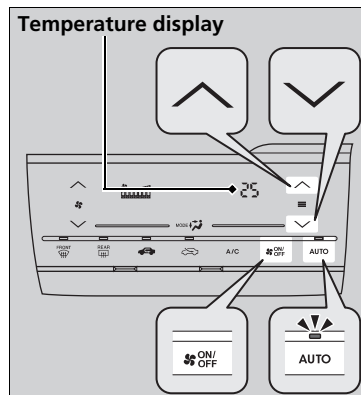
►► Using Automatic Climate Control





If you touch any other icons during this procedure, the setting may fail. In this case, once you turn the ignition switch to LOCK *1, then follow this procedure again.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


■ Touch Panel Sensitivity Setting

You can set the level of sensitivity of the touch control panel to high, normal, or low.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}.
2. Press and hold the **AUTO** icon, then press any of the following icons five times to set the level.
 - : High (**Hi**)^{*2}.
 - Previous setting blinks five times and **Hi** will be displayed in the temperature display area.
 - : Normal (--)
 - Previous setting blinks five times and -- will be displayed in the temperature display area.
 - : Low (**Lo**)
 - Previous setting blinks five times and **Lo** will be displayed in the temperature display area.
3. Release the **AUTO** icon.

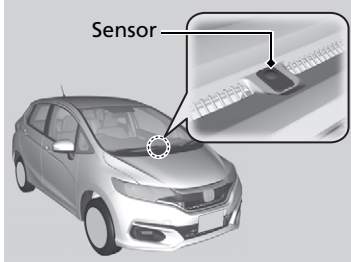
►► Touch Panel Sensitivity Setting

If you touch any other icons during this procedure, the setting may fail. In this case, once you turn the ignition switch to LOCK ^{*1}, then follow this procedure again.

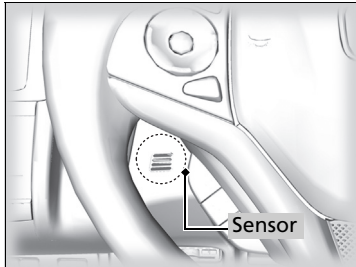
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Default setting

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System*

About Your Audio System	202
USB Port(s)	203
HDMI™ Port*	204
Auxiliary Input Jack*	205
Audio Antenna	206
Audio Remote Controls*	207

Models with monochrome audio system

Audio System Basic Operation	209
---	-----

Models with colour audio system

Audio System Basic Operation	227
---	-----

Models with display audio system

Audio System Basic Operation	247
Audio Error Messages*	274
CD Player*	274
iPod/USB Flash Drive	275

General Information on the Audio

System*	276
Customized Features*	280

Models with monochrome audio system

Hands-Free Telephone System	300
--	-----

Models with colour audio system

Hands-Free Telephone System	327
--	-----

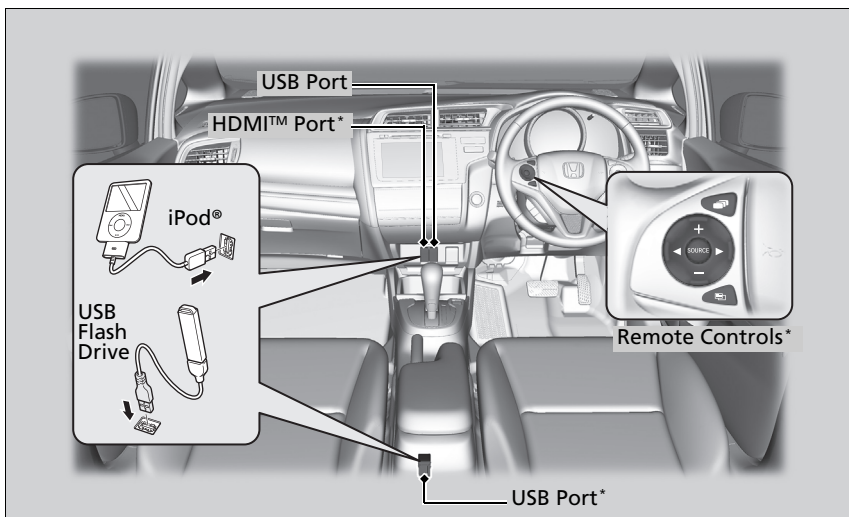
Models with display audio system

Hands-Free Telephone System	350
--	-----

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play audio CDs*, WMA/MP3/AAC files, USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone, and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls* on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface*.

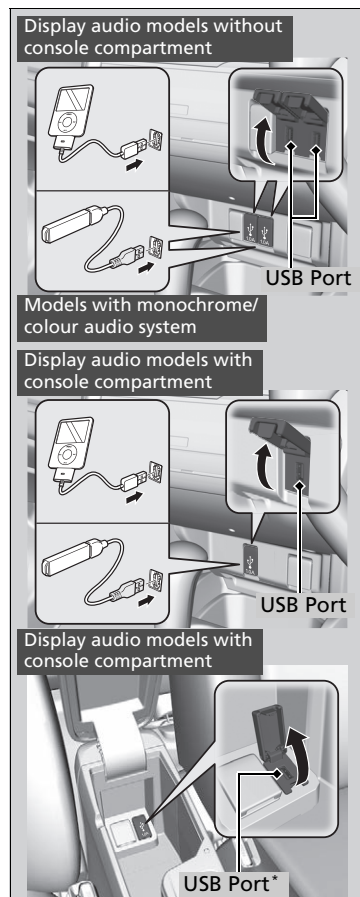


About Your Audio System

Video CDs, DVDs, and 8-cm mini CDs are not supported.

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

USB Port(s)



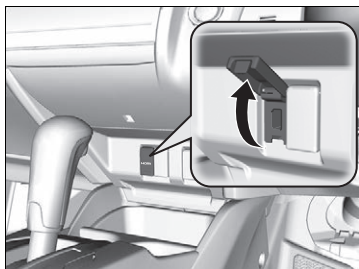
1. Open the cover.
2. Install the device USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

* Not available on all models

HDMI™ Port*



1. Open the cover.
2. Install the HDMI™ cable to the HDMI™ port.

⌘ HDMI™ Port*

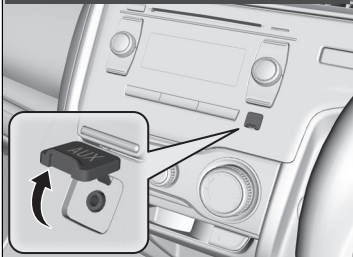
- Do not leave the HDMI™ connected device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

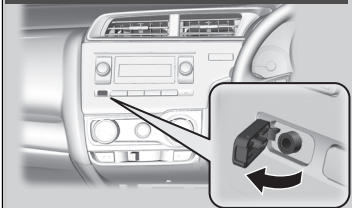
Auxiliary Input Jack*

Use the jack to connect standard audio devices.

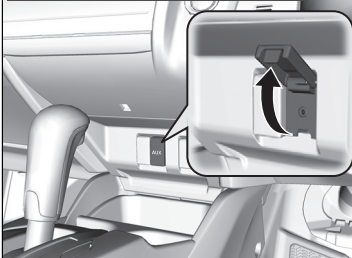
Models with monochrome audio system with CD player



Models with monochrome audio system without CD player



Models with colour audio system



1. Open the **AUX** cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 3.5 mm stereo miniplug.
▶ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

▶▶ Auxiliary Input Jack*

To switch the mode, press any of the audio mode buttons. You can return to AUX mode by pressing the **CD/AUX** or **SOURCE** button.

* Not available on all models

Audio Antenna

Rear antenna type



Front antenna type



Your vehicle is equipped with a removable antenna on the roof.

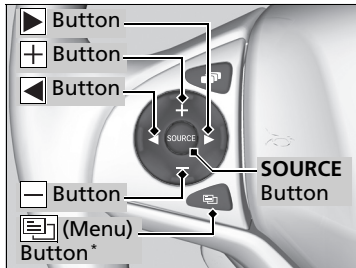
▶▶ Audio Antenna

NOTICE

Before using a “drive-through” car wash, remove the antenna by unscrewing it by hand. This prevents the antenna from being damaged by the car wash brushes.

Audio Remote Controls*

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving.



SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:
FM→AM→CD*→USB→iPod→*Bluetooth*®
Audio→Apps*→AUX/AUX HDMI™*

(Volume) Buttons

Press : To increase the volume.

Press : To decrease the volume.

◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
 - Press** : To select the next preset radio station.
 - Press** : To select the previous preset radio station.
 - Press and hold** : To select the next strong station.
 - Press and hold** : To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a CD*, iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
 - Press** : To skip to the next song.
 - Press** : To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a CD* or USB flash drive
 - Press and hold** : To skip to the next folder.
 - Press and hold** : To go back to the previous folder.






▶▶ Audio Remote Controls*

Some mode appears only when an appropriate device or medium is used.


Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.

Models with display audio system



Steering Wheel (Menu) Button

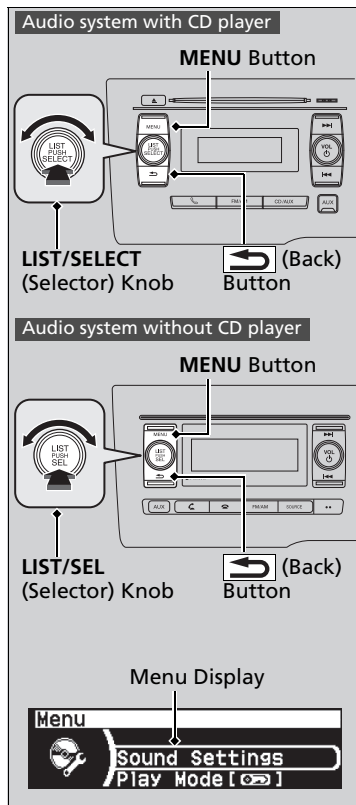
- When listening to the radio
Press : To display the menu items. You can select **Scan**, **Save Preset**, or **Seek**.
- When listening to a CD or USB flash drive
Press : To display the menu items. You can select **Scan**, **Repeat**, or **Random**.
- When listening to an iPod
Press : To display the menu items. You can select **Repeat** or **Shuffle**.
- When listening to a *Bluetooth*® Audio
Press : To display the menu items. You can select **Pause** or **Play**.
- When watching a video
Press : To display the menu items. You can select **Scan**, **Repeat**, **Random** or **Play/Pause**.

►► Audio Remote Controls*


The  button is available only when the audio mode is FM, AM, CD, USB, iPod, or *Bluetooth*® Audio.

Models with monochrome audio system


To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON *1.



Use the selector knob or **MENU** button to access some audio functions.


Press  to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

LIST/SELECT (Selector) knob/LIST/SEL (Selector) knob:

Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press  to set your selection.

MENU button: Press to select any mode.

The available mode includes the clock adjustment*, auto select, save preset, sound settings, *Bluetooth*® setup, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from scan, random, repeat, and so on.

 **(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous display.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.





Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

Audio Menu Items

- **Sound Settings** P. 210
- **Play Mode** P. 216, 220, 223
- **Scan** P. 213, 217, 224
- **Auto Select** P. 212
- **Save Preset** P. 212
- **Resume/Pause** P. 226

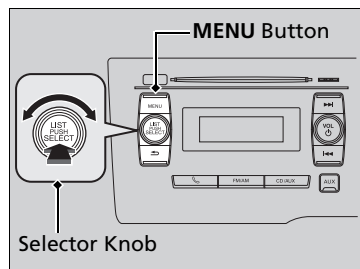
Models with audio remote control buttons

Press the **SOURCE**, , ,  or  button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

➤ **Audio Remote Controls*** P. 207

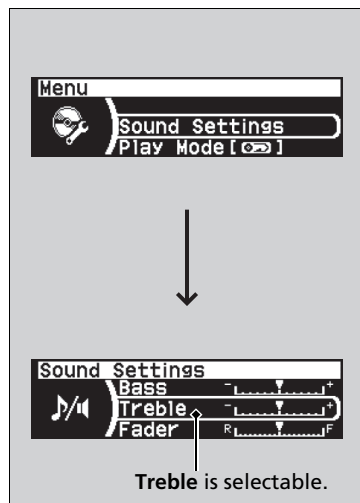
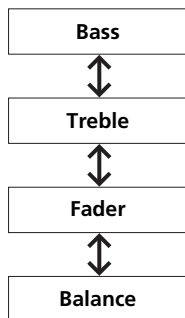
* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Sound

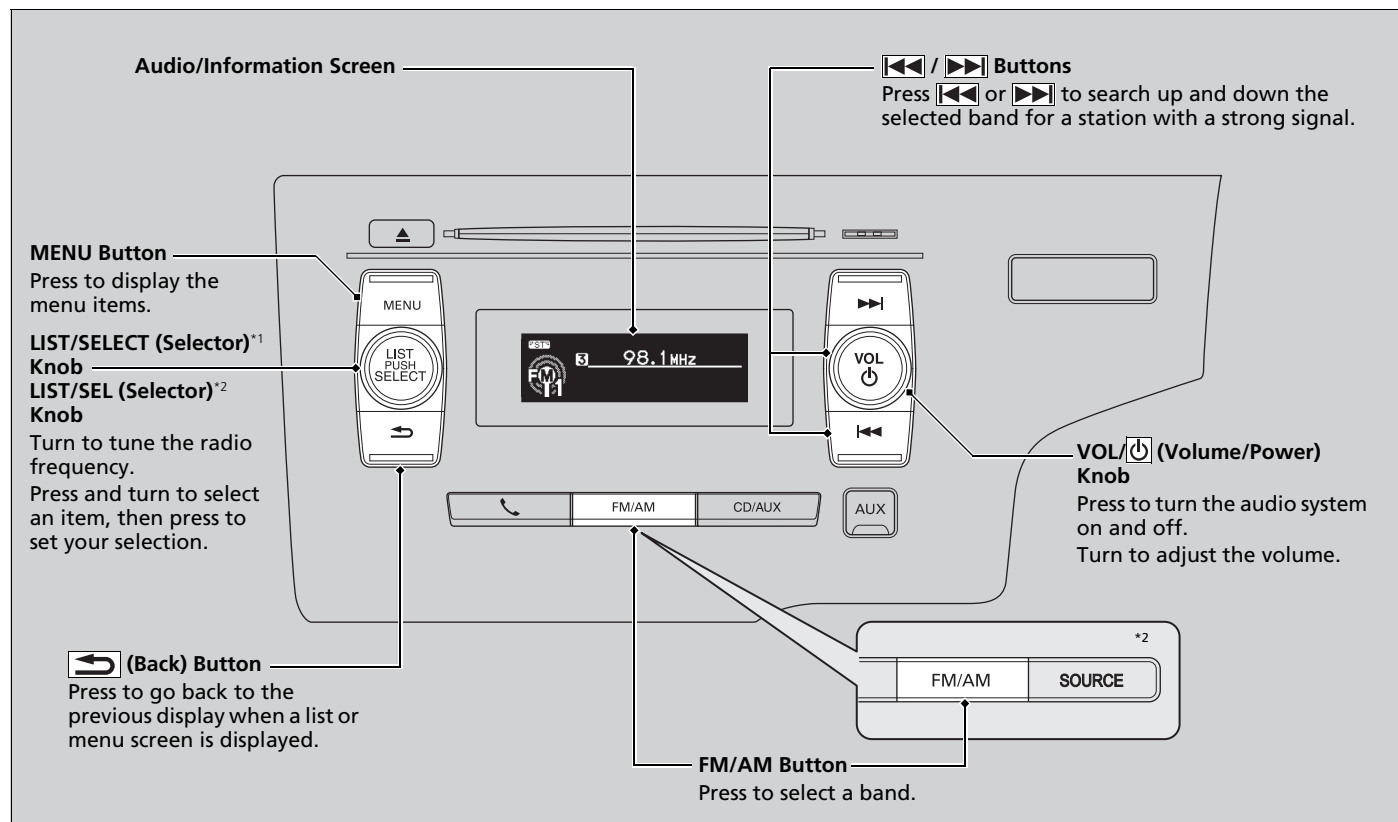


1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Sound Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select the mode, then press .

Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



Playing AM/FM Radio







*1: Audio system with CD player

*2: Audio system without CD player

■ Auto Select





Use the auto select feature to scan both bands and store the strongest station in each preset.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Auto Select**, then press .
▶ The system goes into scan mode for several seconds.




To turn off auto select, press **MENU** button and rotate  to select **Auto Select**, then press .

■ Preset Memory

Uses the preset memory feature to store a station in each preset.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate  to select **Save Preset**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select the preset number you want to store that station, then press .

You can also store that station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press  to switch to the preset list mode.
3. Rotate  to select a preset number, then press and hold .

▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The selected radio frequency is shown on the centre display.

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory. FM1 and FM2 let you store 6 stations each.

Auto Select function scans and stores up to 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations with a strong signal into the preset button memory.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can manually store your preferred frequencies.

Models with audio remote control buttons




Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls*** P. 207

■ Preset List

Lists the preset stations on the selected band.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press  to switch to the preset list mode.
3. Rotate  to select a preset station, then press .

■ Scan

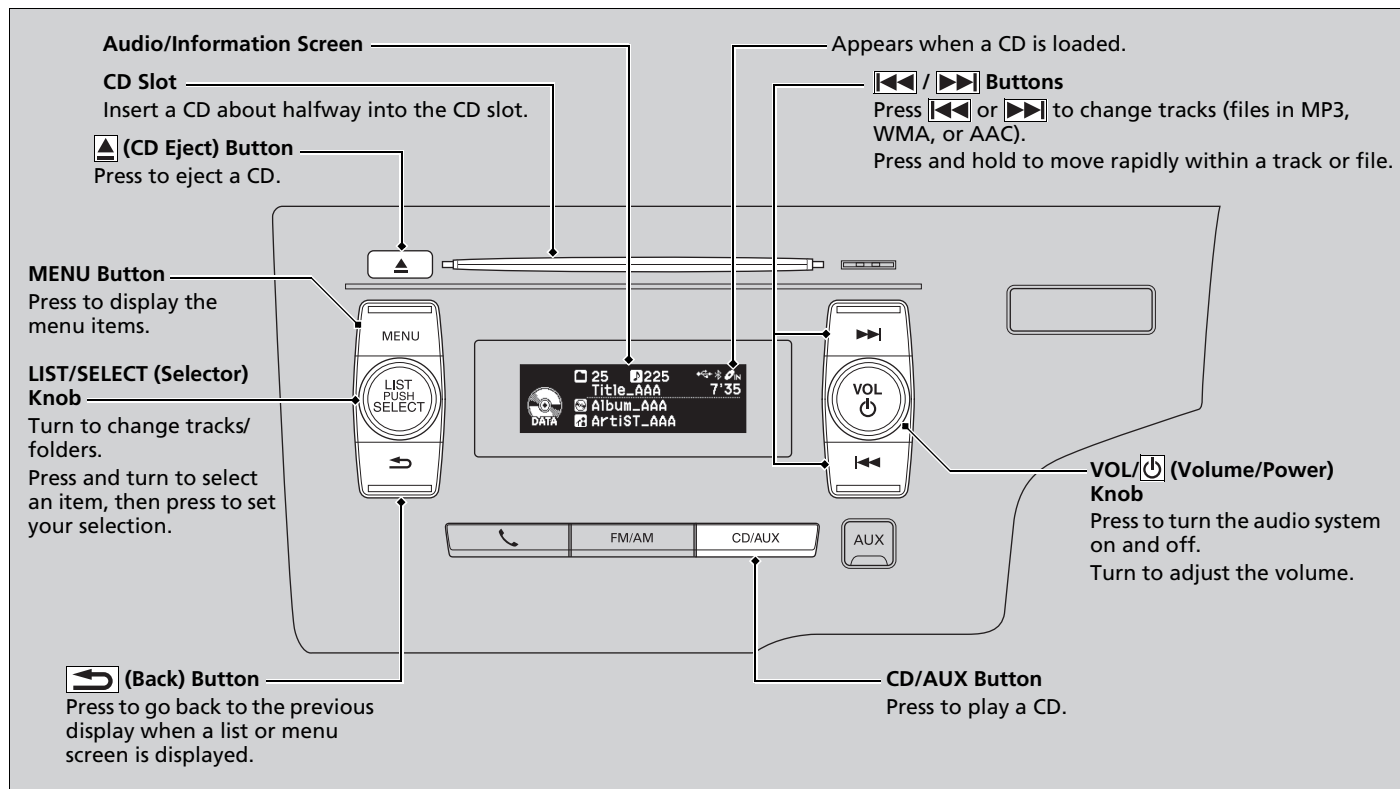
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

Playing a CD *

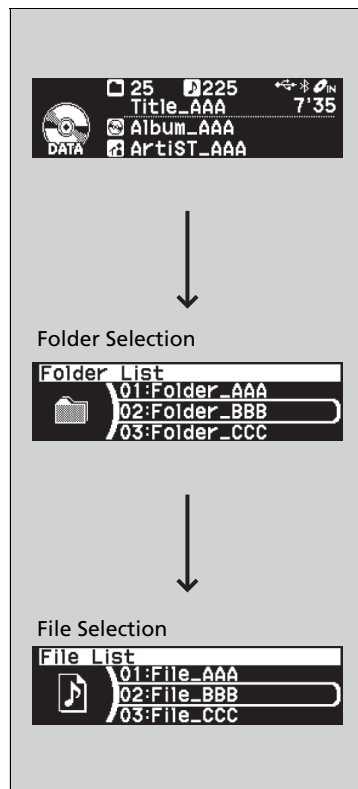
Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, press the **CD/AUX** button.



*1 : Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

* Not available on all models

How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Press to display a folder list.

2. Rotate to select a folder.

3. Press to display a list of files in that folder.

4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

▶▶ Playing a CD *

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

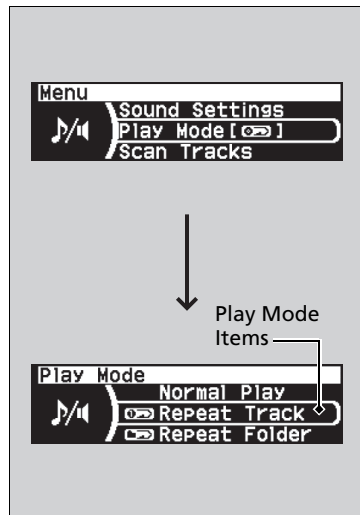
- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

* Not available on all models

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a track or file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Normal Play

Repeat Track: Repeats the current track/file.

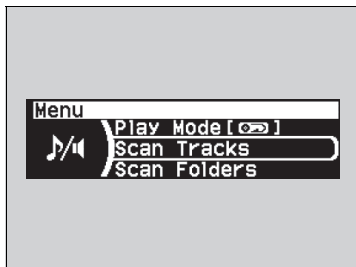
Repeat Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

Scan

You can select scan modes when playing a track or file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan Tracks** or **Scan Folders**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

Scan

Scan mode menu items

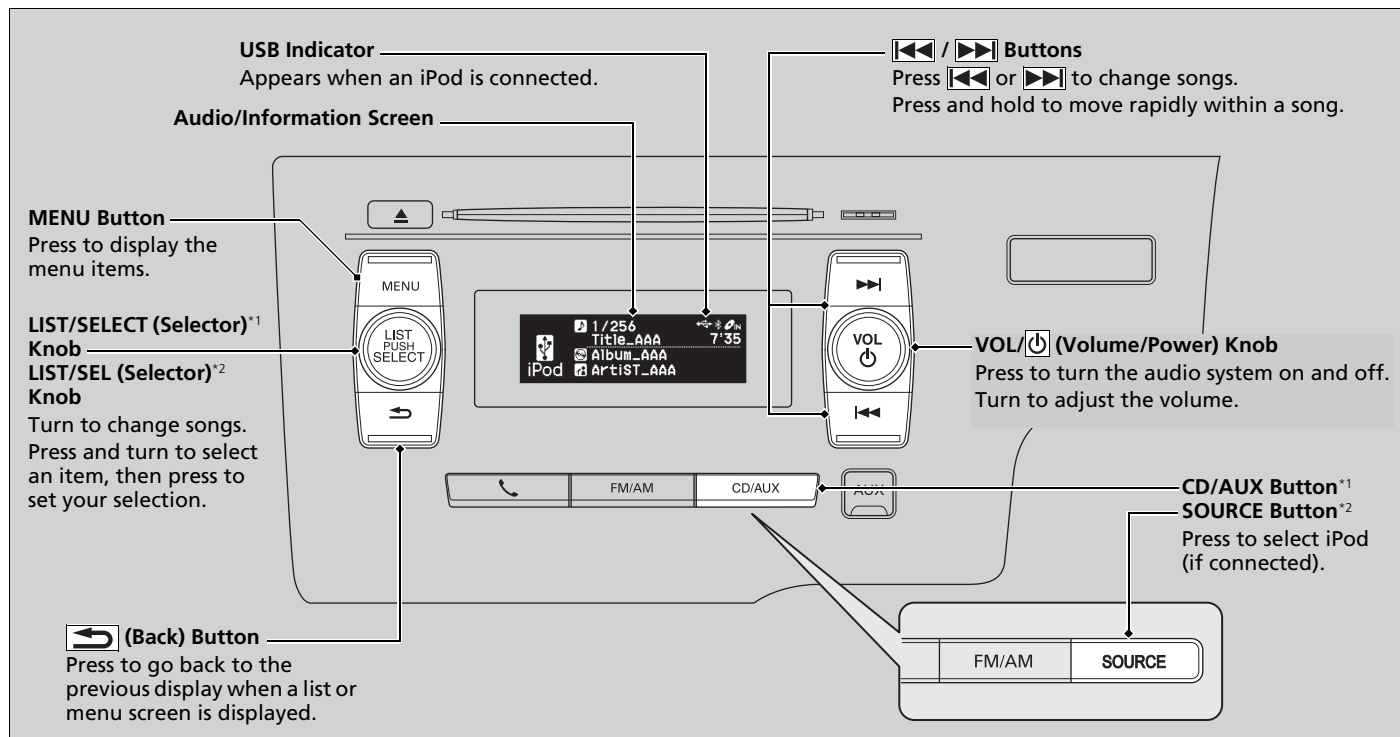
Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Playing an iPod

Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to a USB port, then press the **CD/AUX** or **SOURCE** button.

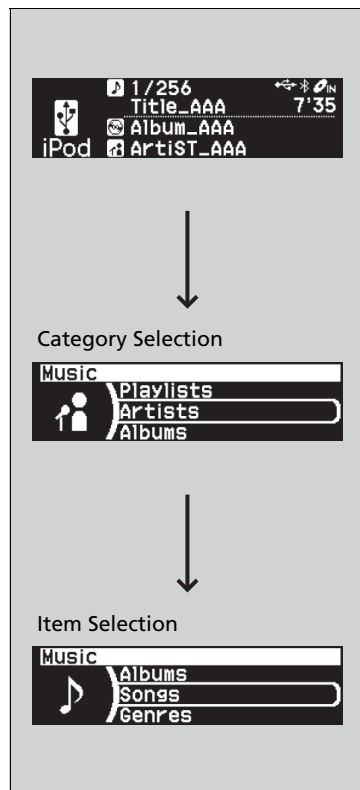
📌 **USB Port(s)** P. 203



*1: Audio system with CD player

*2: Audio system without CD player

How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display an iPod music list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

▶ Repeat this procedure until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

▶▶ Playing an iPod

Operating functions vary depending on the model or version of the iPod or iPhone used. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

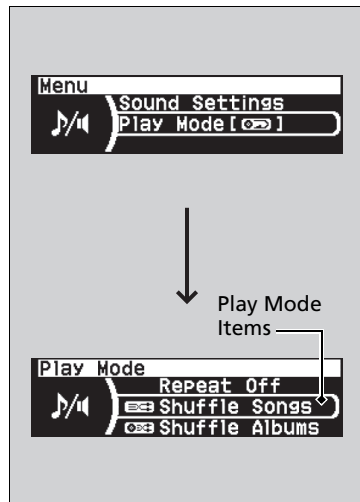
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 275

Continued

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Normal Play

Repeat Track: Repeats the current song.

Repeat Off: Turns off the repeat mode.

Shuffle Off: Turns off the shuffle mode.

Shuffle Song: Plays all available songs in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

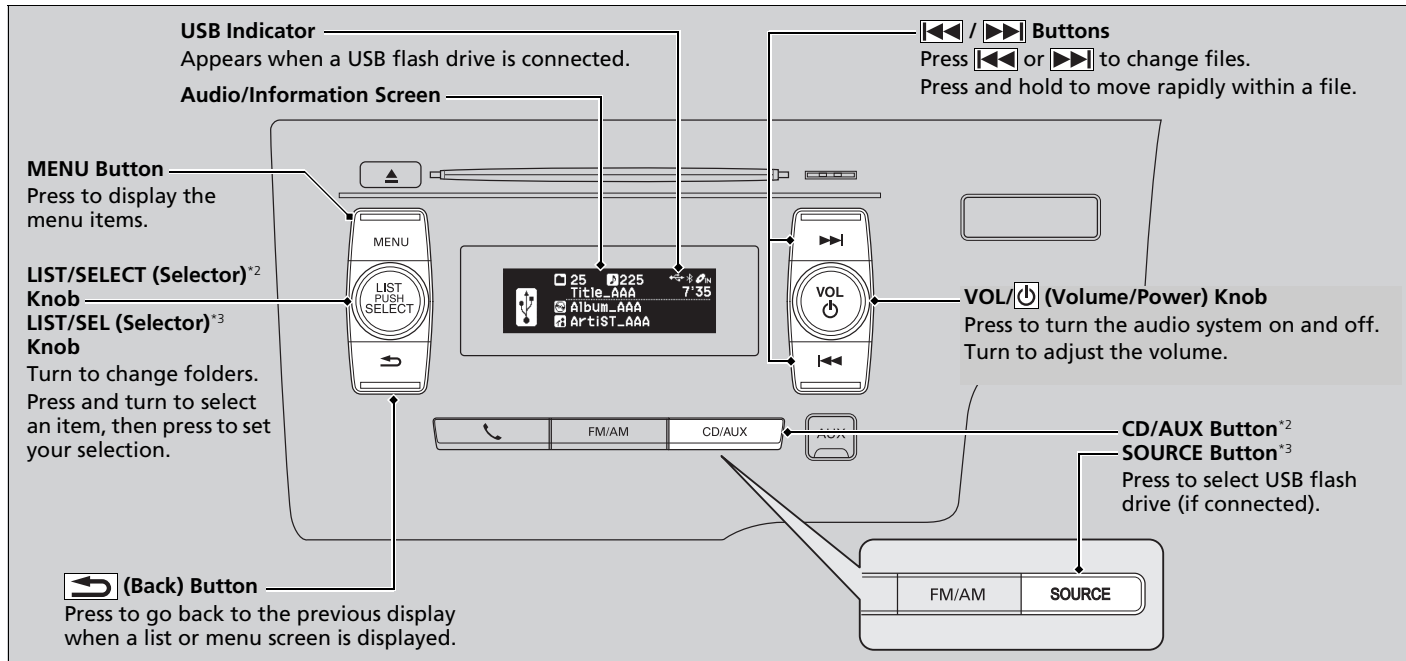
Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC*¹ format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **CD/AUX** or **SOURCE** button.

■ **USB Port(s)** P. 203

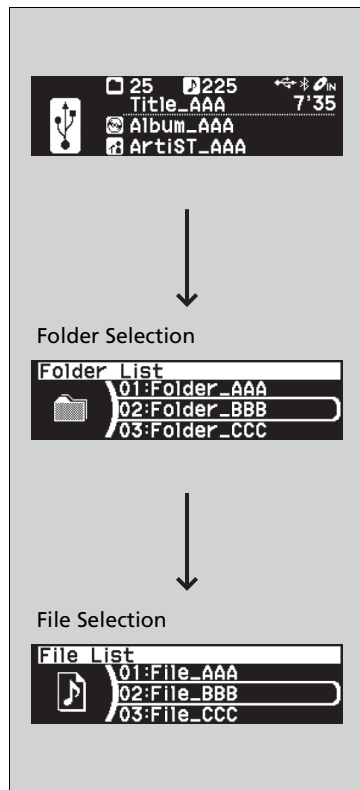


*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2: Audio system with CD player

*3: Audio system without CD player

■ How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob



1. Press to switch the display to a folder list.

2. Rotate to select a folder.

3. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.

4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

General Information on the Audio System*
P. 276

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

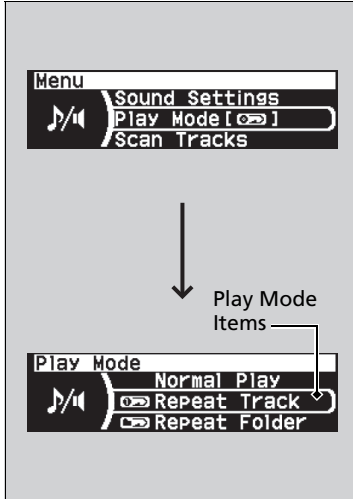
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 275

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Normal Play

Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

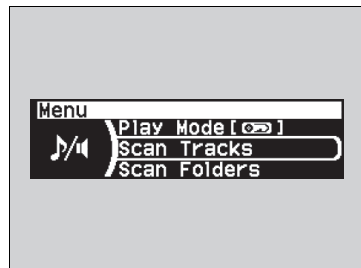
Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All: Plays all files in random order.

■ Scan

You can select scan modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan Tracks** or **Scan Folders**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

▶▶ Scan

Scan mode menu items

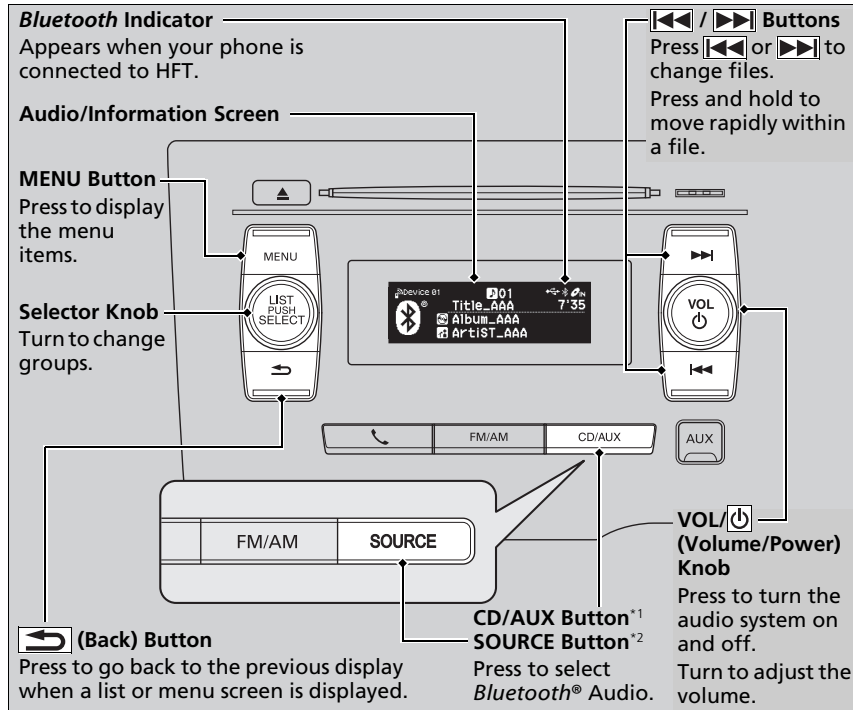
Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the folder.

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone. This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

🔧 Phone Setup P. 307



*1: Audio system with CD player
*2: Audio system without CD player

▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

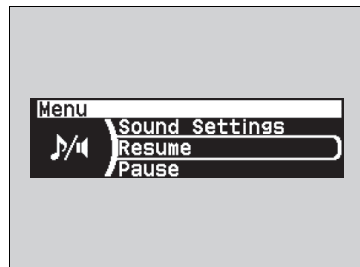
It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.



■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
2. Press the **CD/AUX** or **SOURCE** button.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Pause** or **Resume**, then press .

▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

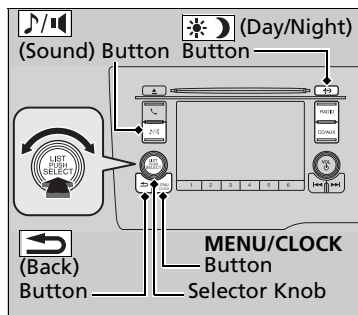
The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack or USB port, you may need to press the **CD/AUX** or **SOURCE** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

Models with colour audio system

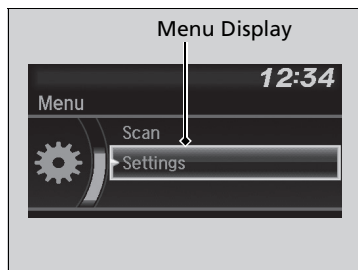
To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**.



Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.



MENU/CLOCK button: Press to select any mode.

The available modes include the wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play mode choices include scan, random, repeat, and so on.

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous display.

(Sound) button: Press to select the sound setting mode.

(Day/Night) button: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness. Press , then adjust the brightness using .

► Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and **OFF** mode.

Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

Audio Menu Items

- **Adjust Clock** P. 122
- **Wallpaper Setup** P. 229
- **Display Setup** P. 232
- **Scan** P. 234, 237, 243
- **Play Mode** P. 237, 240, 243
- **Bluetooth** P. 244

Press the button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

► **Audio Remote Controls*** P. 207

One of the operating systems used in this unit is eCos.

For software license terms and conditions, visit their website (eCos license URL:

<http://ecos.sourceforge.org/license-overview.html>)

For source code disclosure and other details regarding eCos, visit:

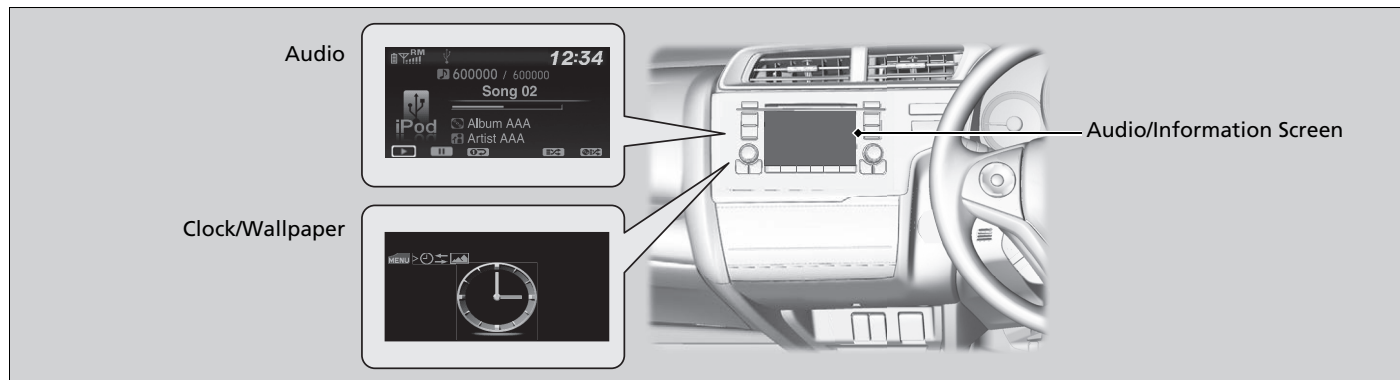
<http://www.hondaopensource2.com>

* Not available on all models

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display



Audio

Shows the current audio information.

Clock/Wallpaper

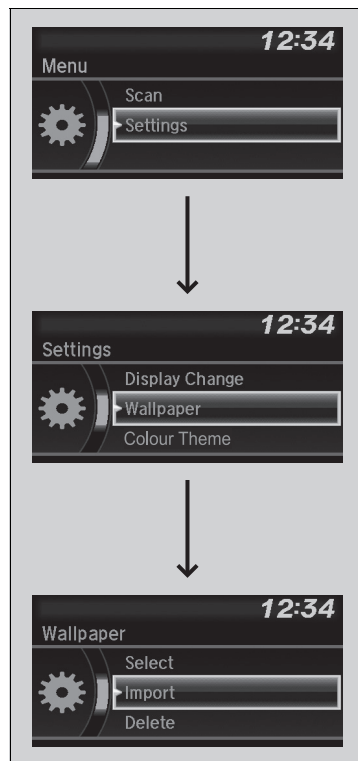
Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

Change display

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
 2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
 3. Rotate to select **Display Change**, then press .
 4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
- ▶ If you want to return to the audio display, select **Audio**.

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.



■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.









1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 203
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Import**, then press .
▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate to select a desired picture, then press .
▶ The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press to save the picture.
8. Press to select **OK**.
9. Rotate to select a location to save the picture, then press .
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

▶▶ Wallpaper Setup








- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

Continued









■ Select wallpaper

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Select**, then press .
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a desired wallpaper, then press .


■ To view wallpaper once it is set

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Display Change**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to set, then press .

■ Delete wallpaper

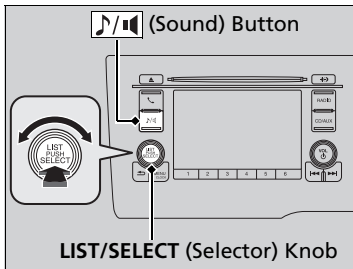
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Delete**, then press .
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
6. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

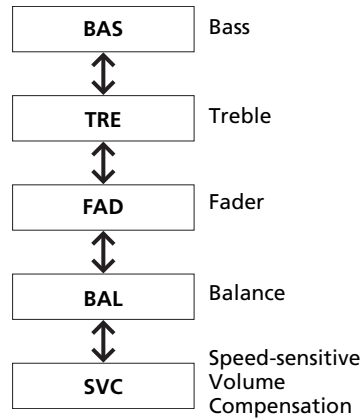
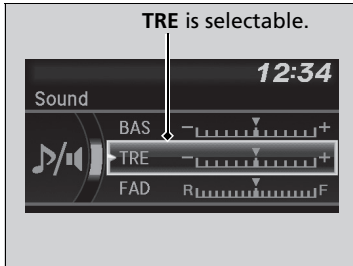
To go back to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Adjusting the Sound



Press the (sound) button, and rotate to scroll through the following choices:



Rotate to adjust the sound setting, then press .

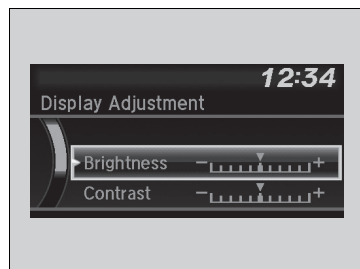
Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

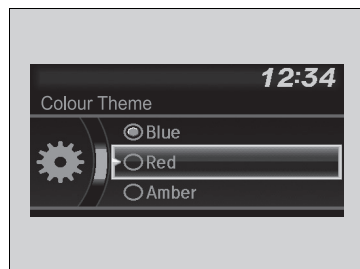
You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display Adjustment**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
5. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

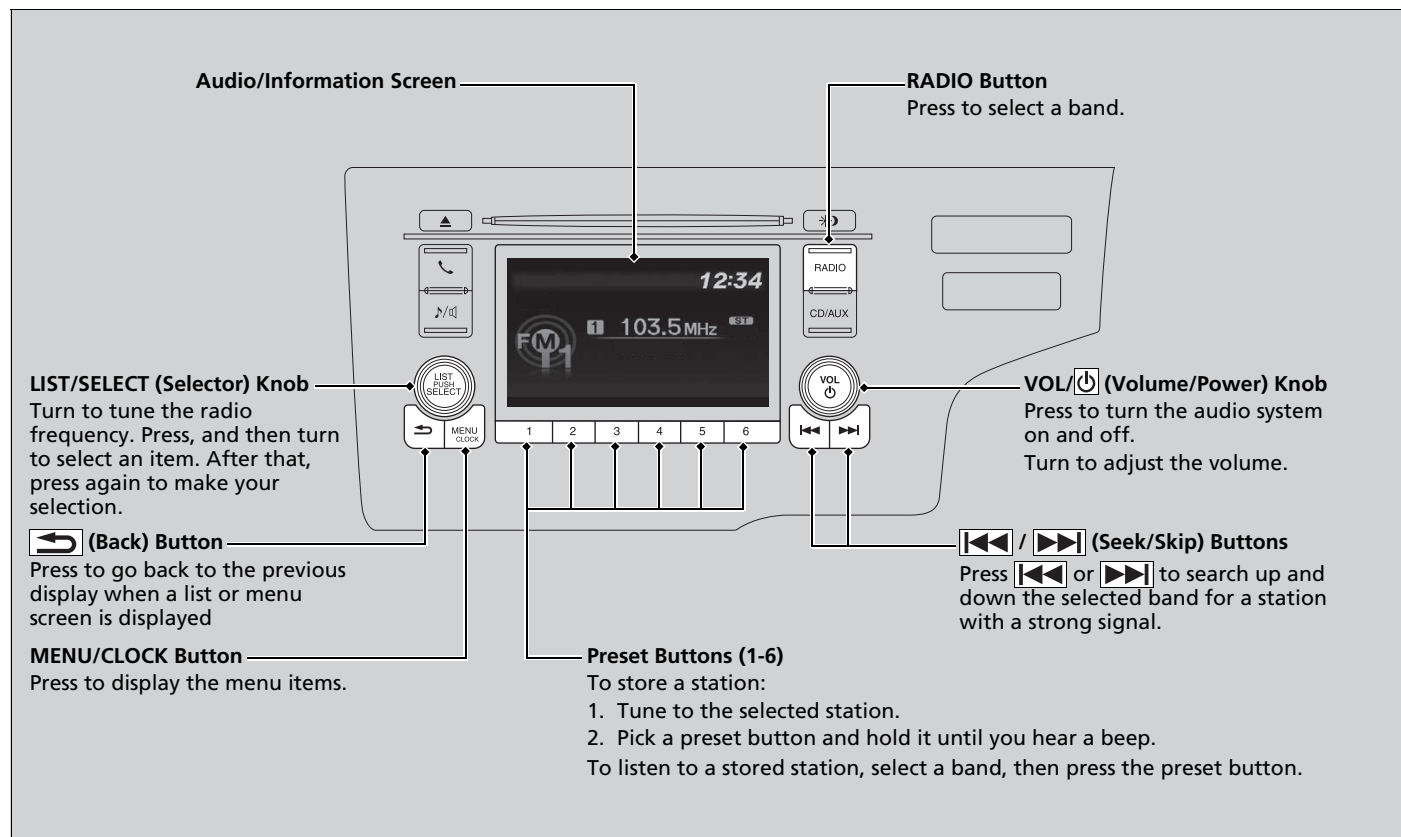


1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Colour Theme**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

▣ Changing the Screen Brightness




You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Playing AM/FM Radio






■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Press  while listening to a radio.
2. Rotate  to select the station, then press .

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press  while listening to a radio.
2. Rotate  to select **Update List**, then press .

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

►► Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.

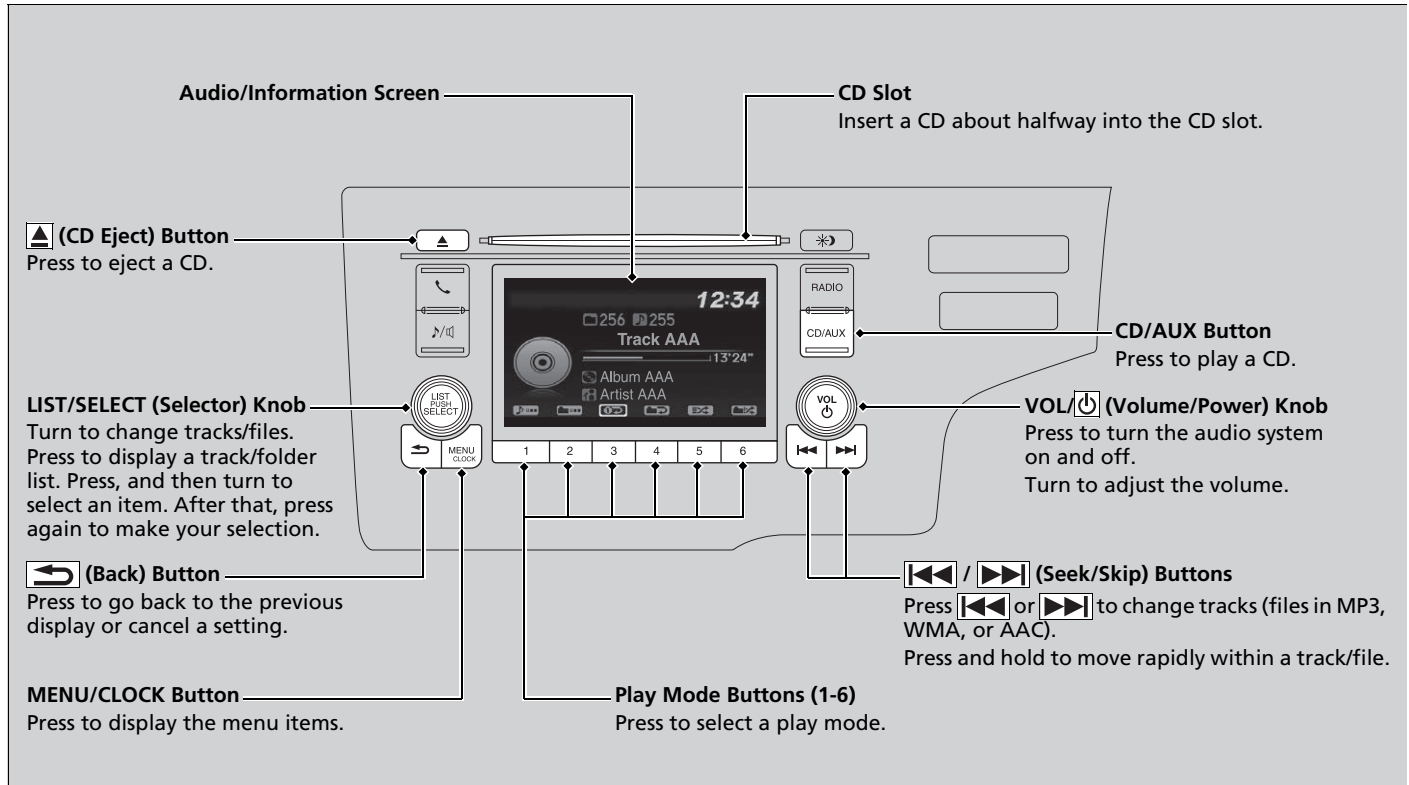
Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.

► **Audio Remote Controls*** P. 207

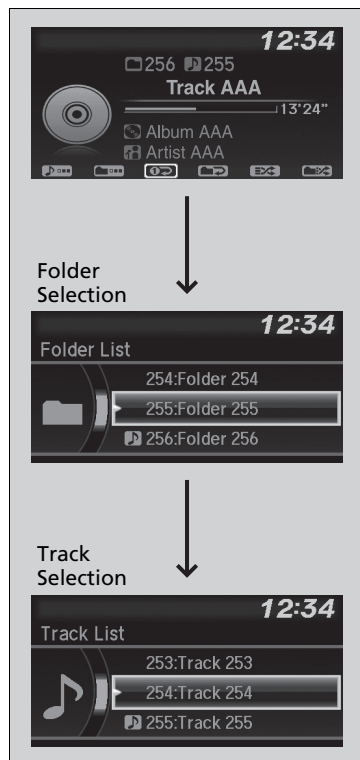
Playing a CD

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs, and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, press the **CD/AUX** button.



*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Press to switch the display to a folder list.

2. Rotate to select a folder.

3. Press to display a list of files in that folder.

4. Rotate to select a track, then press .

▶▶ Playing a CD

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable file**, then skips to the next file.

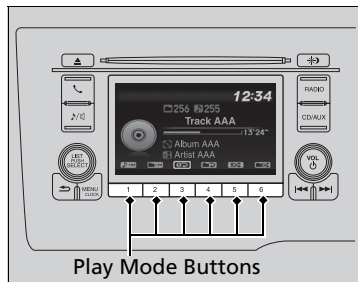
Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a track or file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Repeat

Repeat One Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat One Track: Repeats the current track/file.

Random

Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

Scan

Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

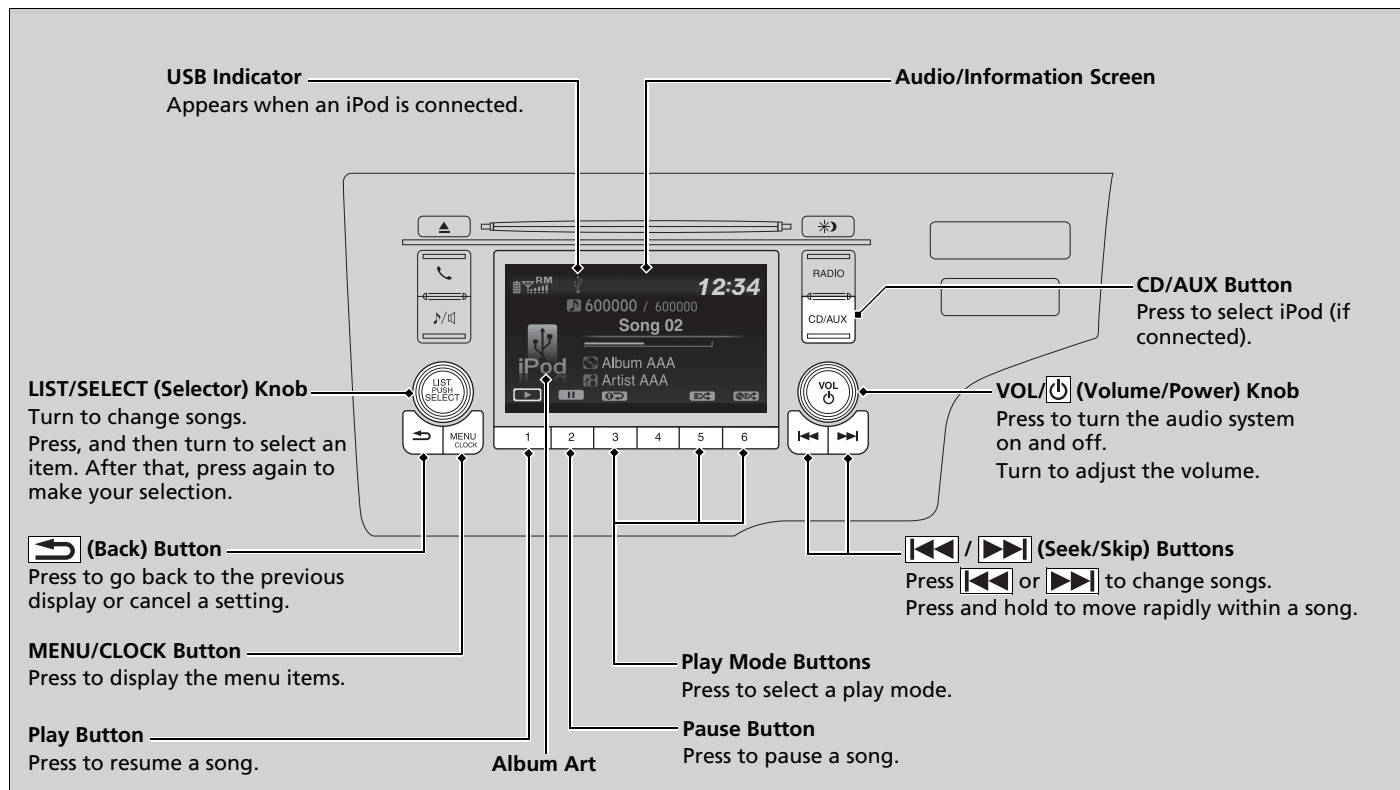
Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then press the **CD/AUX** button.

► **USB Port(s)** P. 203



How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display the iPod music list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

▶▶ Playing an iPod

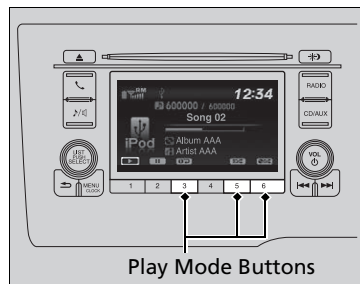
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 275

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

■ To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Shuffle All: Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Repeat One Track: Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

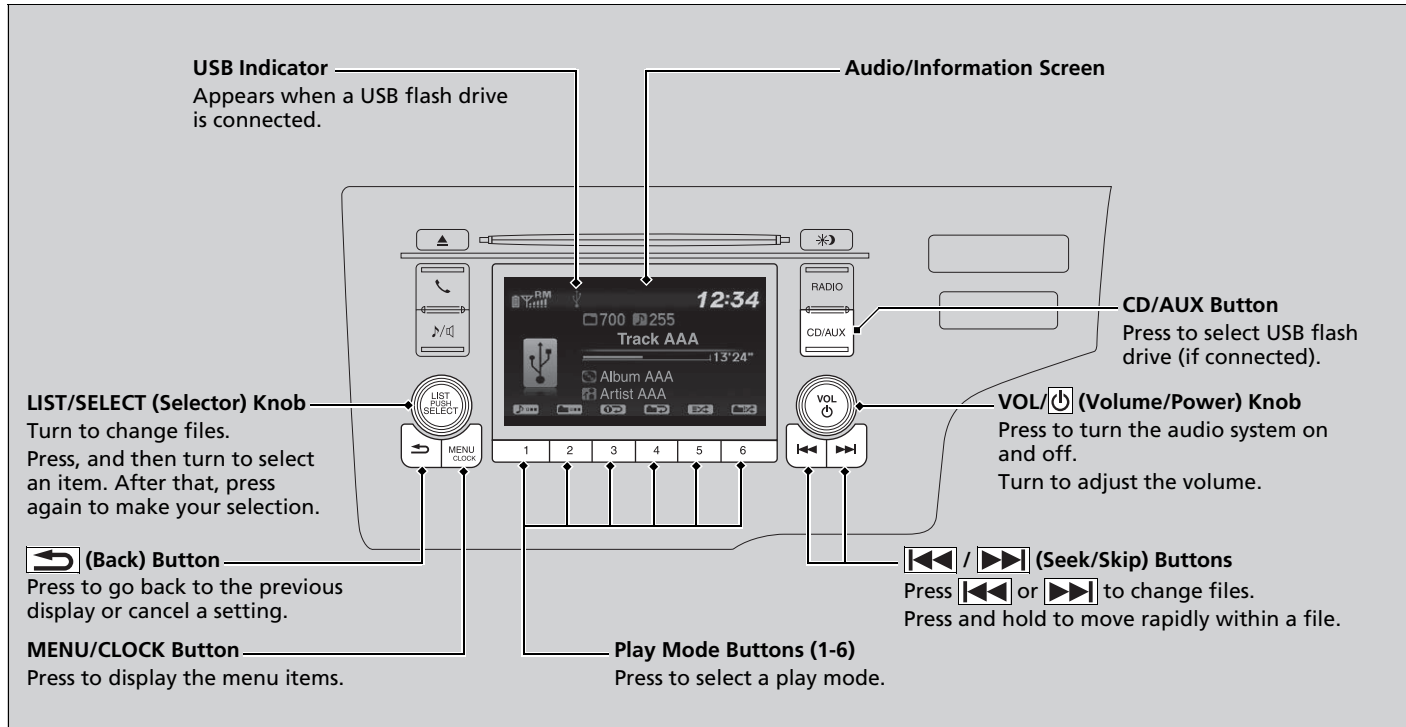
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC*1 format.

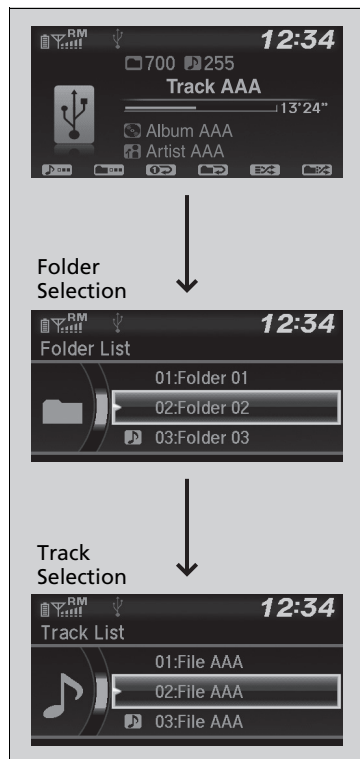
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **CD/AUX** button.

🔌 **USB Port(s)** P. 203





*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob



1. Press  to display a folder list.

2. Rotate  to select a folder.

3. Press  to display a list of files in that folder.

4. Rotate  to select a file, then press .

▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System***
P. 276

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) are not played.

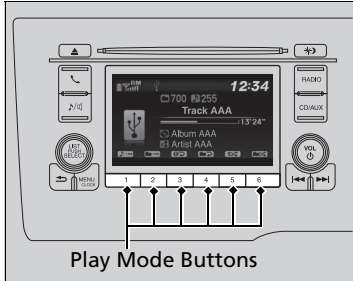
The audio system displays **Unplayable file**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 275

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Repeat

Repeat One Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat One Track: Repeats the current file.

Random

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All: Plays all files in random order.

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

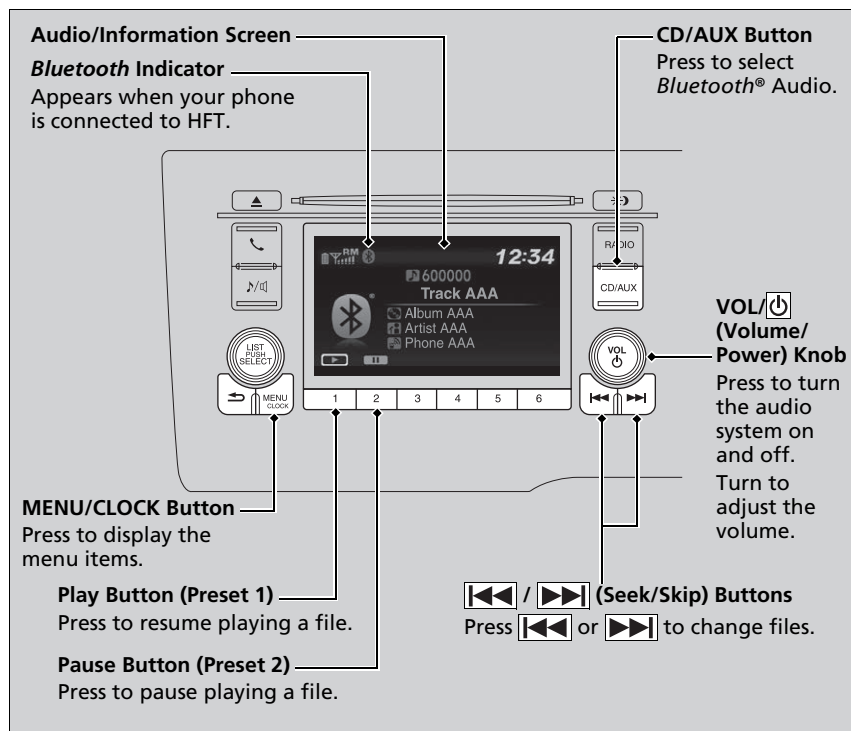
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

☑ **Phone Setup** P. 334



►► Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

In some countries, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

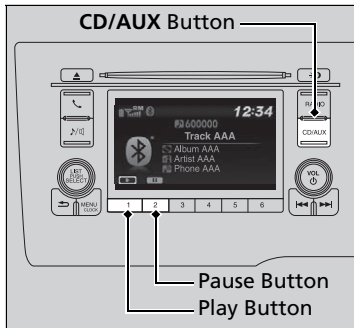
Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

■ To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
2. Press the **CD/AUX** button until the Bluetooth Audio Source is selected.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth®* Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file

Press a **Play** or **Pause** button to select a mode.

▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files

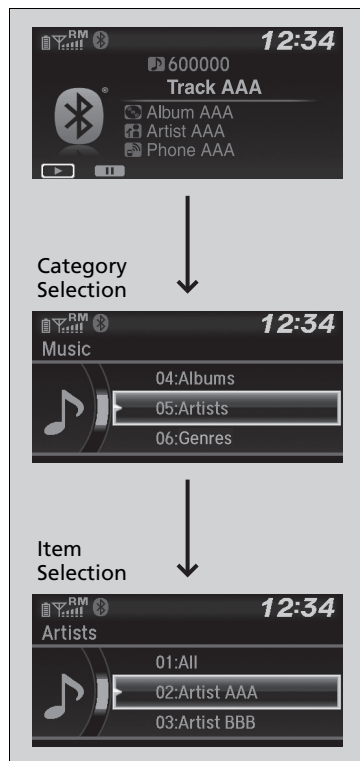
To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.








The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack or USB port, you may need to press the **CD/AUX** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth®* Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob





1. Press  to display the music search list.
2. Rotate  to select a category.
3. Press  to display a list of items in the category.
4. Rotate  to select an item, then press .
 - ▶ Press  and rotate  repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

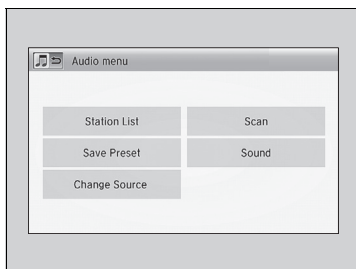
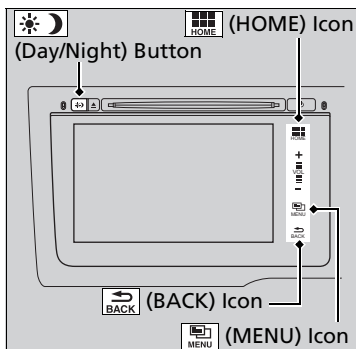
How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

Audio System Basic Operation


Models with display audio system

To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON *1.




: Select to go to the **HOME** screen.

 **Switching the Display** P. 248




: Touch to select any mode.


The available mode includes **Change Source**, **Station List**, **Save Preset**, **Music Search**, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from **Scan**, **Random/Repeat**, and so on.

: Select to go back to the previous display when it is displayed.

 **(Day/Night) button:**

Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.


Press  once and select  or  to make an adjustment.

► Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and **OFF** mode.

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio Menu Items

 **Station List** P. 256

 **Music Search** P. 258, 261, 264

 **Random/Repeat** P. 259, 265

 **Scan** P. 256, 259, 265


*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

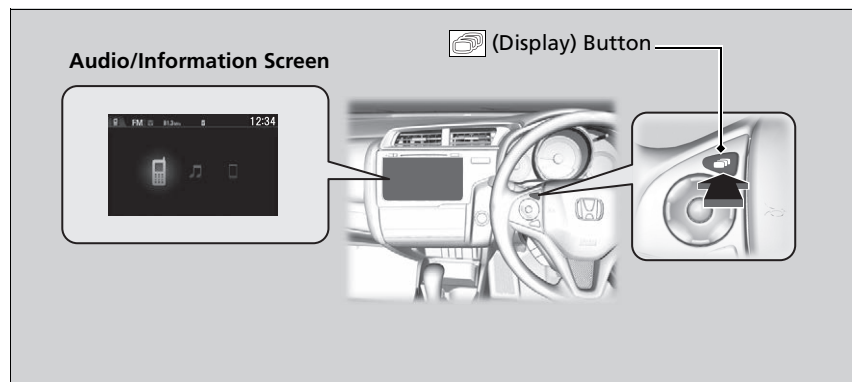
Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

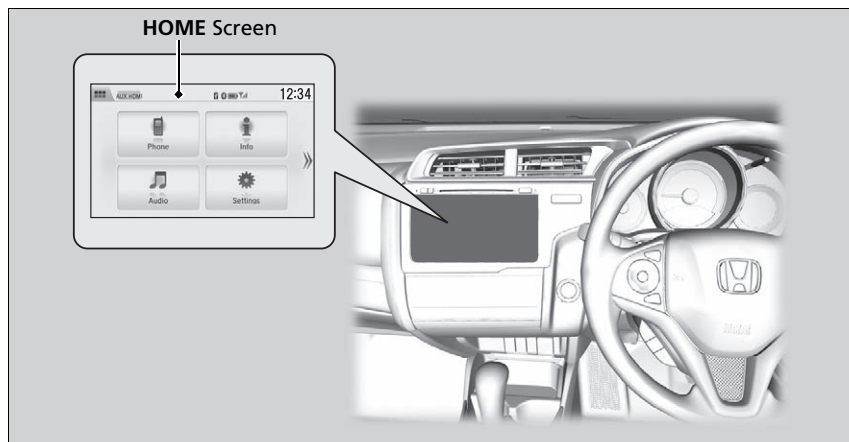
■ Switching the Display

Using the  button

Press the  (display) button on the steering wheel to change the display.



Using the HOME screen



Select **HOME** to go to the **HOME** screen.

Select **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, or **Settings**.

■ Phone

Shows the HFT information.

📞 **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 350

■ Info

Shows the **Trip Computer**, **Clock/Wallpaper**, or **System/Device** information.

■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

⚙️ **Customized Features*** P. 280

* Not available on all models

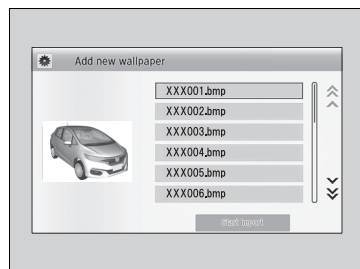
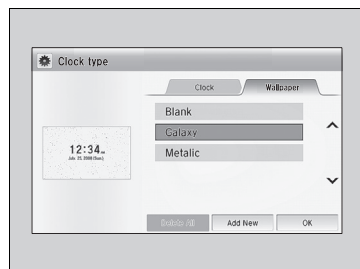
Continued

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.

■ **USB Port(s)** P. 203

2. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
3. Select **Info**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
 - ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
 - ▶ Then the display will return to the wallpaper list.

▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 256 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 5 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

■ To view wallpaper once it is set

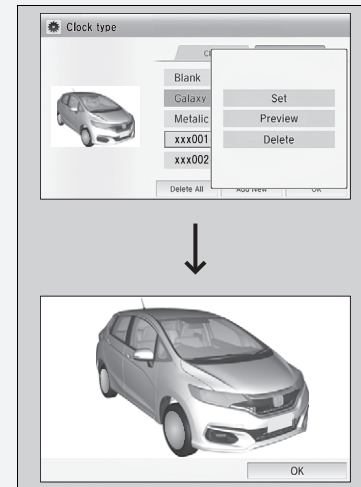
1. Press the  (Home) button.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Press the  (Menu) button.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper**.

■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
 - ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.

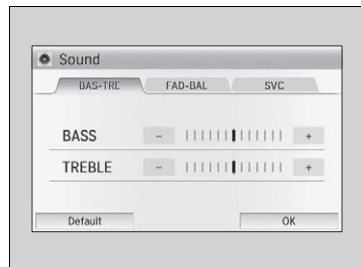
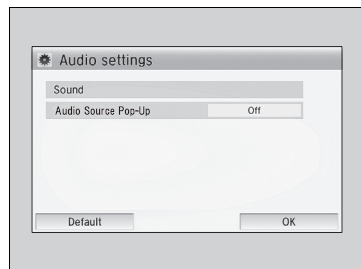


To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or **BACK**.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Sound**.

Select the tabs to adjust the following choices:
BASS, TREBLE, FADER, BALANCE, SVC
 (Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation)

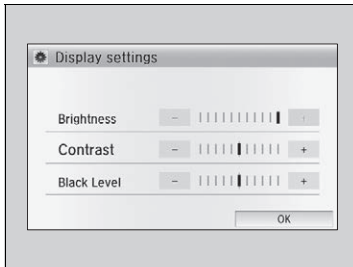
▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off, Low, Mid, and High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

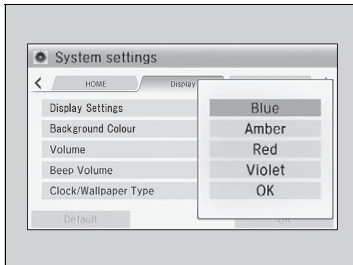
You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

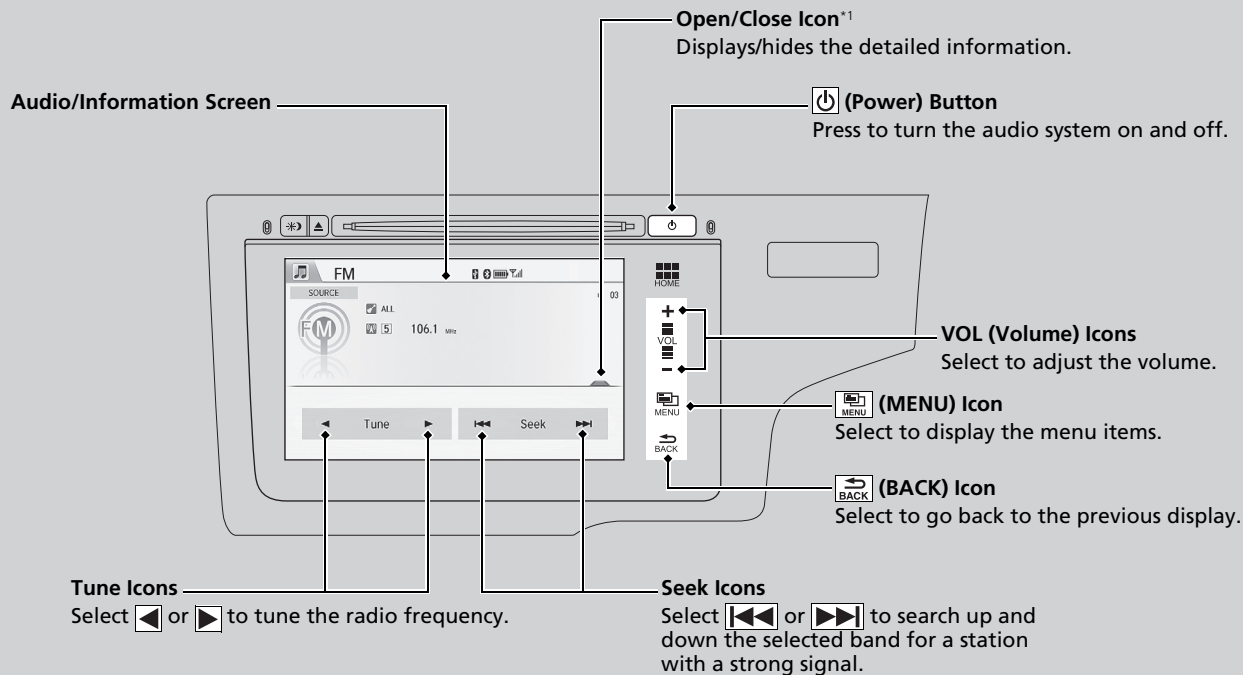


1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Colour**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

▶▶ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Playing AM/FM Radio



*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Save Preset**.
4. Select the preset number you want to store that station.

▶▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the list.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls*** P. 207

You can also switch the mode by selecting **Change Source** on the **MENU** screen.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.

* Not available on all models

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select **MENU** to switch to the **Audio menu** screen.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select **MENU** to switch to the **Audio menu** screen.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select **Refresh**.

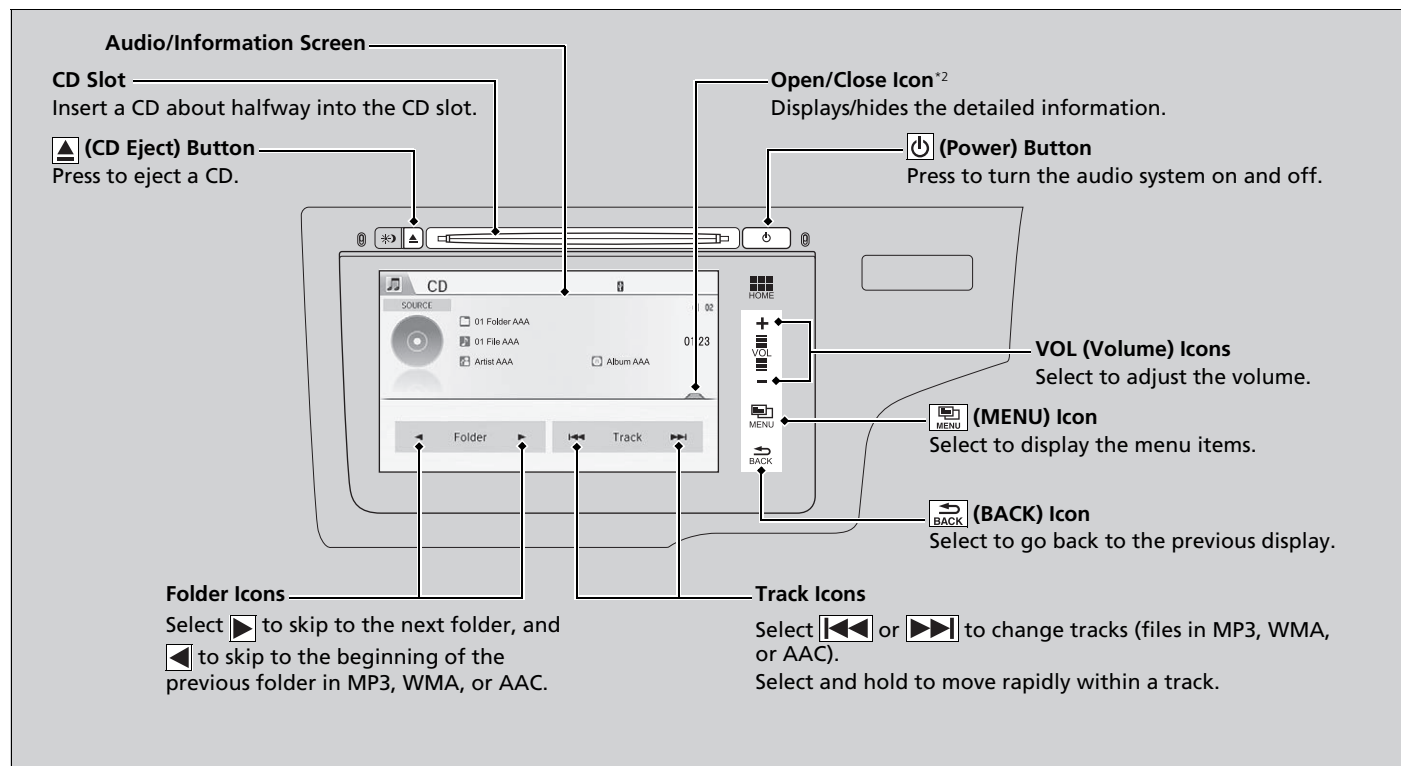
■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Select **MENU**.
 2. Select **Scan**.
- To turn off scan, select **Cancel**.

Playing a CD

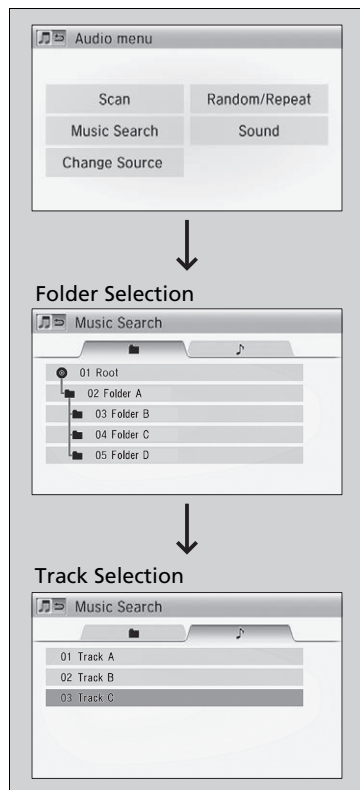
Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.



*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

2. Select a folder.

3. Select a track.

▶▶ Playing a CD

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current track/file.

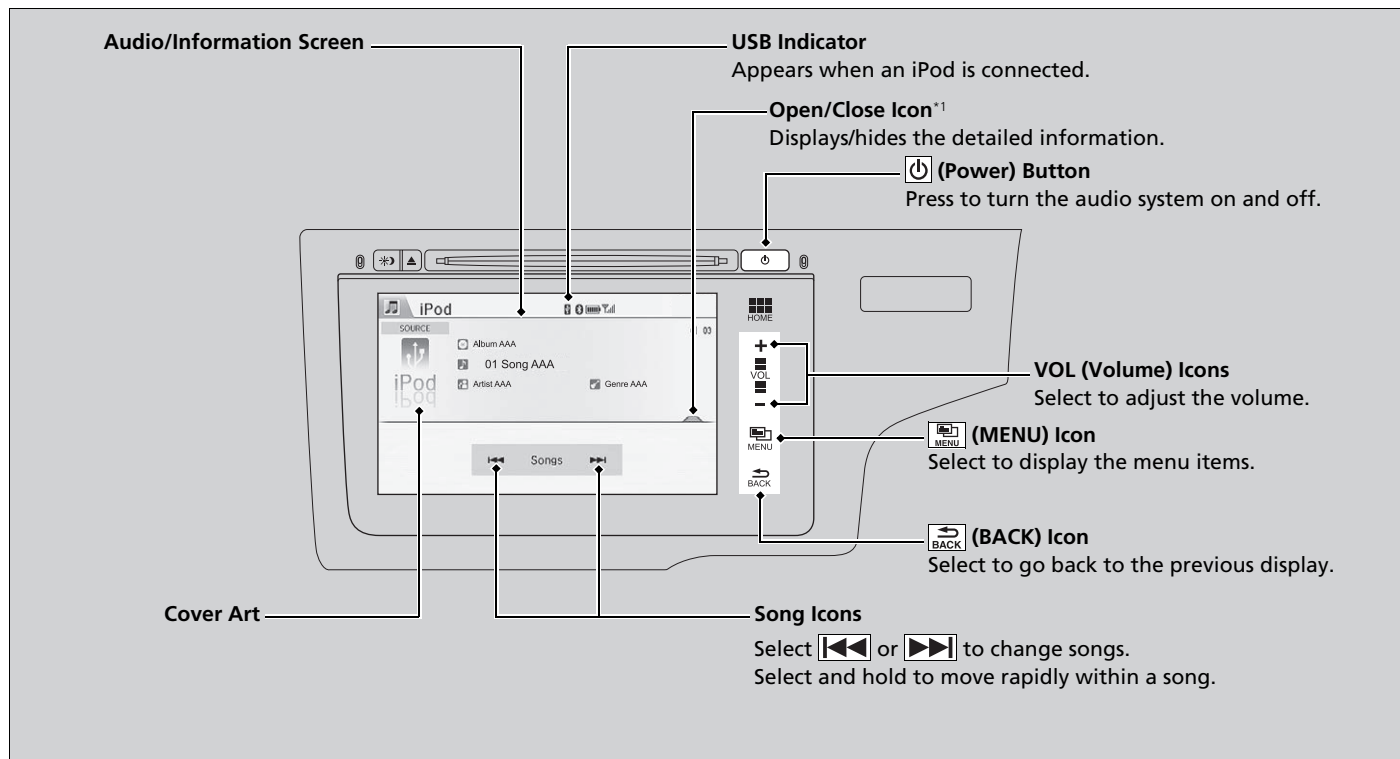
Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

Playing an iPod

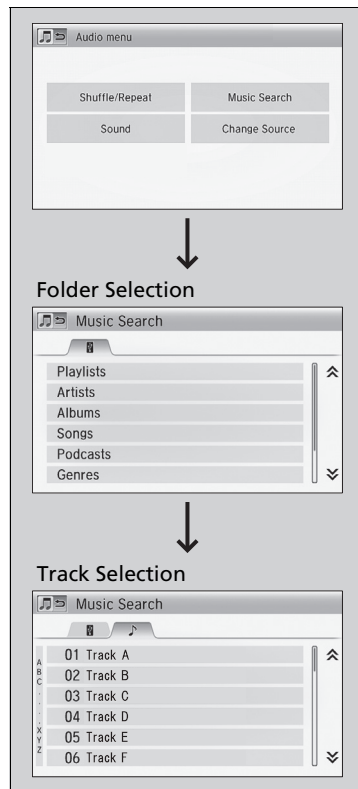
Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to a USB port, then select the iPod mode.

▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 203



How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.
2. Select the items on that menu.



How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 275

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the display audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the display audio. Reconnect the device if necessary.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Shuffle/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

» How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Repeat Song: Repeats the current file.

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

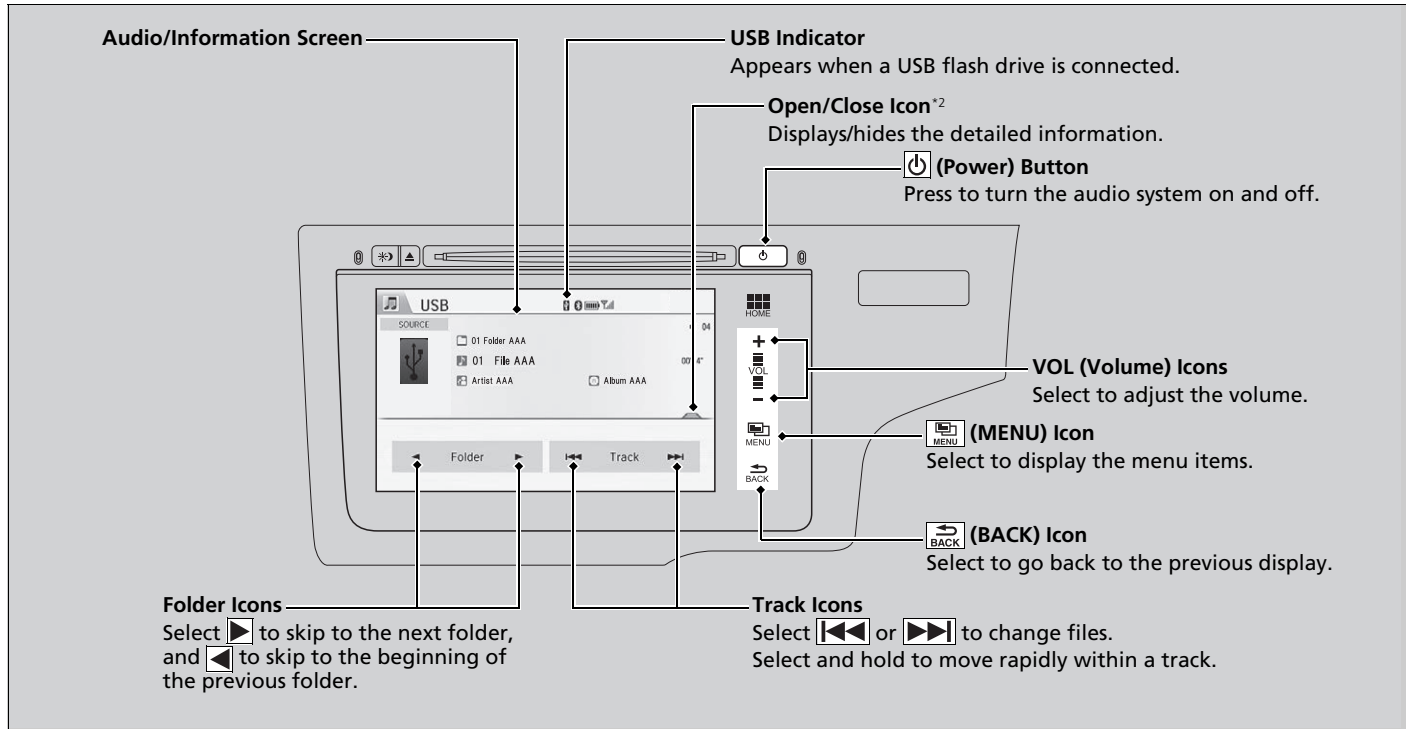
Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC*¹ format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

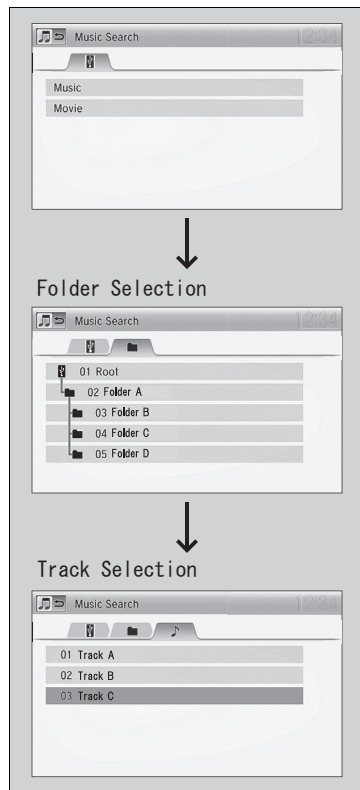
🔌 **USB Port(s)** P. 203



*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.
2. Select **Music** or **Movie**.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a track.

▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System** *
P. 276

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) are not played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 275

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.

When playing a video file:

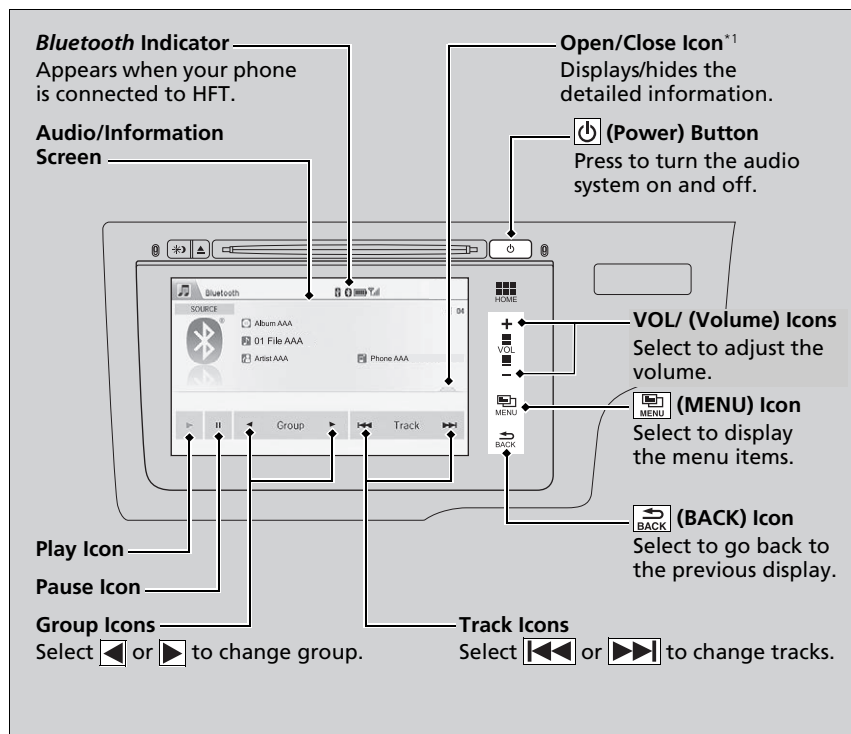
Slow: Plays the movie slowly.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

☐ **Phone Setup** P. 356



▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically linked.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

A **NO CONNECT** message may be displayed if:

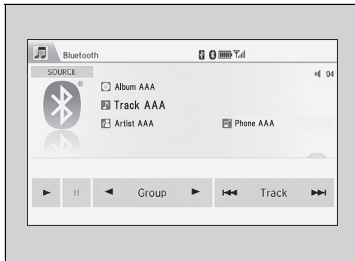
- The phone is not linked to HFT.
- The phone is not turned on.
- The phone is not in the vehicle.
- An incompatible phone is connected.

The following functions may not be available on some devices:

- Pause function
- Group selection

*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth* device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 356

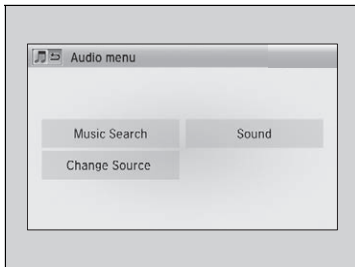
2. Select the *Bluetooth®* Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth®* Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon, respectively.

■ Searching for Music



1. Select **MENU**.

2. Select **Music Search**.

3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).

4. Select an item.

▶ The selection begins playing.

▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

▶▶ Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth* device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

Your audio system allows you to play videos from an HDMI™-compatible device.

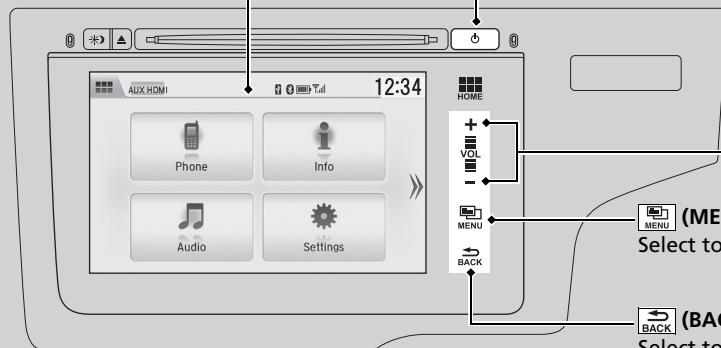
Connect the device, using an HDMI™ cable, then select the HDMI™ mode.

▶ **HDMI™ Port*** P. 204

Audio/Information Screen

 **(Power) Button**

Press to turn the audio system on and off.



VOL (Volume) Icons

Select to adjust the volume.

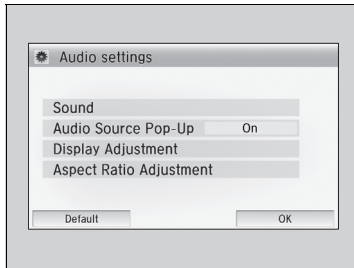
 **(MENU) Icon**

Select to display the menu items.

 **(BACK) Icon**

Select to go back to the previous display.

■ Changing the Screen Aspect



1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Aspect Ratio Adjustment**.
5. Select the setting you want.
6. Select **OK**.

▶▶ Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

This feature is limited while driving. To play videos, stop your vehicle and apply the parking brake.

Smartphone Connection

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable.

📱 **Connecting Your iPhone** P. 272

📱 Smartphone Connection

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

It may be necessary to set on your smartphone. For details about operating your smartphone, see the manual that comes with it or ask a dealer.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth* connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

📱 **Changing the currently paired phone**

P. 357

The following may vary by phone type:

- Connection methods.
- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time

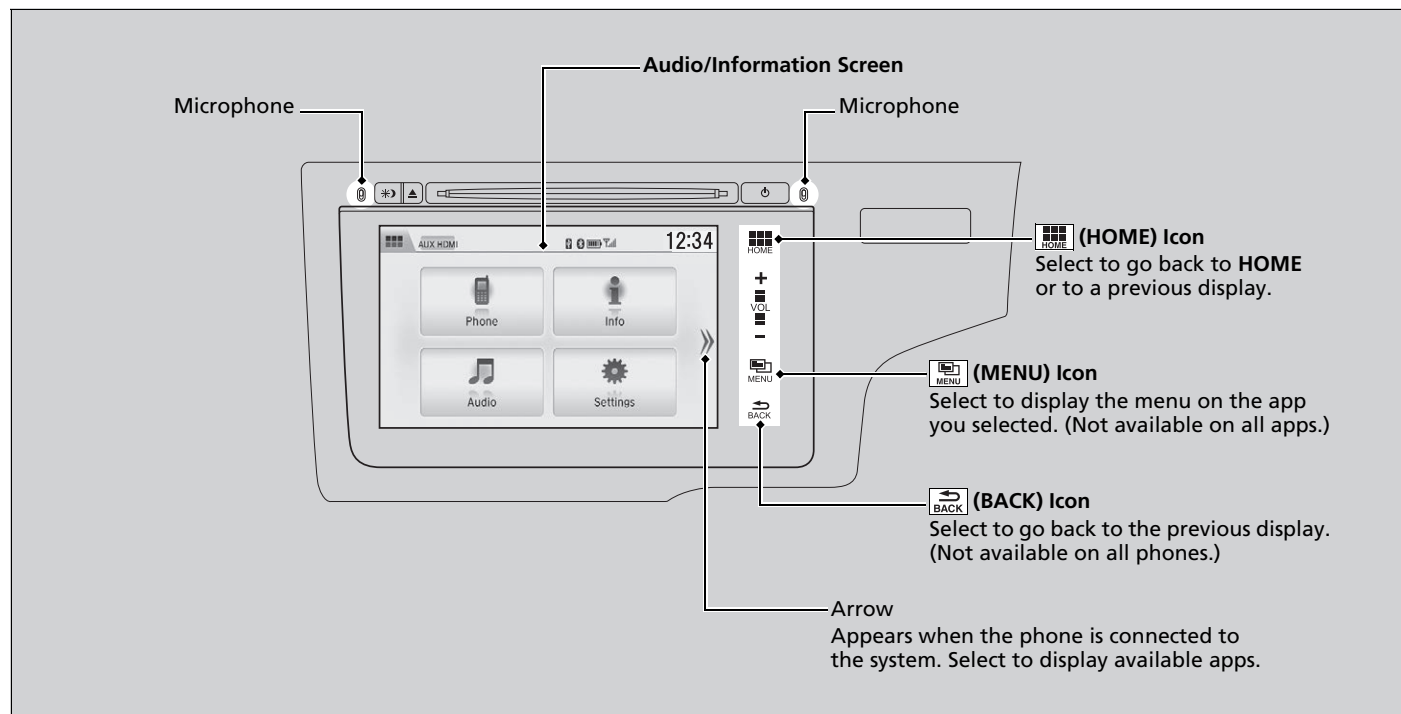
We do not support every app operation on the audio system.

Ask the app provider for any questions on the app's features.

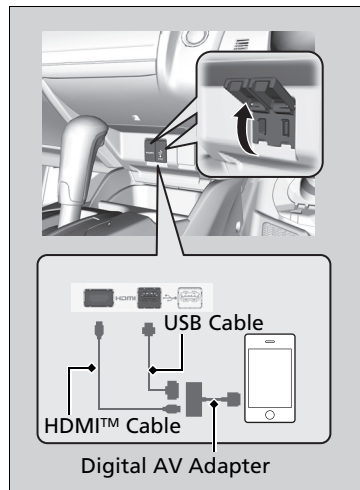
Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 356



■ Connecting Your iPhone



1. Connect your phone to the display audio via *Bluetooth*®.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 356

2. Plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ jack.
3. Connect the digital AV adapter to your iPhone.
 - ▶ Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.
4. Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
5. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ To go back to the previous screen, select **HOME**.


▶▶ Connecting Your iPhone

Make sure to plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ jack first. If not, smartphone connection may not work properly.

To recharge your phone, connect it to the USB jack, too.

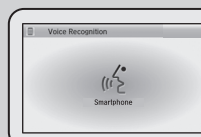
Contact a dealer for the digital AV adapter or HDMI™ cable purchasing information.

Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone System.

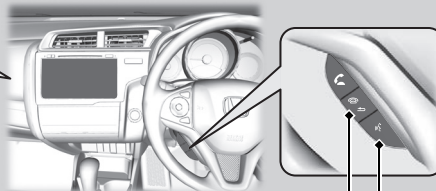
 **Phone Setup** P. 356

■ Using Siri Eyes Free



Appears when Siri is activated in Siri Eyes Free

While in Siri Eyes Free:
The display remains the same.
No feedback or commands appear.



(Hang-up/back) button:

Press to deactivate Siri.



(Talk) button:

Press and hold until the display changes as shown.

▶▶ Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.





We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

▶▶ Using Siri Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

CD Player*

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message* ¹	Cause	Solution
Unplayable File	Track/file format not supported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.
Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual Push Eject	Mechanical error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the  (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared. Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again.
Mecha Error		
Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual	Servo error	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Protecting CDs P. 277 If the error message reappears, press the  button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
Check Disc	Disc error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.  Protecting CDs P. 277
Heat Error	High temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.

*1: On the monochrome audio system and the colour audio system, the error messages are displayed in capitals.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB Error ^{*1} Error ^{*3}	Appears when there is a problem with the USB adapter unit. Check if the device is compatible with the USB adapter unit.
The connected USB device has a problem. See Owner's Manual ^{*1} BAD USB DEVICE PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL ^{*2}	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Unsupported Version ^{*1} UNSUPPORTED VER. ^{*2}	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Connect Retry ^{*1, *2}	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File ^{*1, *2}	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
No Data ^{*1} USB NO SONG ^{*2} iPod NO SONG ^{*2}	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported ^{*1, *2} Not Available Device ^{*3}	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

*1: Display audio system

*2: On the monochrome audio system and the colour audio system, the error messages are displayed in capitals.

*3: Monochrome audio system

Recommended CDs*

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labeled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



▶▶ Recommended CDs*

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.

■ CDs with MP3, WMA, or AAC files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

■ Protecting CDs

Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:

- Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
- When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the centre to the outside edge.
- Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
- Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
- Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
- Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
- Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

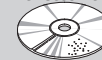
►► Protecting CDs

NOTICE

Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples:

- Bubbled, wrinkled, labeled, and excessively thick CDs



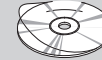
Bubbled/
Wrinkled



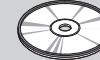
With Label/
Sticker



Using
Printer Label
Kit

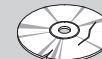


Sealed

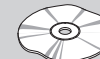


With Plastic Ring

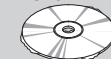
- Damaged CDs



Chipped/
Cracked



Warped



Burrs

- Poor quality CDs

- Small CDs



8-cm
CD

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 6th generation) launch in 2010
iPod nano (7th generation) launch in 2012
iPod touch (1st to 4th generation) launch in 2010
iPod touch (5th generation) launch in 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5

⌘ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

■ **USB Flash Drives**

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

Models with display audio system

■ **Recommended Devices**

Media	CD-R/CD-RW	
Profile (MP4 version)	Baseline Level 3 (MPEG4-AVC), Simple Level 5 (MPEG4)	
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	AAC	MP3
Bit rate	10 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	720 X 576 pixels	

▶▶ USB Flash Drives

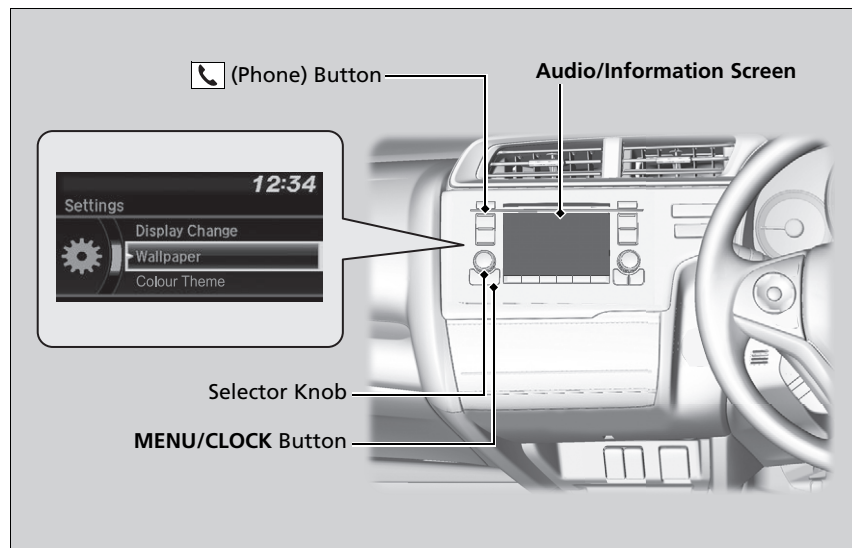
Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

Models with colour audio system

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON **II**, press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the **(Phone)** button, then select **Phone Setup**.



» Customized Features*

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.

Continuously variable transmission models

- Shift to **P**.

Manual transmission models

- Set the parking brake.

» How to customize

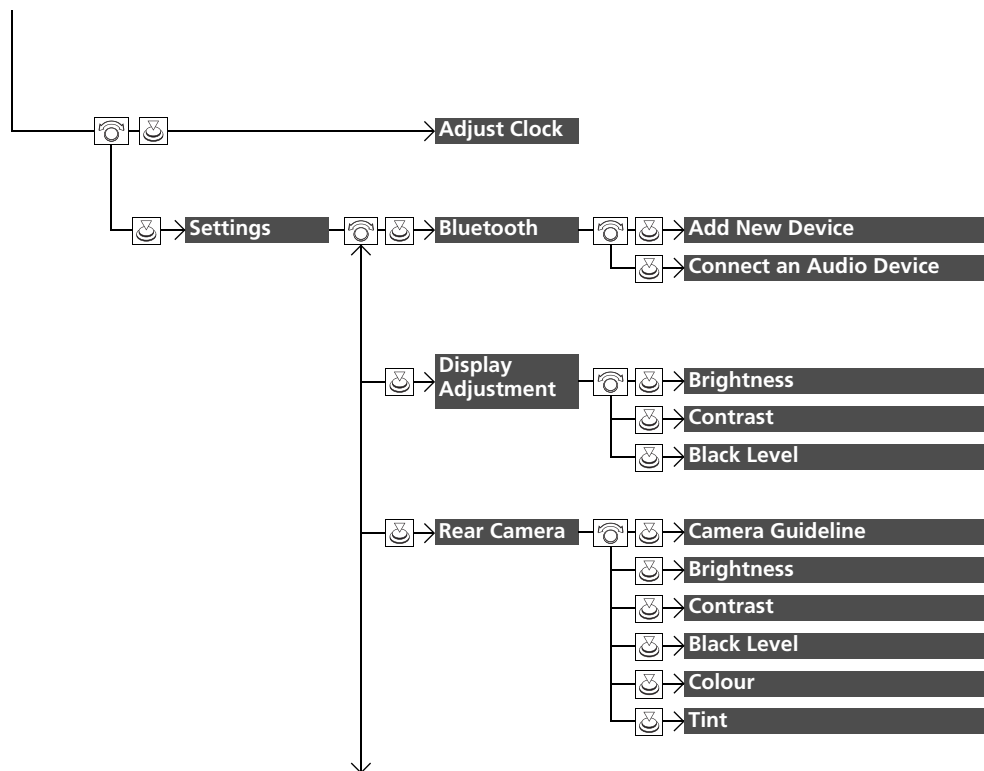
These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

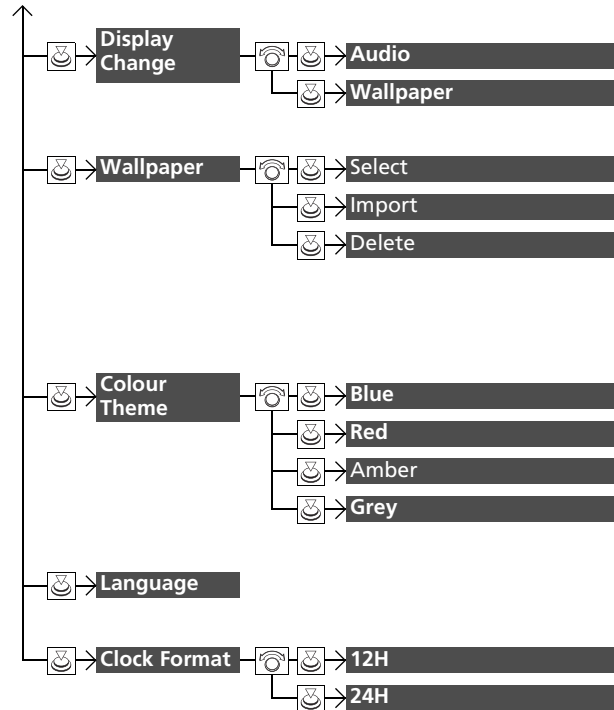
Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

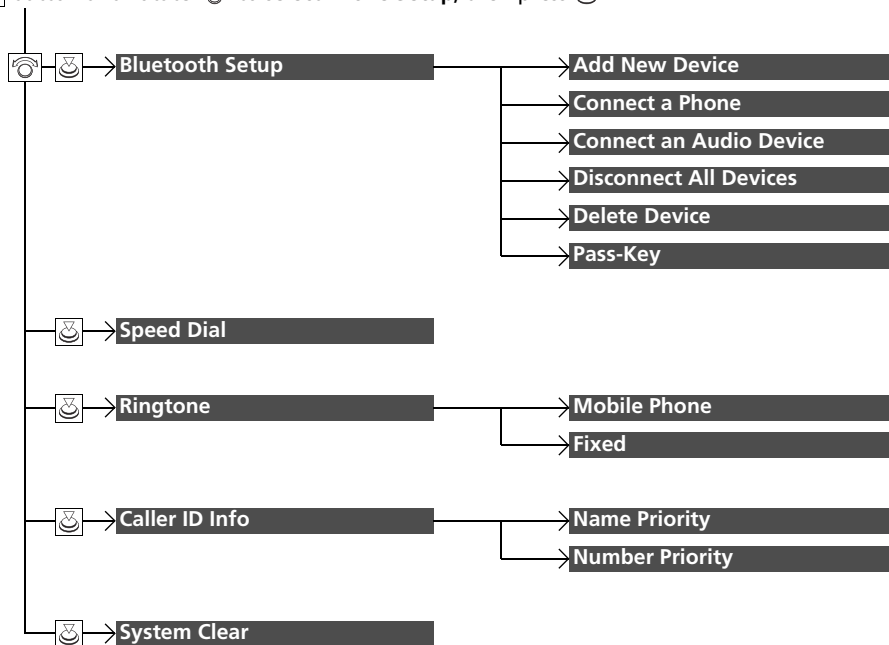
■ Customization flow

Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.






Press the  button and rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .



■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Settings	Adjust Clock	Adjust Clock. 🔗 Clock P. 122	—
	Bluetooth	Add New Device	—
		Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone. 🔗 Phone Setup P. 334	—
	Display Adjustment	Connect an Audio Device	—
		Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth®</i> Audio device to HFT.	—
		Brightness	—
		Contrast	—
	Rear Camera	Black Level	—
		Camera Guideline	On*/Off
		Brightness	—
		Contrast	
		Black Level	
		Colour	
		Tint	
		Adjust the rear camera display settings.	—

*1 : Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Settings	Display Change	Changes the display type.	Audio^{*1}/Wallpaper
	Select	Changes the display type.	Clock^{*1}/Image1/Image2/Image3
	Wallpaper	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.  Wallpaper Setup P. 229	—
	Import		
	Delete	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	Image1^{*1}/Image2/Image3
	Colour Theme	Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen.	Blue^{*1}/Red/Amber/Grey
	Language	Changes the display language.	English^{*1}/French/Spanish
	Clock Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12H^{*1}/24H


*1: Default Setting

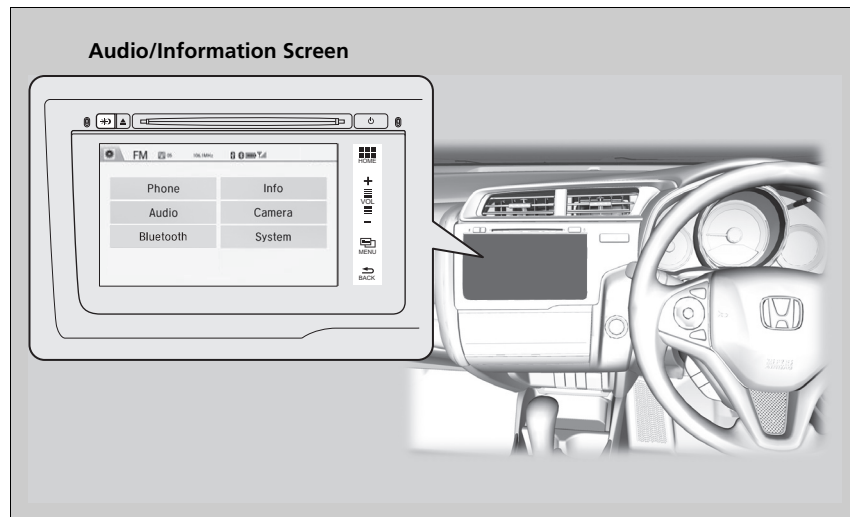
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Setup	Bluetooth Setup	Add New Device Pairs a new phone to HFT. 🔗 Phone Setup P. 334	—
		Connect a Phone Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFT. 🔗 Phone Setup P. 334	—
		Connect an Audio Device Connects a <i>Bluetooth®</i> Audio device to HFT.	—
		Disconnect All Devices Disconnects a paired phone from HFT.	—
		Delete Device Deletes a paired phone.	—
		Pass-Key Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone.	—
	Speed Dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. 🔗 Speed Dial P. 343	—
	Ringtone	Selects the ring tone.	Mobile Phone*¹/Fixed
	Caller ID Info	Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID.	Name Priority*¹/Number Priority
	System Clear	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone Setup group as default.	—

* 1 : Default Setting

Models with display audio system

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON ^{*1}, select **Settings**, then select a setting item.



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Customized Features*

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- **Continuously variable transmission models**
Shift to **P**.
- **Manual transmission models**
Set the parking brake.

▶▶ How to customize

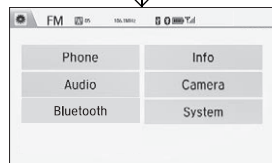
To customize other features, select **Settings**.

➤ **List of customizable options** P. 292

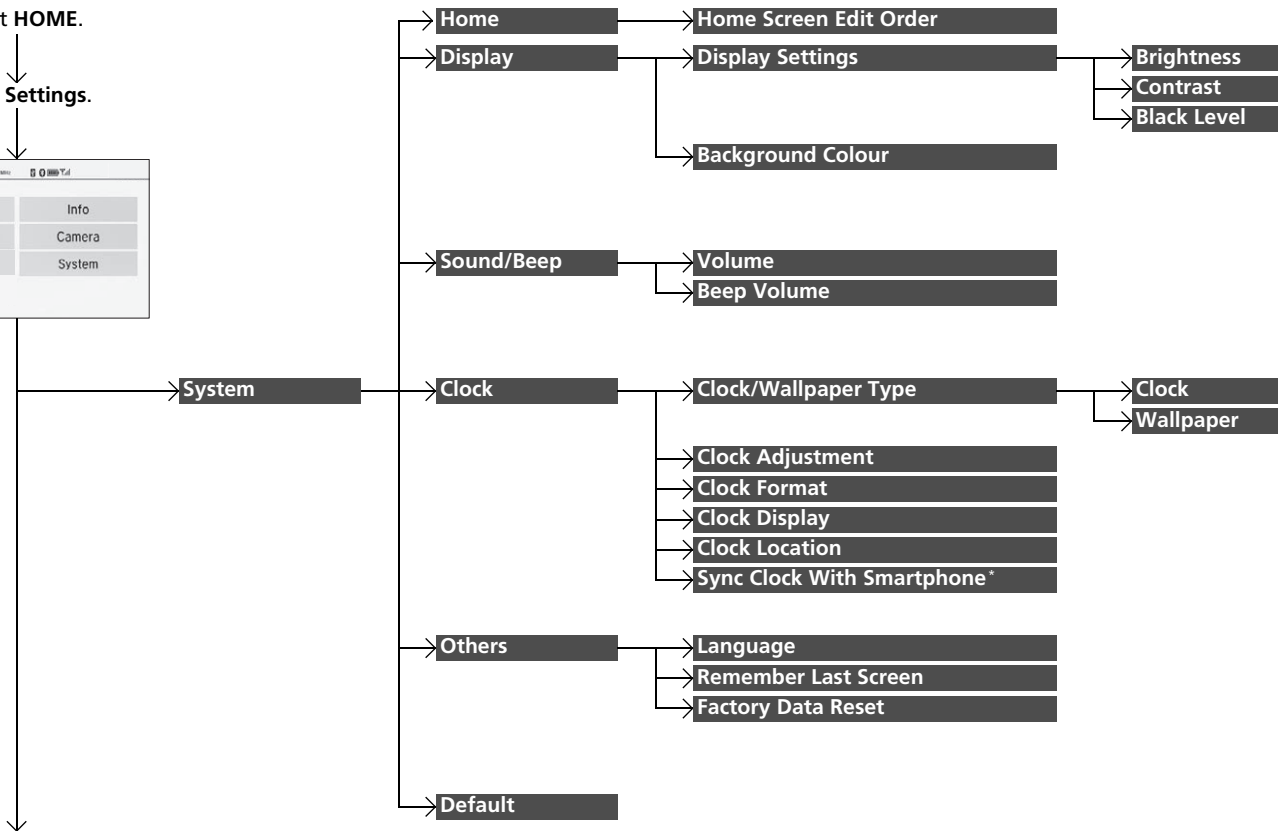
■ Customization flow

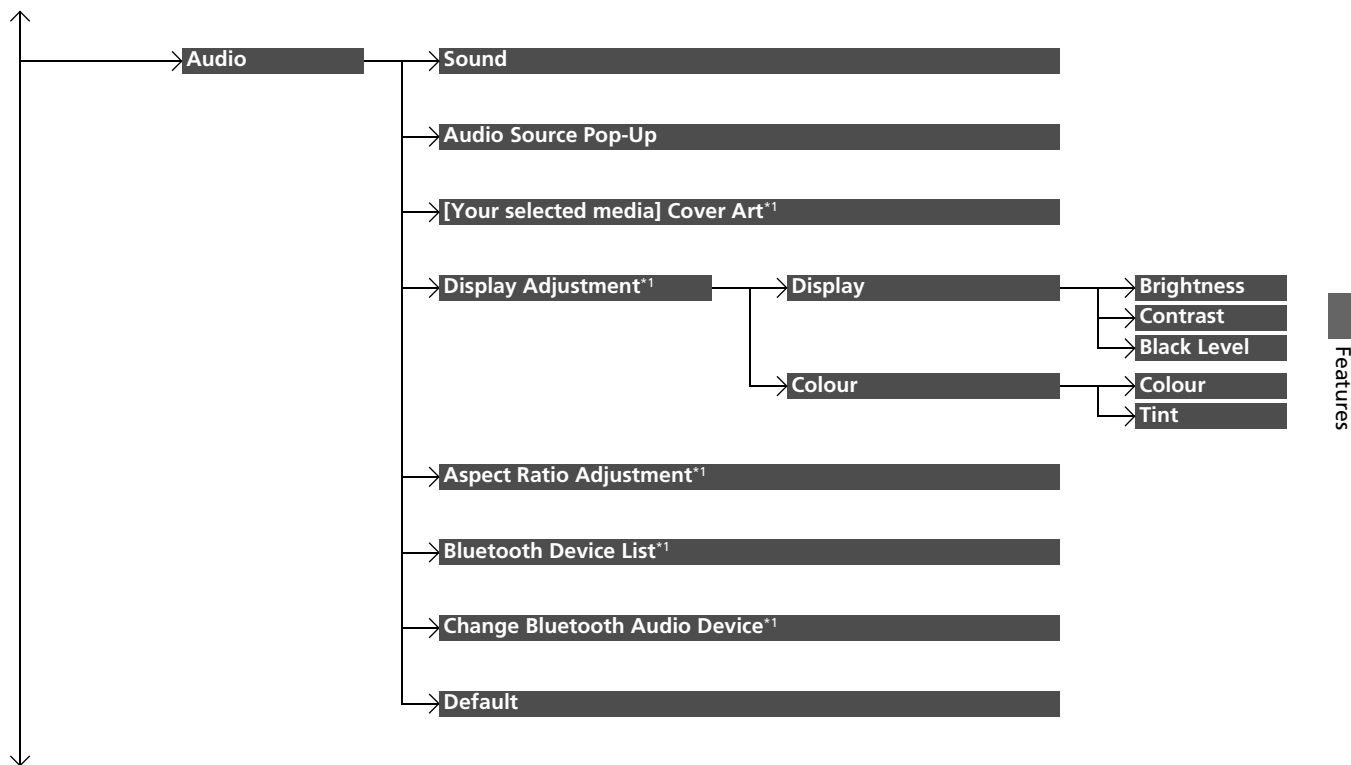
Select **HOME**.

Select **Settings**.

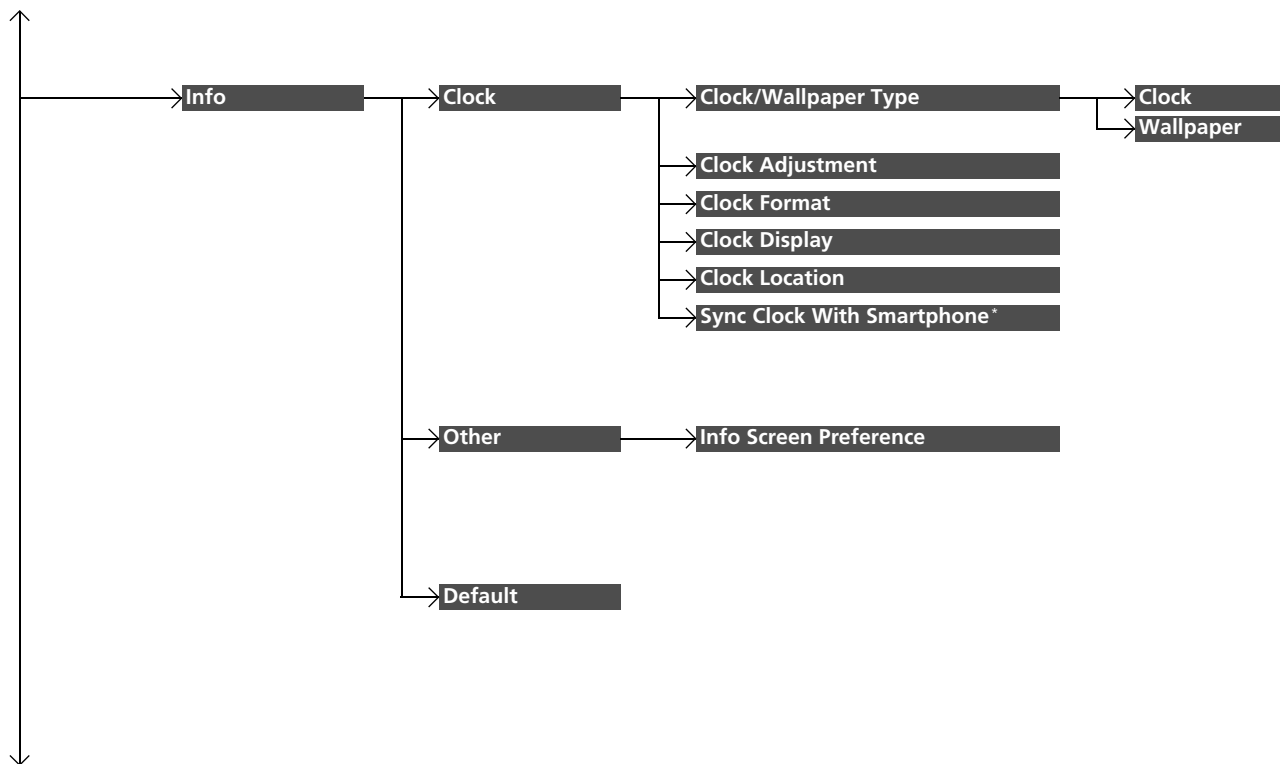


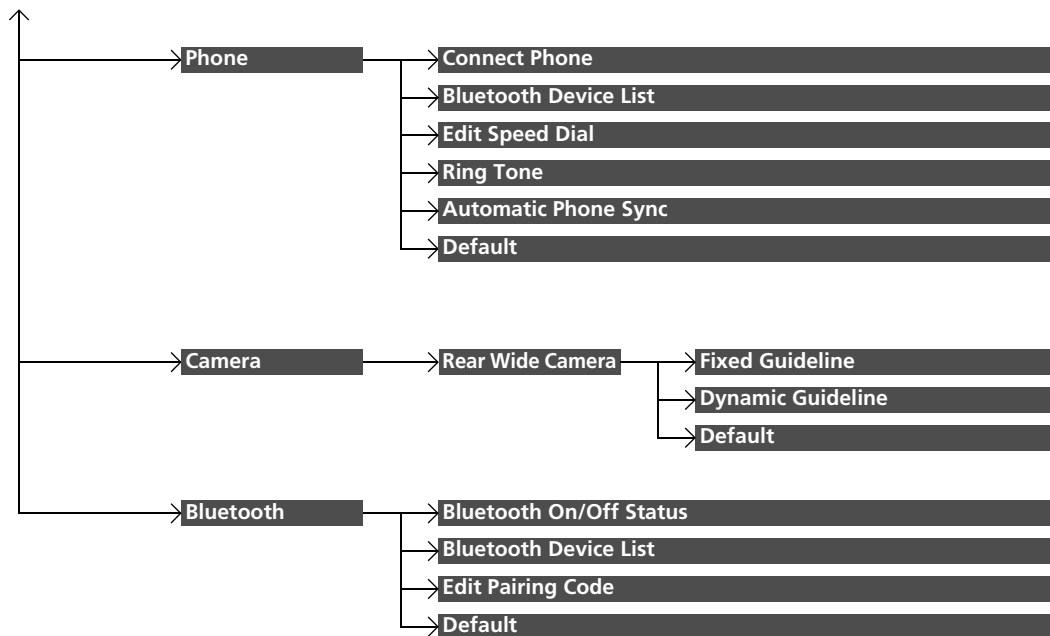
Features





*1: May change depending on your currently selected source.





■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
System	HOME	Home Screen Edit Order	Changes the HOME screen icon layout.	—	
	Display	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—	
		Display Settings	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
			Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
			Background Colour	Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen	Blue* ¹ /Amber/Red/Violet
	Sound/Beep	Volume	Changes the sound volume.	0~6* ¹ ~11	
		Beep Volume	Changes the beep volume.	OFF/1/2* ¹ /3	

*1 : Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Clock	Clock	Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital^{*1}/Small Digital/Off
		Clock/ Wallpaper Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Changes the wallpaper type. Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. Deletes an image file for a wallpaper. Wallpaper Setup P. 250	Blank/Galaxy^{*1}/Metallic
		Clock Adjustment	Adjusts Clock. Clock P. 122	—
		Clock Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12H^{*1}/24H
		Clock Display	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	On/Off^{*1}
		Clock Location	Changes the clock display layout.	Right upper^{*1}/Left upper/ Right lower/Left lower/Off
		Sync Clock With Smartphone[*]	Selects whether the clock links to the device you connect.	On^{*1}/Off

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System	Others	Language	Changes the display language. English/French/Spanish English/Indonesian/Thai/Malay
		Remember Last Screen	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen. On/Off *1
		Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. ▶ Defaulting All the Settings P. 299 Yes/No
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the System group as default.	Yes/No
Audio	Sound	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound ▶ Adjusting the Sound P. 252	-6 ~ 0 *1 ~ +6 (BASS and TREBLE), RR9~0 *1~ FR9 (FADER), L9~0 *1~ R9 (BALANCE), Off/Low/Mid *1/ High (SVC)
	Audio Source Pop-Up	Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on or not when Audio is selected on the HOME screen.	On/Off *1

*1 : Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	<div>iPod or USB mode</div> <div>[Your selected media]</div> <div>Cover Art</div>	Turns on and off the cover art display.	On ^{*1} /Off
	<div> <div>Display</div> <div>Brightness</div> <div>Contrast</div> <div>Black Level</div> </div> <div> <div>USB, HDMI™ mode</div> <div>Display Adjustment</div> </div>	<div> <div>System</div> <div>P. 292</div> </div>	
	<div> <div>Colour</div> <div>Colour</div> </div>	Changes the colour of the audio/information screen.	—
	<div> <div>Tint</div> </div>	Changes the tint of the audio/information screen.	—
	<div> <div>USB, HDMI™ mode</div> <div>Aspect Ratio Adjustment</div> </div>	Changes the aspect ratio and zoom settings of the audio/information screen.	Normal/Full ^{*1} /Zoom
	<div> <div>Bluetooth® Audio mode</div> <div>Bluetooth Device List</div> </div>	<div>Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone.</div> <div>Phone Setup P. 356</div>	—
	<div> <div>Bluetooth® Audio mode</div> <div>Change Bluetooth Audio Device</div> </div>	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth®</i> Audio device to HFT.	—
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Audio group as default.	Yes/No

*1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Info	Clock	Clock/ Wallpaper type	Clock Wallpaper	System P. 293
		Clock Adjustment		
		Clock Format		
		Clock Display		
		Clock Location		
		Sync Clock With Smartphone*		
	Other	Info Screen Preference	Changes the Info screen type.	Info Top/Info Menu/Off* ¹
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Info group as default.	Yes/No

*1 : Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone	Connect Phone	Pairs a new phone to HFT, connects or disconnects a paired phone. 📱 Phone Setup P. 356	—
	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. 📱 Phone Setup P. 356	—
	Edit Speed Dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. 📱 Speed Dial P. 362	—
	Ring Tone	Selects the ring tone.	Fixed/Mobile Phone *1
	Automatic Phone Sync	Sets a phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	On/Off
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone group as default.	Yes/No

*1: Default Setting

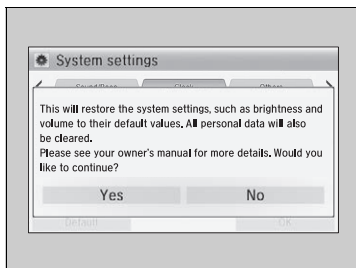
Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	Rear Wide Camera	Fixed Guideline	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on on the rear camera monitor.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the dynamic guidelines come on on the rear camera monitor.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Rear Wide Camera group as default.	Yes/No
Bluetooth	Bluetooth On/Off Status		Changes the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status.	On ^{*1} /Off
	Bluetooth Device List		Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone, or creates a security PIN. ➤ Phone Setup P. 356	—
	Edit Pairing Code		Edits Pairing Code . ➤ To change the pairing code setting P. 357	Random/Fixed ^{*1}
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Bluetooth group as default.	Yes/No

*1 : Default Setting

Defaulting All the Settings

Models with display audio system

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
 - ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
6. Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
 - ▶ The confirmation message will appear. Select **OK**.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

The following settings will be reset:

- Audio preset settings
- Phonebook entries
- Other display and personal settings.

Hands-Free Telephone System

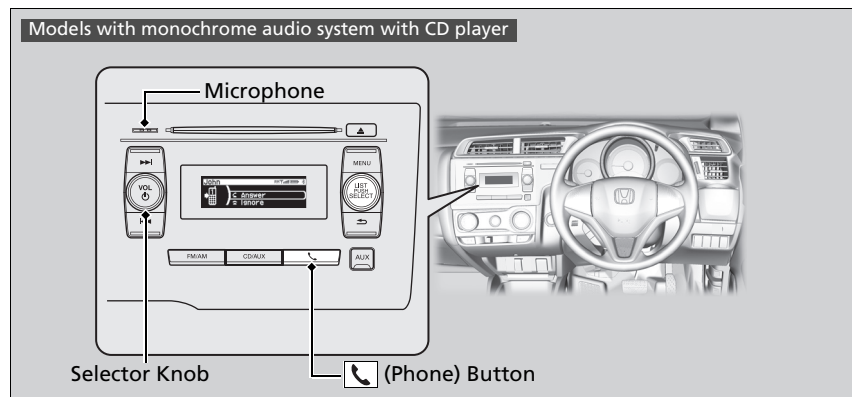
Models with monochrome audio system

The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.


Using HFT

HFT Buttons

Models with monochrome audio system with CD player




(Phone) button: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen, or to answer an incoming call.

LIST/SELECT (Selector) knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press  to set your selection.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception. To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

Up to 15 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.*

 **Speed Dial** P. 319

Up to 10 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.*

To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls* on the steering wheel.

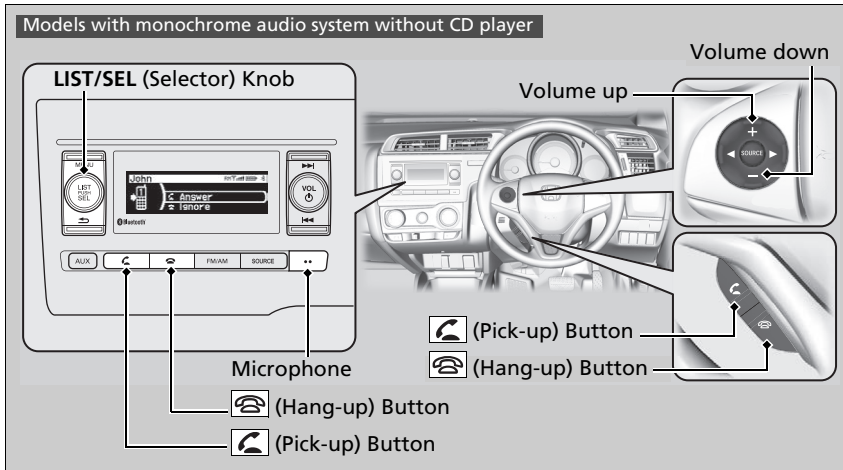
If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

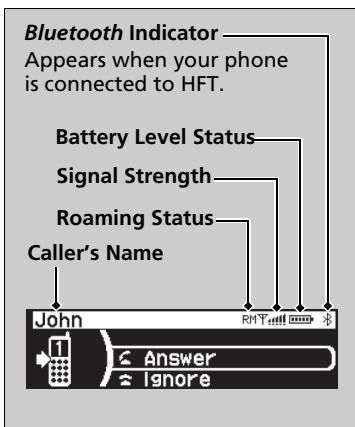


(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen, or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up) button: Press to end a call.

LIST/SEL (Selector) knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

HFT Status Display



The audio display notifies you when there is an incoming call.

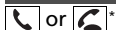
HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio display varies between phone models.

HFT Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON *¹ to use the system.

Models with CD player



Models without CD player



Phone

Speed Dial*^{2,3}

Add New

Call History

Phonebook

Phone Number

Call History*²

(Existing entry list)

Dialed Calls*³/Dialed*⁴

Received Calls*³/Received*⁴

Missed Calls*³/Missed*⁴

Display the last 10 outgoing calls.

Display the last 10 incoming calls.

Display the last 10 missed calls.

HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

These indications are used to show how to operate the **LIST/SELECT** (selector) knob or the **LIST/SEL** (selector) knob.

Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.

Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

*¹: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

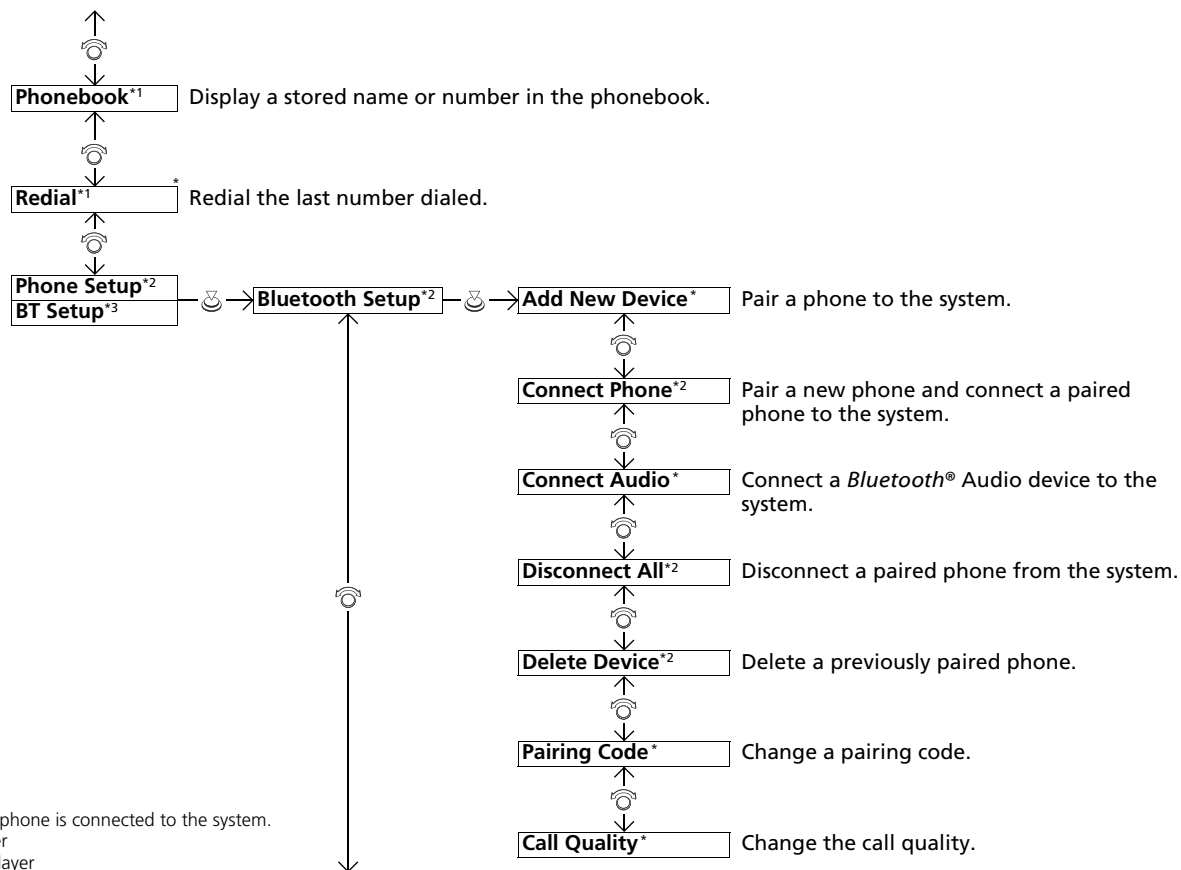
*²: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

*³: Models with CD player

*⁴: Models without CD player

* Not available on all models

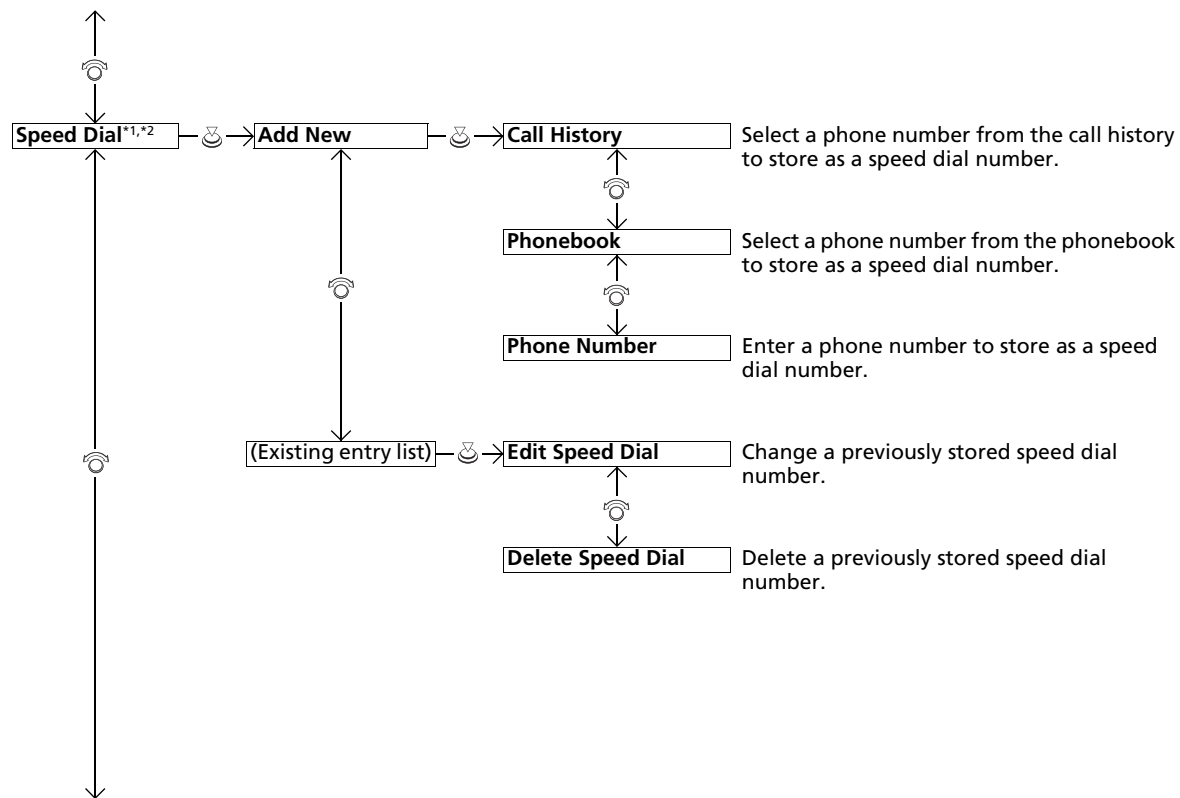
Continued



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

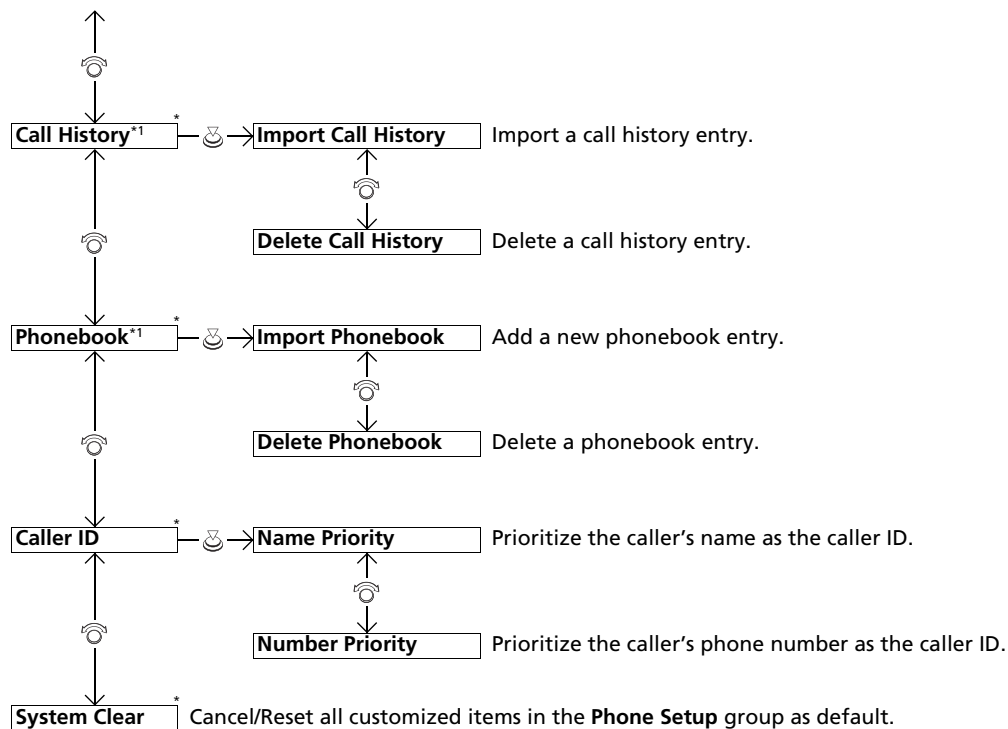
*2: Models with CD player

*3: Models without CD player



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

*2: Models with CD player







*1 : Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

* Not available on all models

Phone Setup

Models with CD player

■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the  (Phone) button.
2. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
▶ HFT automatically searches for a Bluetooth device.
4. The system gives you a pairing code on your phone.
When your phone prompts you, input the four-digit pairing code.

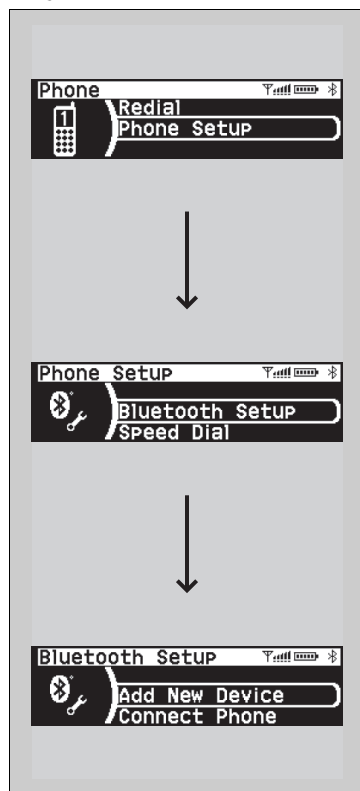
☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to five phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to the system.

■ **To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**



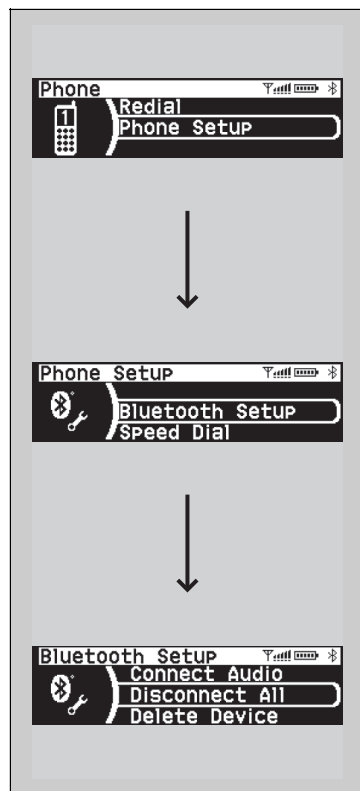
1. Press the (Phone) button.
 ► If a prompt appears asking to connect to a phone, select **No** and proceed with step 2.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .








3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .

4. Rotate to select **Add New Device**, then press .
5. Make sure your phone is in search mode, then press .
6. The system gives you a pairing code on your phone.

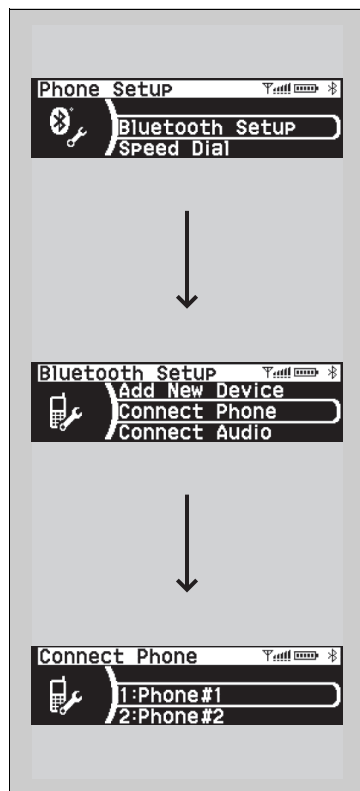
When your phone prompts you, input the four-digit pairing code.

■ To disconnect the paired phone



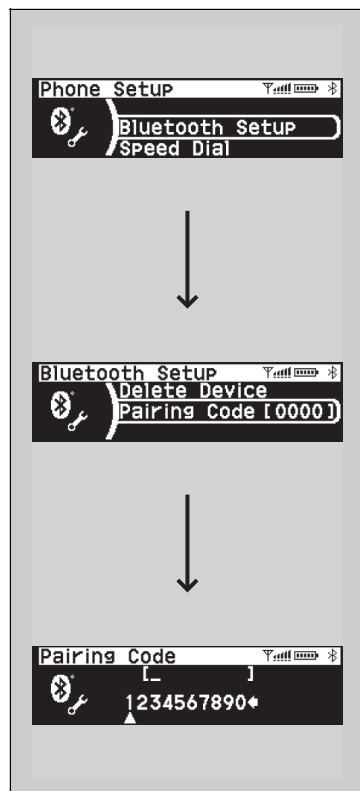
1. Press the  (Phone) button.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Disconnect All**, then press .

■ To change the currently paired phone



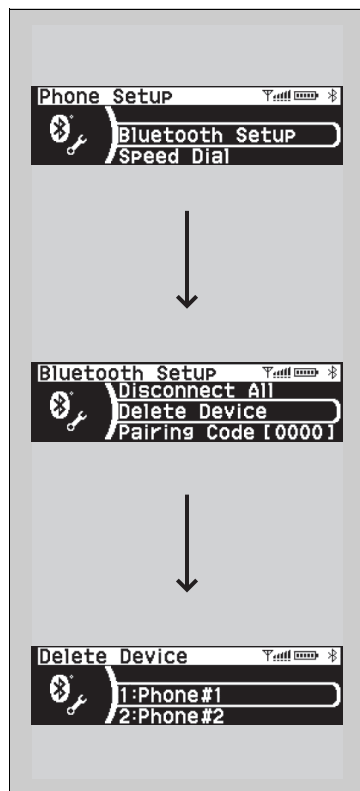
1. Press the (Phone) button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Connect Phone**, then press .
 - The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .






■ To change the pairing code setting









1. Press the (Phone) button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Pairing Code**, then press .
5. Input a new pairing code, then press .

■ To delete a paired phone







1. Press the  (Phone) button.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .

4. Rotate  to select **Delete Device**, then press .
 ► The screen changes to a device list.






5. Rotate  to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .

Models without CD player

■ To pair a mobile phone

1. Press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **PAIR YES**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search mode, then press .
4. The system gives you a pairing code on your phone.
When your phone prompts you, input the four-digit pairing code.

■ To disconnect the paired phone

1. Press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **BT Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Disconnect**, then press .








» Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.








Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to three phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to the system.

■ To delete a paired phone

1. Press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **BT Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Disconnect**, then press .
► The screen changes to a device list.
4. Rotate  to select a phone you want to delete, then press .

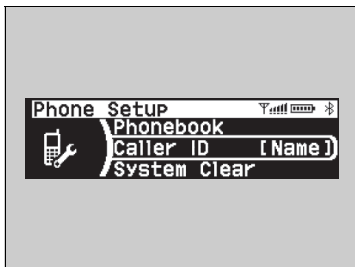
■ To change call quality








1. Press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **BT Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Call Quality**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select a phone you want to set, then press .

■ Caller's ID Information

Models with CD player

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



1. Press the  (Phone) button.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Caller ID**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select a mode you want, then press .

☒ Caller's ID Information

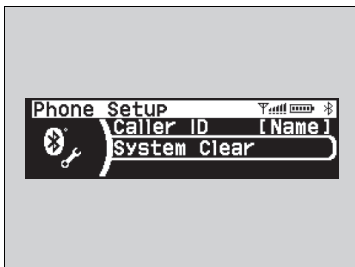
Name Priority: A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.









Number Priority: A caller's phone number is displayed.

■ To Clear the System

Models with CD player

All speed dial entries, all imported phonebook data, all call history data, paired phones, pairing codes, caller's ID settings, and volume settings are erased.

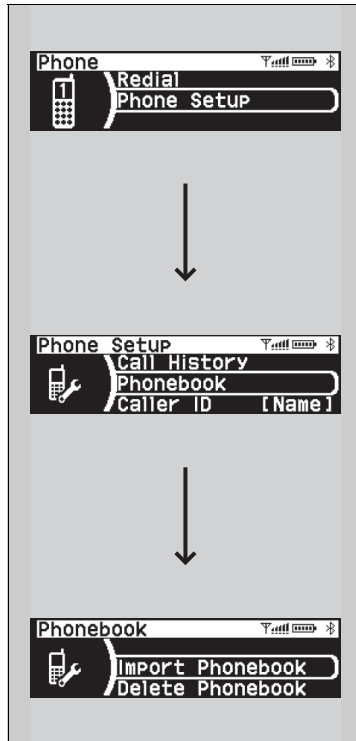


1. Press the  (Phone) button.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **System Clear**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .
5. A notification appears on the screen. Press .

Cellular Phonebook

Models with CD player

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are manually imported to the system.



■ To import the phonebook data of the mobile phone

1. Press the (Phone) button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Import Phonebook**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
 - ▶ The system will begin importing the phonebook data.

■ To delete the imported phonebook data

1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete Phonebook**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

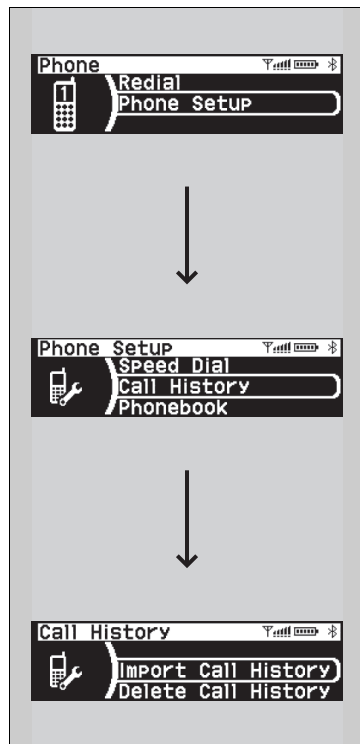
Cellular Phonebook

For a list of this feature capability, ask a dealer.

■ Call History

Models with CD player

When your phone is paired, the contents of its call history are manually imported to the system.



■ To import the call history data of the mobile phone

1. Press the (Phone) button.
 2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
 3. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
 4. Rotate to select **Import Call History**, then press .
 5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
- The system will begin importing the phonebook data.

■ To delete the imported call history data

1. Press the (Phone) button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete Call History**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

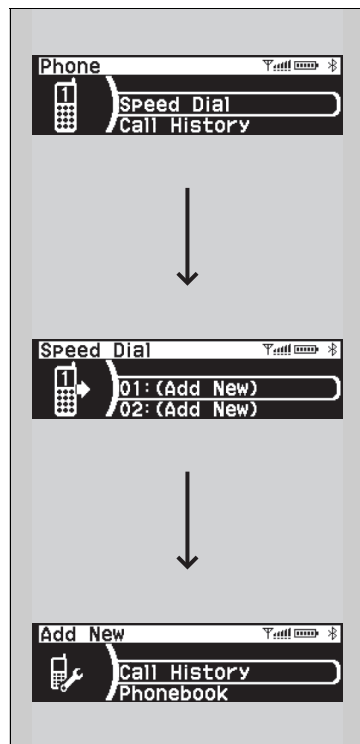
» Call History

For a list of this feature capability, ask a dealer.

Speed Dial

Models with CD player

Up to 15 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the (Phone) button.
 2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
- The screen changes to a speed dial list.

3. Rotate to select **Add New**, then press .

From **Call History**:

- Select a number from the call history.






From **Phonebook**:

- Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.









From **Phone Number**:

- Input the number manually.

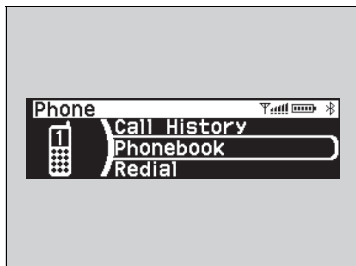
■ To edit a speed dial

1. Press the  (Phone) button.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate  to select **Edit Speed Dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .

■ To delete a speed dial

1. Press the  (Phone) button.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate  to select **Delete Speed Dial**, then press .
6. Select a speed dial number you want to delete, then press .

Making a Call



You can make calls by using the following:

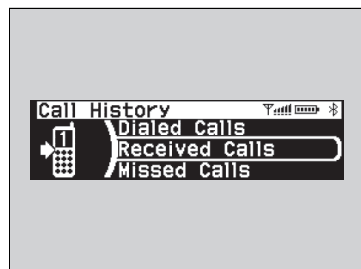
- Call History
- Phonebook
- Speed Dial*
- Redial*

▶▶ Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

* Not available on all models

■ To make a call using the Call History



Models with CD player

The call history is stored by **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, and **Missed Calls**.

1. Press the (Phone) button.
2. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, or **Missed Calls**, then press .
 - The screen changes to each list.
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
 - Dialing starts automatically.

►► To make a call using the Call History

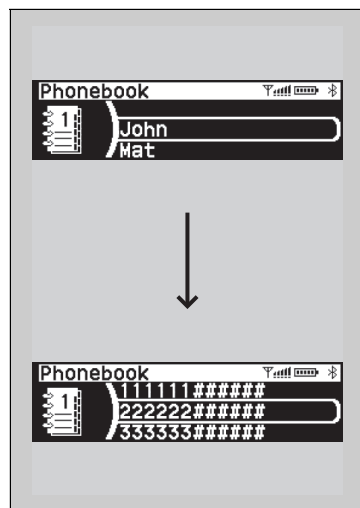
The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system, and displays the last 10 dialed, received, or missed calls.

Models without CD player

The call history is stored by **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**, then press .
 - The screen changes to each list.
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
 - Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using the phonebook



1. **Models with CD player**
Press the (Phone) button.
Models without CD player
Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **PhoneBook**, then press .
- Models with CD player**
▶ The phonebook is stored alphabetically.
- Models without CD player**
▶ A number is selected from the phonebook.
3. Rotate to select a name on the list, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number on the list, then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

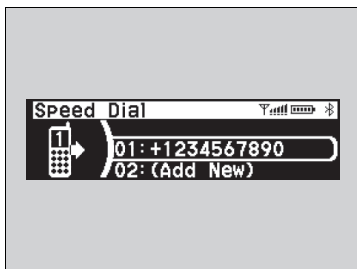
▶▶ To make a call using the phonebook






Models with CD player

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are manually imported to the system.

■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

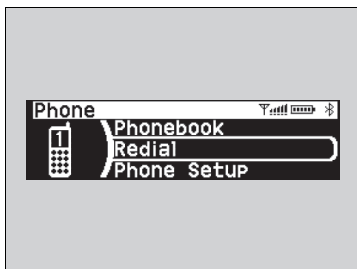
Models with CD player






1. Press the  (Phone) button.
2. Rotate  to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select a number, then press .
 - Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using redial

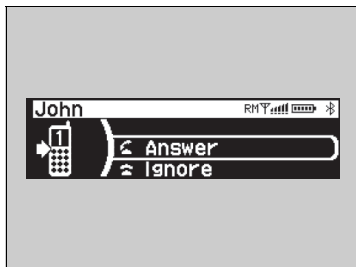
Models with CD player



The latest dialed call can be redialed.


1. Press the  (Phone) button.
2. Rotate  to select **Redial**, then press .
 - Dialing starts automatically.

Receiving a Call





When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the Incoming Call screen appears.

Models with CD player


Press the  (Phone) button to answer the call. Press it again to decline or end the call.


Models without CD player

Press the  button to answer the call.
Press the  button to decline or end the call.


Receiving a Call





Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons. Rotate  to select the icon, then press .

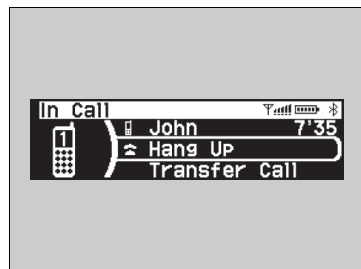
■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.


Mute: Mute your voice.

Transfer Call: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.


Dial Tone*: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



1. Models with CD player

To view the available options, press the  (Phone) button.

Models without CD player

To view the available options, press the  button.

2. Rotate to select the option, then press .

► Select **Mute** to turn on, then select **Mute** again to turn it off.

» Options During a Call

Dial Tone*: Available on some phones.

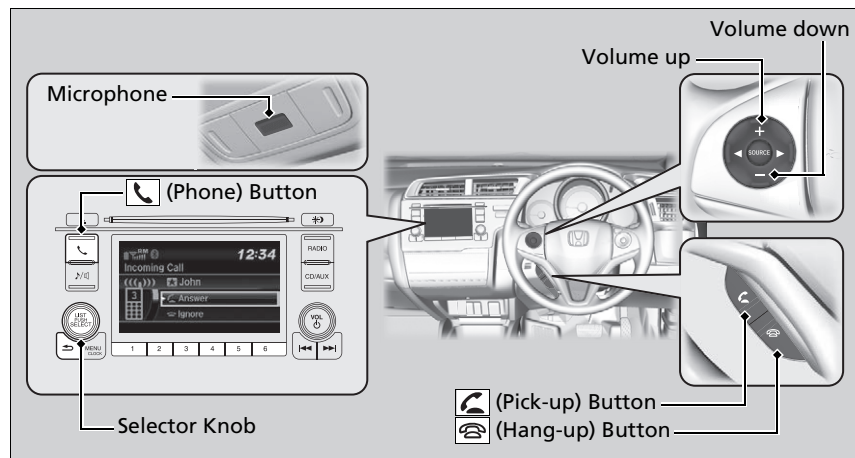
Hands-Free Telephone System

Models with colour audio system

The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Using HFT

HFT Buttons



Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception. To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.


If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.



Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.


➤ **Speed Dial** P. 343

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Continued

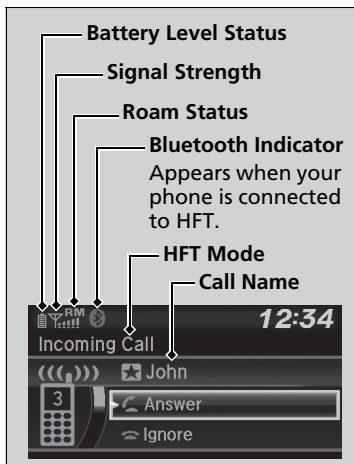
 **(Phone) button:** Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen.

LIST/SELECT (Selector) knob: Rotate  to select an item on the screen, then press .

 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up) button:** Press to end a call.

HFT Status Display



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

Using HFT

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

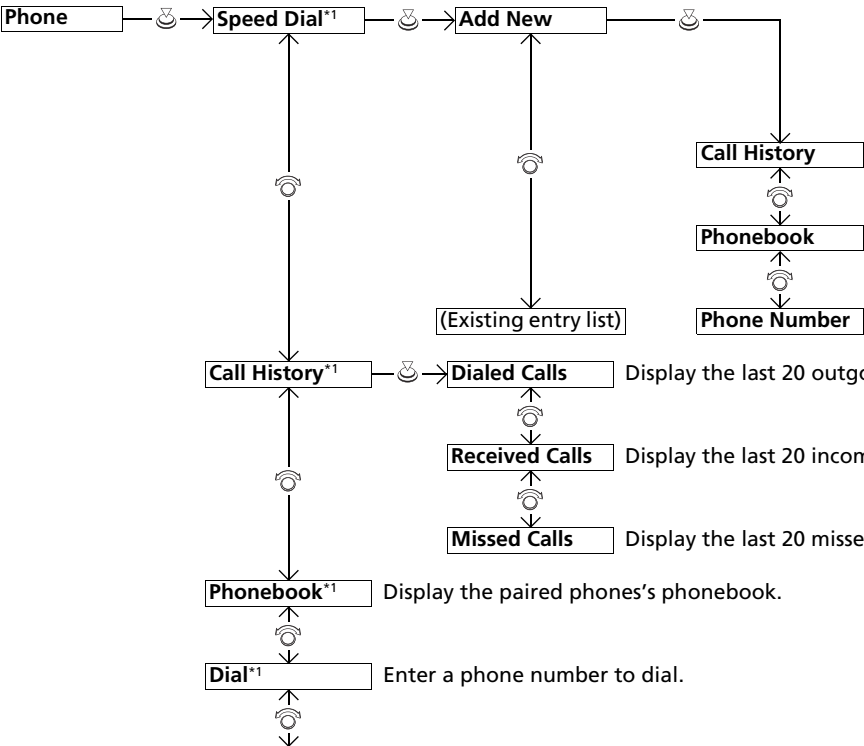
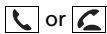
You can change the system language.

▶ **Customized Features*** P. 280

* Not available on all models

HFT Menu

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II** to use the system.



▶ HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.

Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

Display the last 20 outgoing calls.

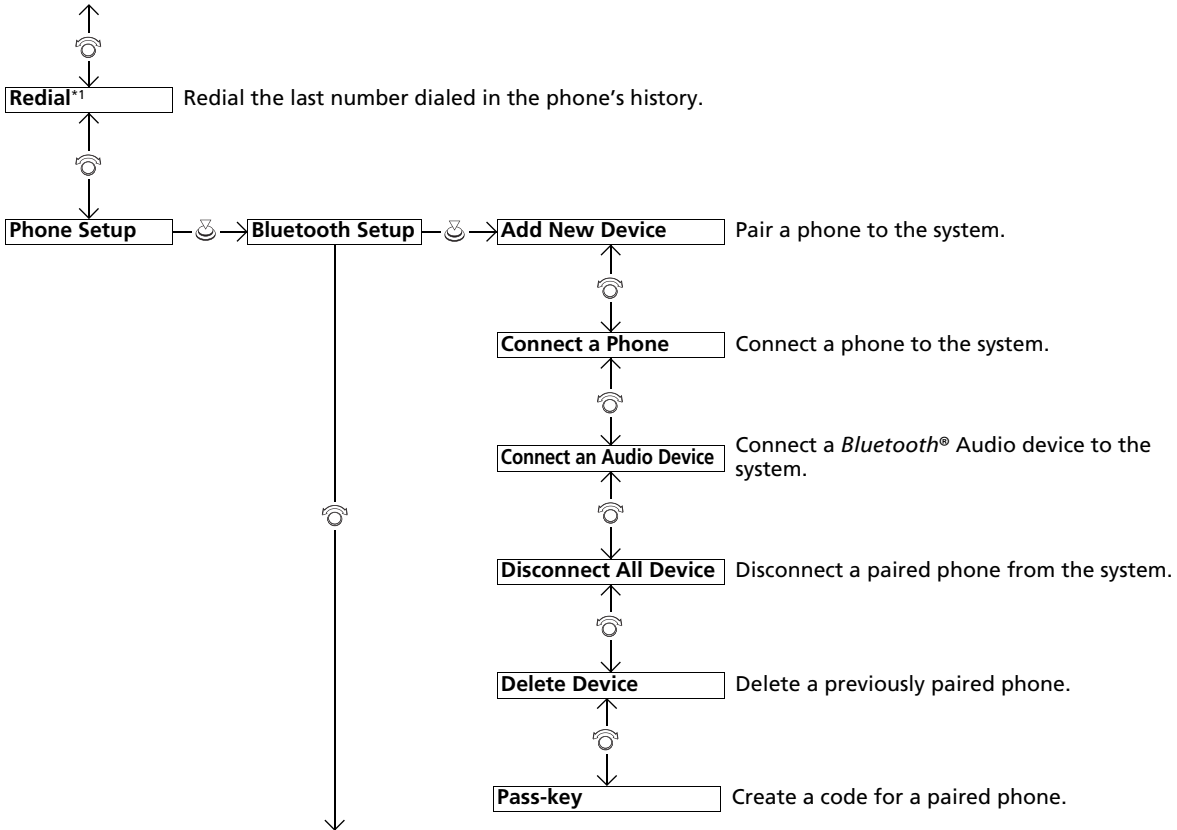
Display the last 20 incoming calls.

Display the last 20 missed calls.

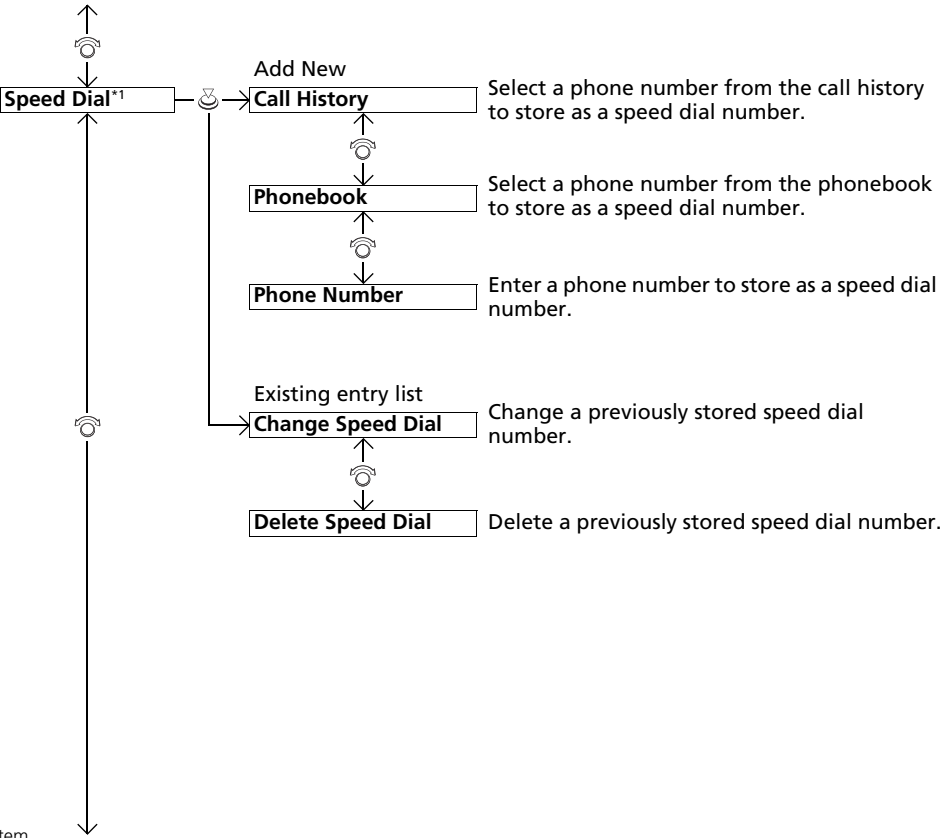
Display the paired phones's phonebook.

Enter a phone number to dial.

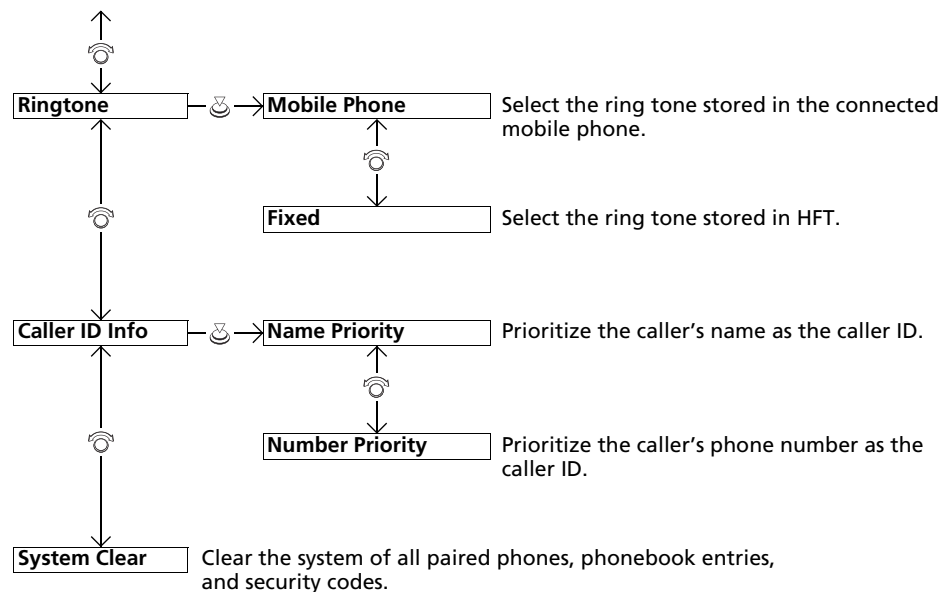
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.



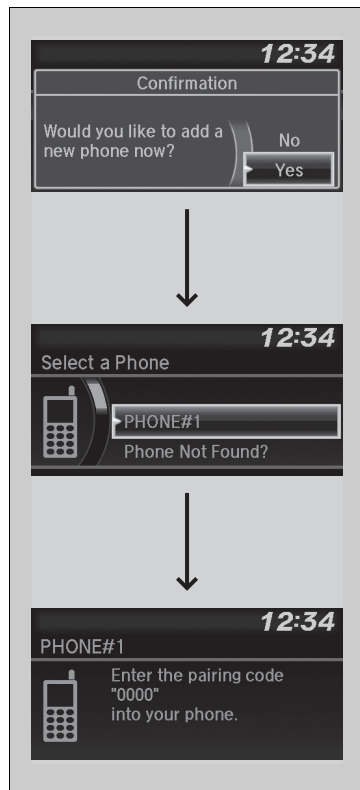
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.



Phone Setup



■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
 - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
 - ▶ If your phone doesn't appear, select **Phone Not Found?** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

▶▶ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

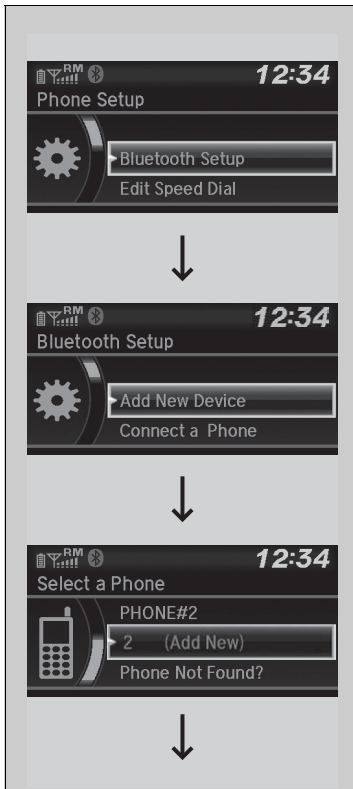
Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and returns to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

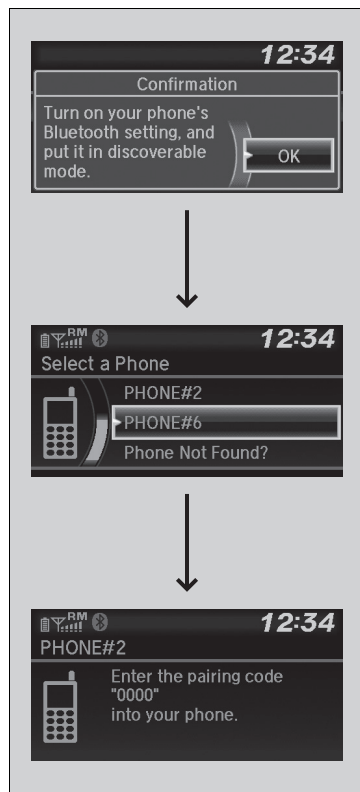
These icons indicate the following:



- : The phone can be used with HFT.
- : The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

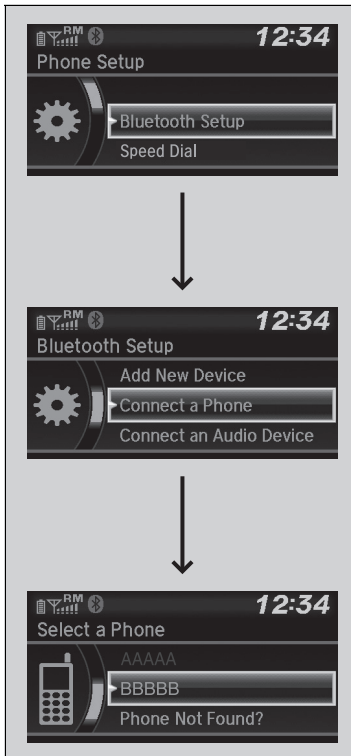


■ **To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
 - ▶ If a prompt appears asking to connect to a phone, select **No** and proceed with step 2.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Add New Device**, then press .
 - ▶ The screen changes to device list.
5. Rotate to select **Add New**, then press .

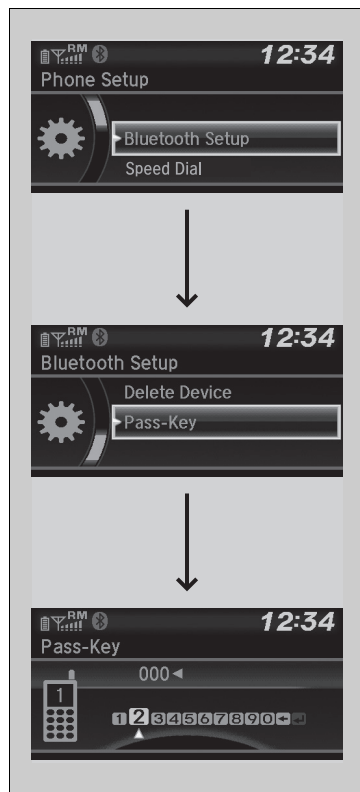


6. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
 - HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth®* device.
7. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
 - If your phone does not appear, select **Phone Not Found?** and search for *Bluetooth®* devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.
8. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio display.
 - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.



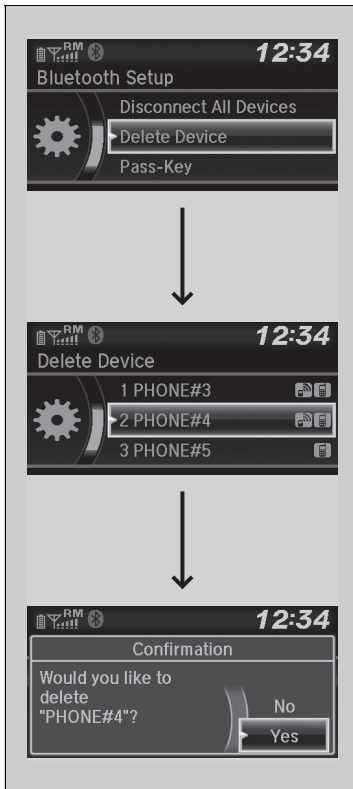
■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Connect a Phone**, then press .
 - ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .
 - ▶ The system disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.



■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Pass-Key**, then press .
5. Input a new pairing code, then press .



■ To delete a paired phone

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete Device**, then press .
 - ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

■ Ring Tone

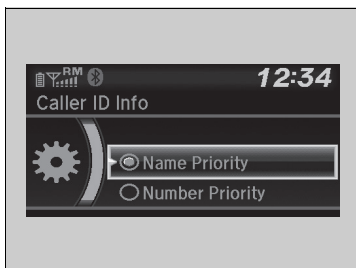
You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Ringtone**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Mobile Phone** or **Fixed**, then press .

■ Caller's ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Caller ID Info**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

» Ring Tone

Mobile Phone: For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

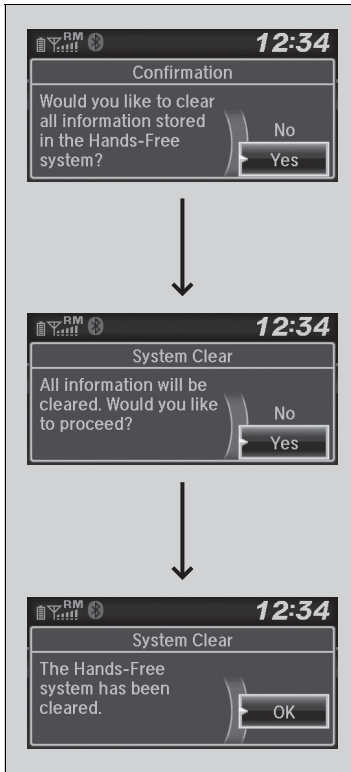
» Caller's ID Information

Name Priority: A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.

Number Priority: A caller's phone number is displayed.

■ To Clear the System

Pairing codes, paired phones, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.



1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **System Clear**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. A confirmation appears on the screen. Press .

Continued

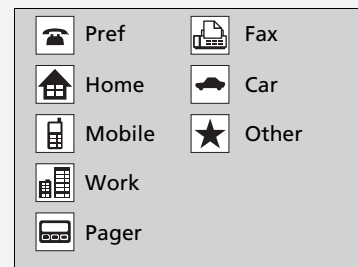
■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.



► Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

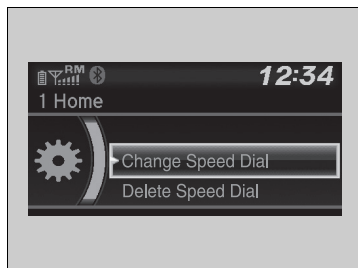
1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Add New**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .
 - From **Call History**:
 - ▶ Select a number from the call history.
 - From **Phonebook**:
 - ▶ Select a number from the connected cell phone's imported phonebook.
 - From **Phone Number**:
 - ▶ Input the number manually.

Speed Dial

You can use the audio preset buttons during a call to store a speed dial number:

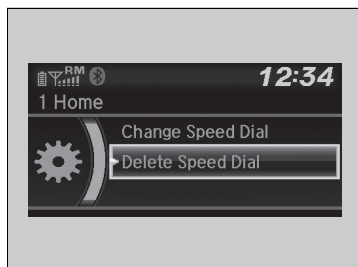
1. Press and hold the desired audio preset button during a call.
2. The contact information for the active call will be stored for the corresponding speed dial.

Continued



■ To edit a speed dial

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Change Speed Dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .

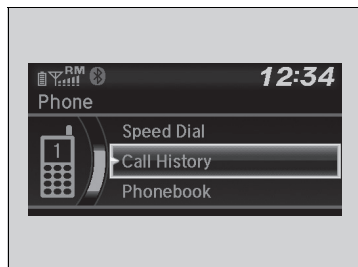


■ To delete a speed dial number

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Delete Speed Dial**, then press .
 - A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

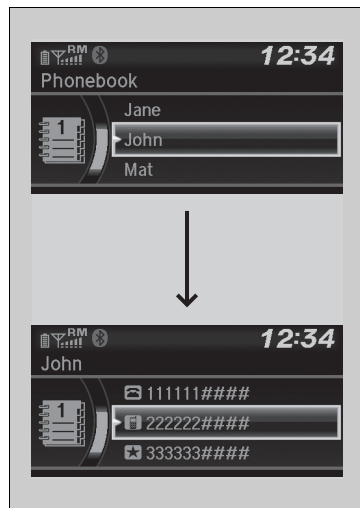


» Making a Call

The maximum range between your phone and vehicles is 10 metres.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

Continued



■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to the system.

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
 2. Rotate to select **PhoneBook**, then press .
 3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Rotate to select the initial, then press .
 4. Rotate to select a name, then press .
 5. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
 2. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
 3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
 4. Rotate to select , then press .
- Dialing starts automatically.

►► To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving.

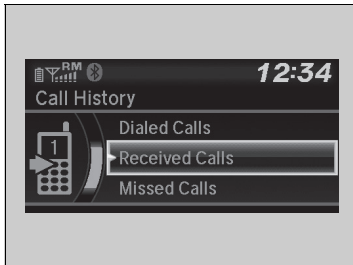
►► To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving.



■ To make a call using redial

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
 2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, and **Missed Calls**.

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
 2. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
 3. Rotate to select **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, or **Missed Calls**, then press .
 4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶ To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.

▶▶ To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.



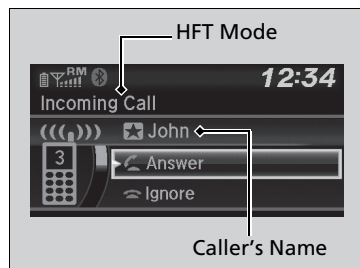
■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Press the (Phone) button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶ To make a call using a speed dial entry

On the **Phone** screen, the first six speed dials on the list can be directly selected by pressing the corresponding audio preset buttons (1-6).

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming Call** screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.
Press the button to decline or end the call.

▶▶ Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and buttons. Rotate to select the icon, then press .

Options During a Call

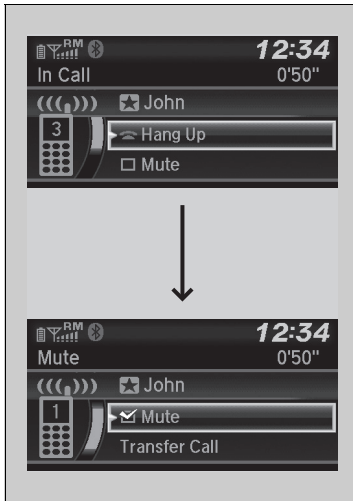
The following options are available during a call.




Swap Call: Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Transfer Call: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Dial Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



1. To view the available options, press the  button.
 2. Rotate  to select the option, then press .
- The check box is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

Dial Tones: Available on some phones.

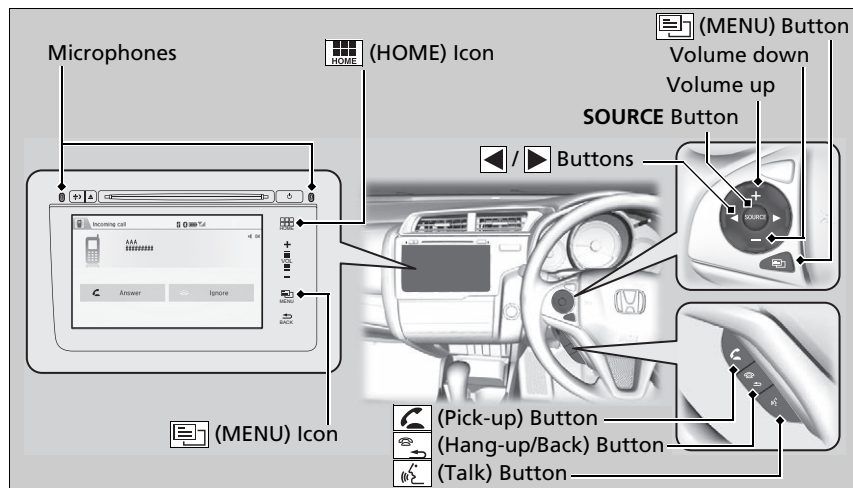
Hands-Free Telephone System


Models with display audio system


HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.


Using HFT

HFT Buttons



 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up/Back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

 **(Talk) button:** Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.


Hands-Free Telephone System

To use HFT, you need a **Bluetooth**-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.


To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**.

 **Customized Features*** P. 287


Voice control tips



- Press and release the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

Up to 6 speed dial entries can be display among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no entries in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

 **Speed Dial** P. 362

Up to six call histories can be displayed. If there is no call histories, Call History is disabled.

 **(MENU) button:** Press to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Redial** on the **Phone** screen.

 /  **button:** Press to select an item displayed on the **Phone** screen.

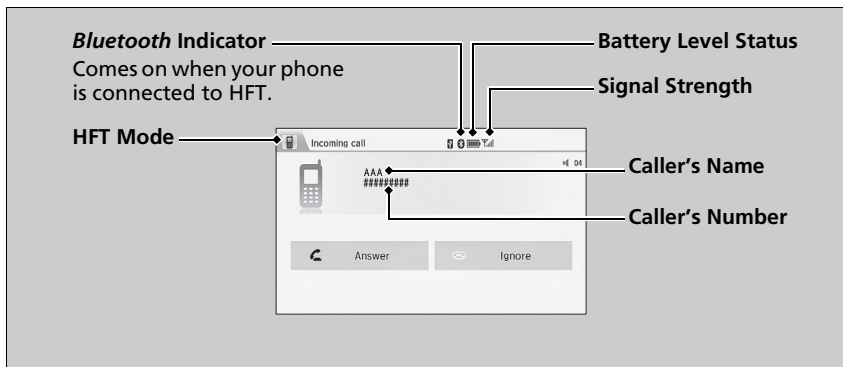
SOURCE button: Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the **Phone** screen.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Phone** to switch the display to the **Phone** screen.
3. Select **MENU**.

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



Continued

Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➤ **Speed Dial** P. 362

HFT Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON *¹ to use the system.

■ Phone settings screen

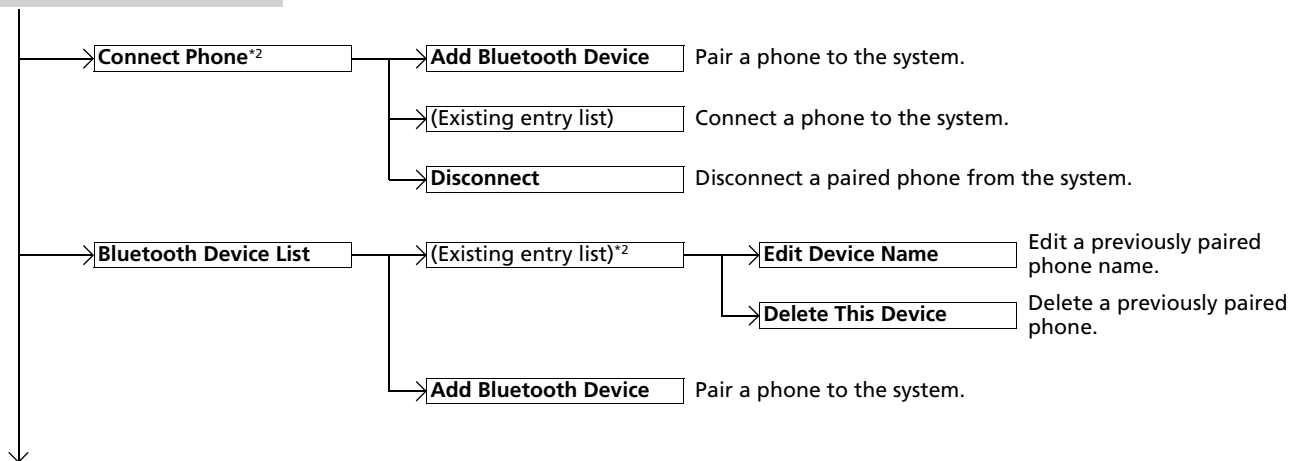


1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

☒ HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

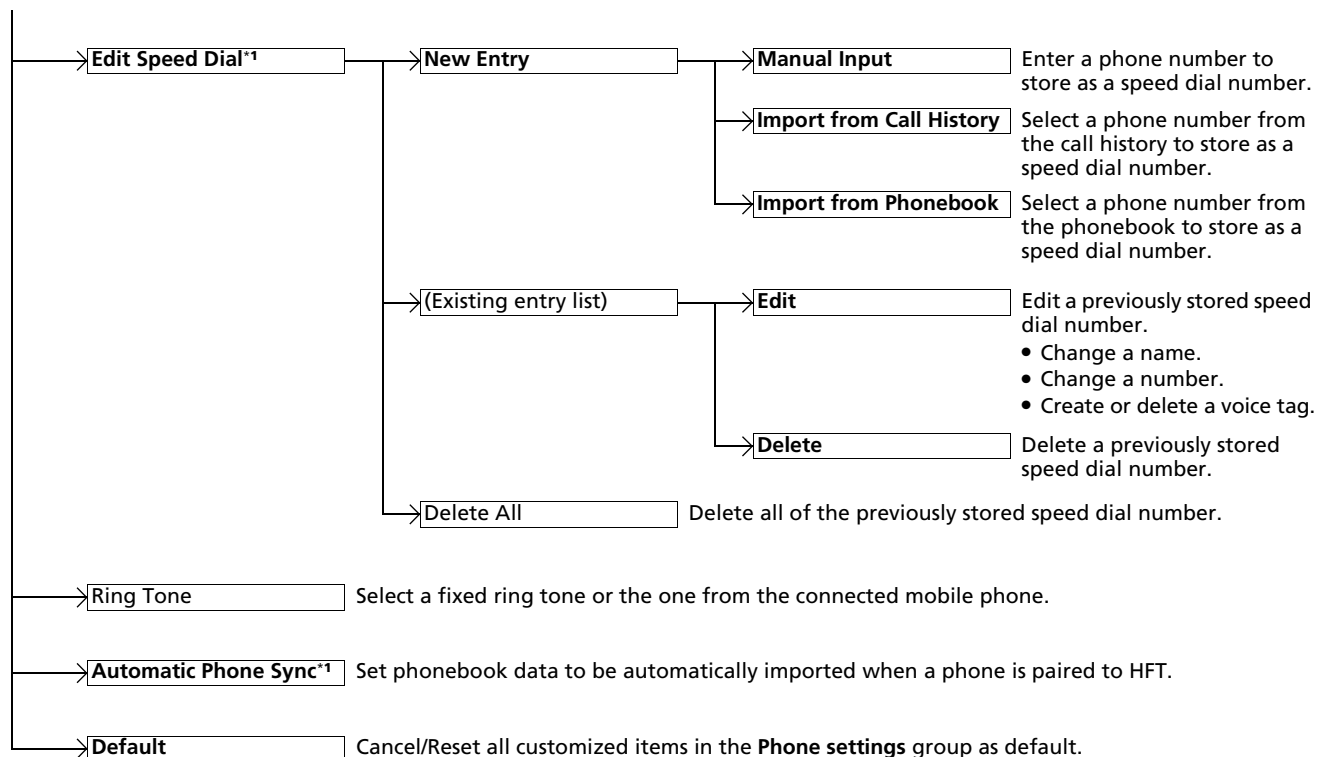
Some functions are limited while driving.



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

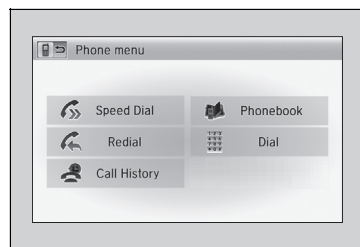
*2: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

Continued

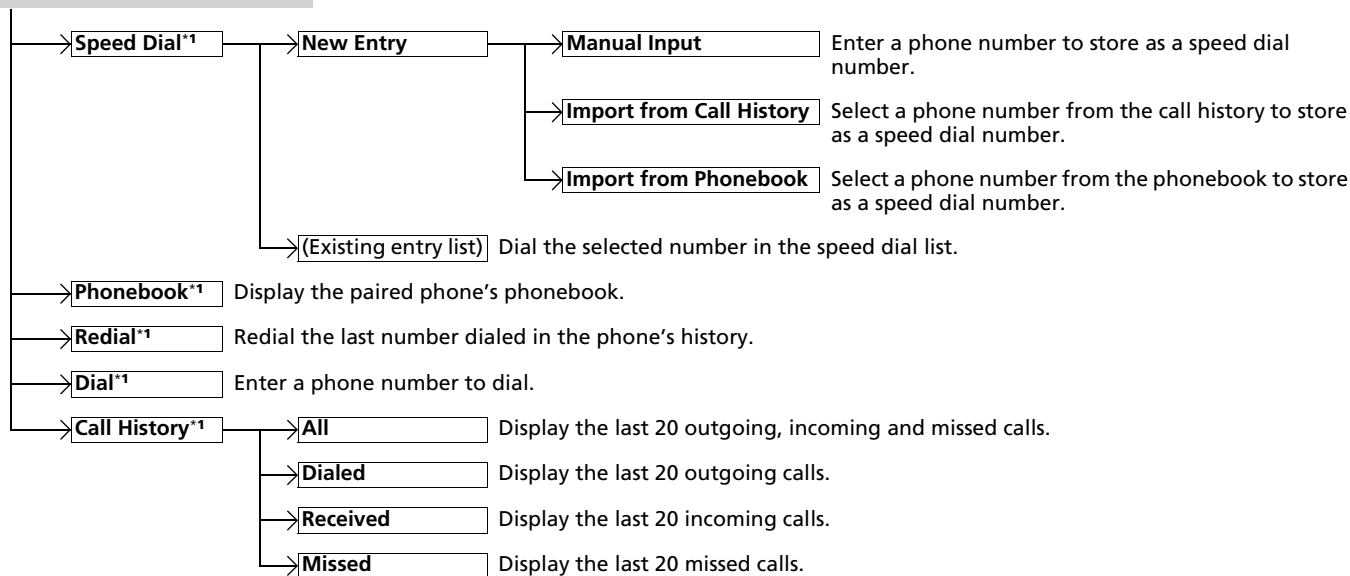


*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

■ Phone menu screen

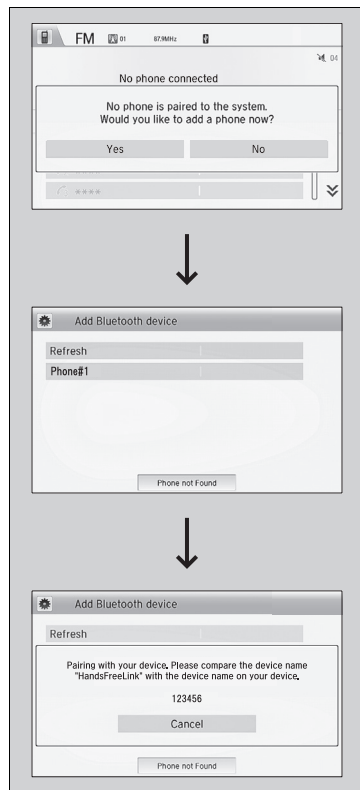


1. Press or select **HOME**, then select **Phone**.
2. Press (MENU) on the steering wheel, or select **MENU**.



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

Phone Setup



■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

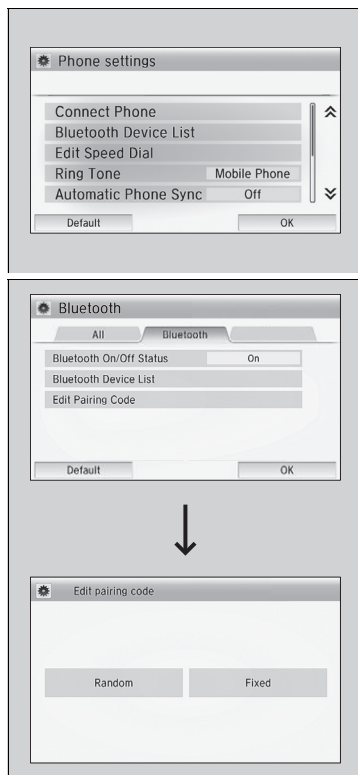
1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is search or discoverable mode, then select **Continue**.
 - HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth* device.
4. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
 - If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
 - If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not found** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, search for **Honda HFT**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system, the system will return to the previous screen.



■ Changing the currently paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 353
2. Select **Connect Phone**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
 ▶ HFT disconnects the current phone and starts searching for another paired phone.

■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth**.
 ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth** tab, then **Edit Pairing Code**.
4. Select **Fixed** or **Random**.

⌘ Changing the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Connect Phone** screen.

⌘ To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



■ To edit an already-paired phone name

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 - **Phone settings screen** P. 353
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a paired phone you want to edit.
4. Select **Edit Device Name**.
5. Edit the name and select **OK**.
6. A notification appears if the change is successful.



■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.

☑ **Phone settings screen** P. 353

2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.

3. Select a phone you want to delete.

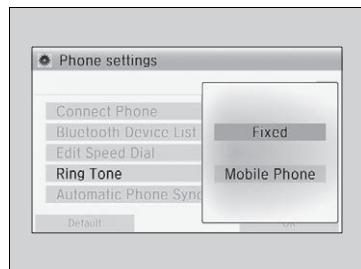
4. Select **Delete This Device**.

5. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Select **Yes**.

6. A notification appears if the deletion is successful.

■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



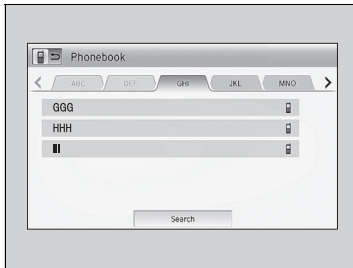
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ➤ **Phone settings screen** P. 353
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

» Ring Tone

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speaker.

Mobile Phone: The ring tone stored in the connected cell phone is heard through the vehicle speakers.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History




■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.



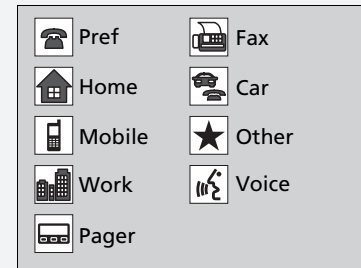
■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 **Phone settings screen** P. 353
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.

3. Select **On** or **Off**.

⌘ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

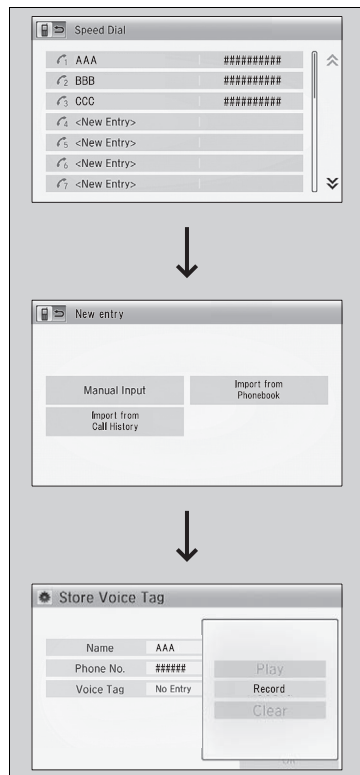


On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

■ Speed Dial


Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

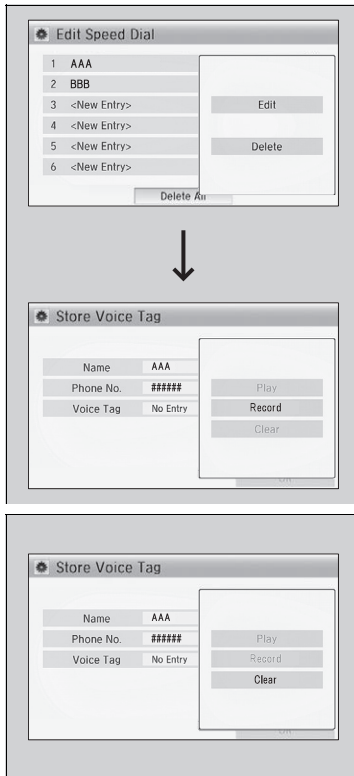


To store a speed dial number:


1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
❏ **Phone menu screen** P. 355
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
► Repeat the procedure to select **New Entry**.
3. Select a place to choose a number.
 From **Import from Call History**:
► Select a number from the call history.
 From **Manual Input**:
► Input the number manually.
 From **Import from Phonebook**:
► Select a number from the linked cell phone's imported phonebook.
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored from **Import from Call History** or **Import from Phonebook**, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.
5. Select **Record** to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

❏ Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.



■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

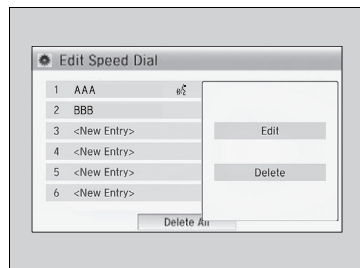
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 353
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record** to store the voice tag.
6. Using the  button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 353
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

⌘ Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using “home” as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognize a longer name.
For example, use “John Smith” instead of “John.”



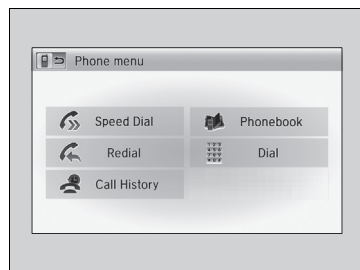
■ To edit a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 353
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

■ To delete a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 353
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.


■ Making a Call



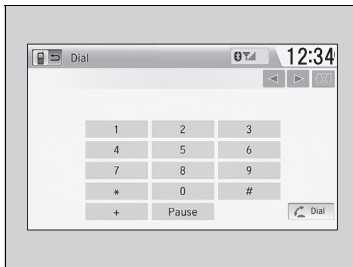
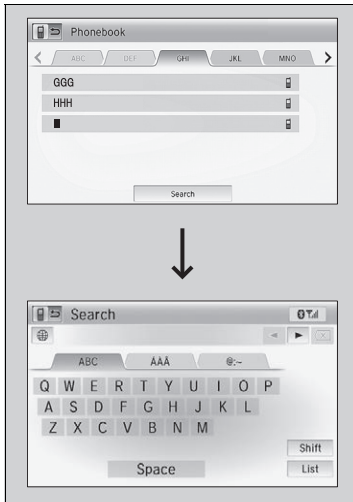
You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

☒ Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the  button and say "Call" and the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.

▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 355

2. Select **PhoneBook**.

3. Select a name.

▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.

▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering letters.

4. Select a number.

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.

▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 355

2. Select **Dial**.

3. Select a number.

▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.

4. Select .

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶ To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

▶ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 352

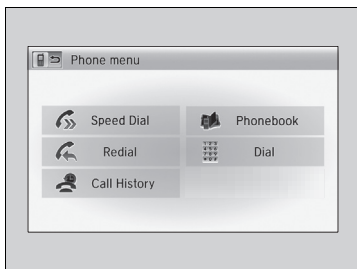
▶ **Speed Dial** P. 362

▶▶ To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

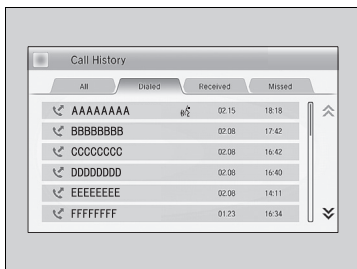
▶ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 352

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 362



■ To make a call using redial

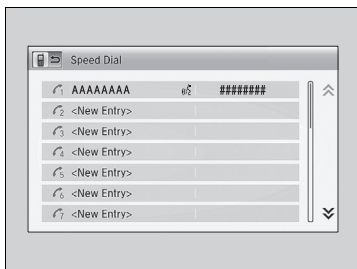
1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 355
2. Select **Redial**.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.


1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 355
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.
4. Select a number.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 355
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.


► To make a call using redial

Press and hold the  button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's history.


► To make a call using the call history

The call history displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.
 (Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)

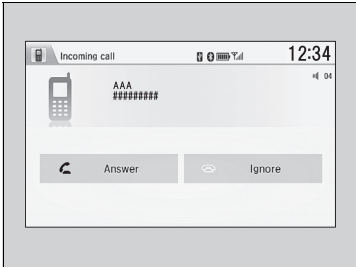
► To make a call using a speed dial entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag.



► **Speed Dial** P. 362

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
 Press the  button and follow the prompts.

Receiving a Call

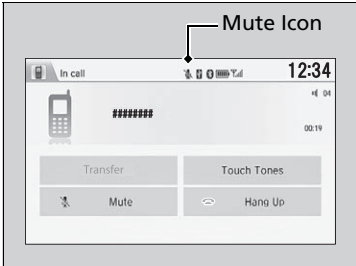


When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

Options During a Call

The available options appear on the screen during a call.



Mute: Mute your voice.


▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.


Transfer: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.


Receiving a Call



Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the touch screen instead of the  and  buttons.

Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the touch screen.

Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.



Before Driving	370
Driving Preparation	370
Load Limit	373
Towing a Trailer	374
When Driving	379
Models without keyless access system	
Starting the Engine	379
Models with keyless access system	
Starting the Engine	382
Precautions While Driving	385
Continuously Variable Transmission*	386
Continuously variable transmission models without paddle shifters	
Shifting	387

Continuously variable transmission models with paddle shifters	
Shifting	389
Manual transmission models	
Shifting	393
ECON Button*	396
Cruise Control*	397
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System*	400
Adjusting Headlight Distribution*	402
Braking	403
Brake System	403
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	405
Models with vehicle stability assist (VSA) system	
Brake Assist System	406


Models with vehicle stability assist (VSA) system	
Emergency Stop Signal	407
Parking Your Vehicle	408
When Stopped	408
Parking Sensor System*	409
Multi-View Rear Camera*	413
About Your Multi-View Rear Camera	413
Refueling	415
Petrol models	
Fuel Information	415
Diesel models	
Fuel Information	416
How to Refuel	417
Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions	418
Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO ₂ Emissions	418

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
-  **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 466
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
 - ✎ **Load Limit** P. 373
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
 - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat*.
 - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
 - Adjust the head restraint, too.
 - ✎ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 169
 - ✎ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 178
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
 - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - ✎ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 168
 - ✎ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 167

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer*, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

✎ **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 161

Models with LED type headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vehicle angle of the headlights.

* Not available on all models

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belts.
 - 📌 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 41
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - 📌 **Indicators** P. 84

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 532, 535, 538

South African models

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 532, 535

Load Limit

⚠ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

Except South African models without keyless access system

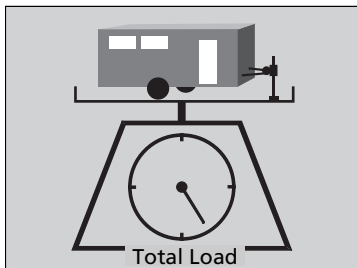
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

South African models without keyless access system

Towing Preparation

Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



■ Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it.

Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

⌘ Towing Load Limits

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and the trailer nose load.

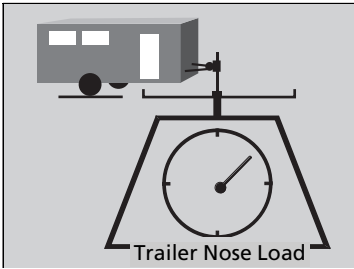
Break-in Period

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km.

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle and trailer weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres of elevation.

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and any specified load limit.

⌘ **Specifications** P. 534, 537



■ Trailer Nose load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 95 kg. This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 450 kg, the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

■ Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

■ Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

■ Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

► Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment.

Improper installation and setup can affect the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

Driving Safely with a Trailer

■ Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
📌 Towing Load Limits P. 374
- Securely attach the towbar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressure of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.

📌 Driving Safely with a Trailer

Operating speed when towing a trailer must not exceed 100 km/h.

Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

We recommend you drive uphill of less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

■ Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.

Continuously variable transmission models

- Use the [D] position when towing a trailer on level roads.

■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Closely watch your high temperature indicator. If the indicator remains on, turn off the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

Continuously variable transmission models

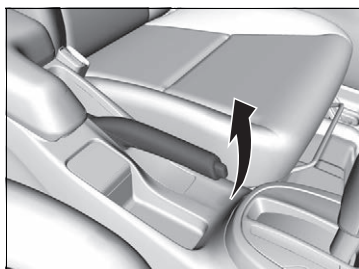
- Shift to the [S] position and use the paddle shifter to shift down when driving down hills.
This helps to increase engine braking efficiently and prevent the brake system from overheating.

►► Towing Speeds and Gears

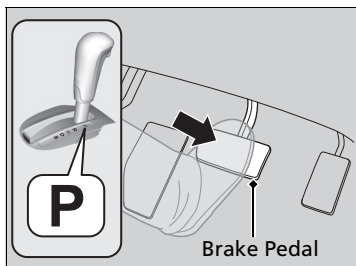
When towing a fixed-sided trailer (e.g., camper), do not exceed 88 km/h. At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling.

Models without keyless access system

Starting the Engine

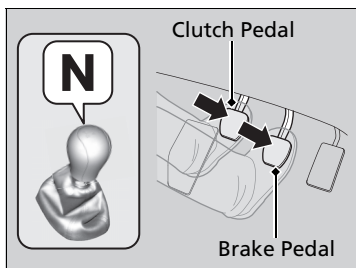


1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.



Manual transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in **N**. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
 - ▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

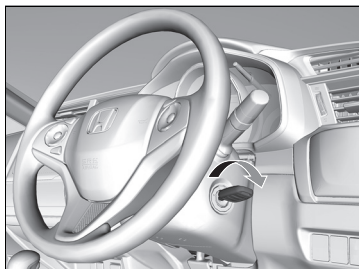
When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, heating and cooling system */climate control system *, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

➔ **Immobilizer System** P. 148

* Not available on all models




Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.


Diesel models

Idle the engine for 10 seconds before turning off the engine.

Petrol models

3. Turn the ignition switch to START  without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Diesel models

3. Wait until the glow plugs indicator goes off, then turn the ignition switch to START  without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Starting the Engine

Do not hold the key in START  for more than 10 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

Diesel models

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, the engine peak power may be restricted at starting the engine. This is to help the fuel flow for the normal engine operation.

Diesel models

For proper lubrication, the engine must not be run above fast idle speed until the low oil pressure indicator goes off.

Avoid harsh acceleration or labouring the engine before the normal operating temperature has been reached.

Starting to Drive

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator has gone off.

➤ **Parking Brake** P. 403

2. Put transmission into in **[D]**. Select **[R]** when reversing.
3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

■ Hill start assist system*

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Continuously variable transmission models

Move the shift lever to **[D]** or **[S]** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

⚡ Hill start assist system*

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

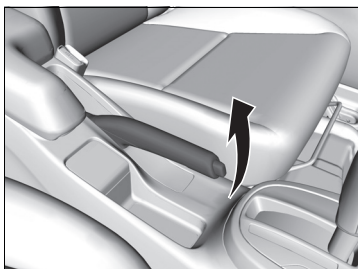
Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

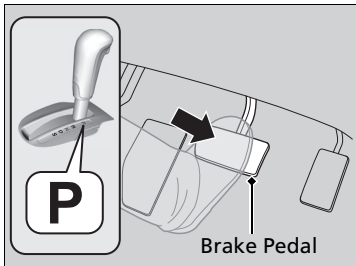
* Not available on all models

Models with keyless access system

Starting the Engine



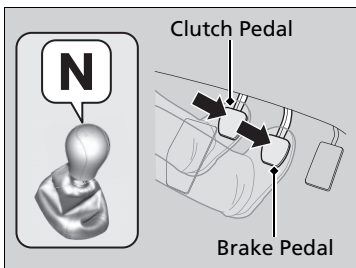
1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.

► Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.



Manual transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in **N**. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.

► The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

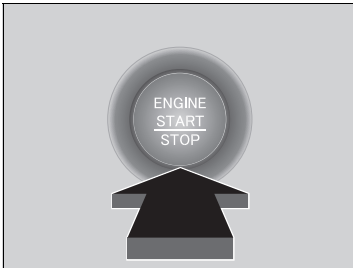
The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

► **Immobilizer System** P. 148



All models

3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Diesel models

- ▶ If the glow plugs indicator comes on, keep the clutch pedal fully depressed and wait until the indicator goes off. The engine starts automatically.

Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

Diesel models

Idle the engine for 10 seconds before turning off the engine.

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Put the transmission into **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Manual transmission models

- If the transmission is in **N**, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- If the transmission is in any gear other than **N**, depress the clutch pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Starting the Engine

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

- ▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**
P. 496

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

Stopping the Engine

Diesel models

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, the engine peak power may be restricted at starting the engine. This is to help the fuel flow for the normal engine operation.

Diesel models

For proper lubrication, the engine must not be run above fast idle speed until the low oil pressure indicator goes off.
Avoid harsh acceleration or labouring the engine before the normal operating temperature has been reached.

■ Starting to Drive

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator has gone off.

🔧 **Parking Brake** P. 403

2. Put the transmission into **[D]**. Select **[R]** when reversing.

3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

■ Hill start assist system*

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Continuously variable transmission models

Put the transmission into **[D]**, **[S]** or **[L]*** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

🔧 Hill start assist system*

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Precautions While Driving

In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Continuously Variable Transmission *

■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

» Precautions While Driving

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY **I***¹ while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in **N**, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km. You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

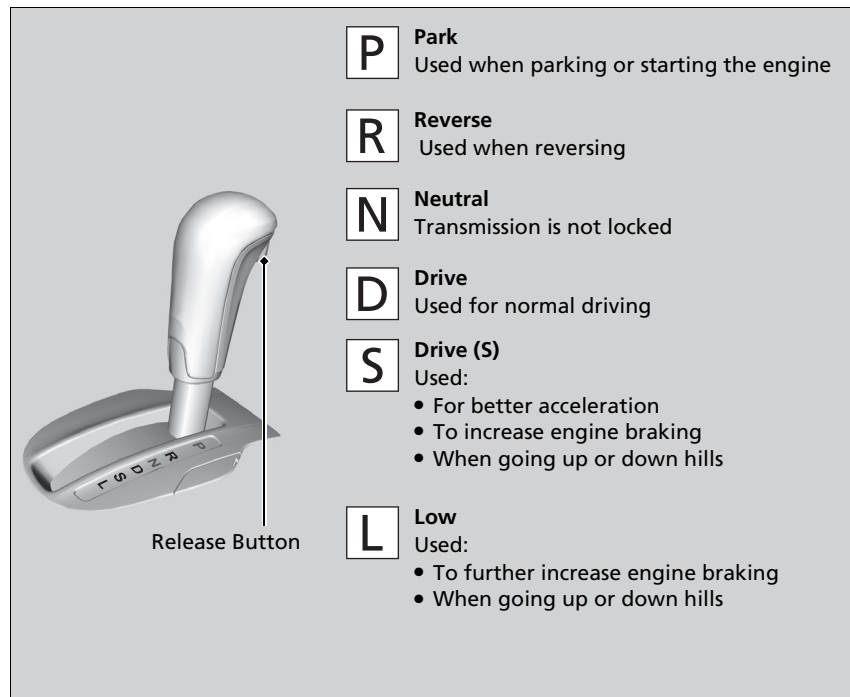
* Not available on all models

Continuously variable transmission models without paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



▶▶ Shift lever positions

Models without keyless access system

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [O] and remove the key unless the shift lever is in [P].

Models with keyless access system

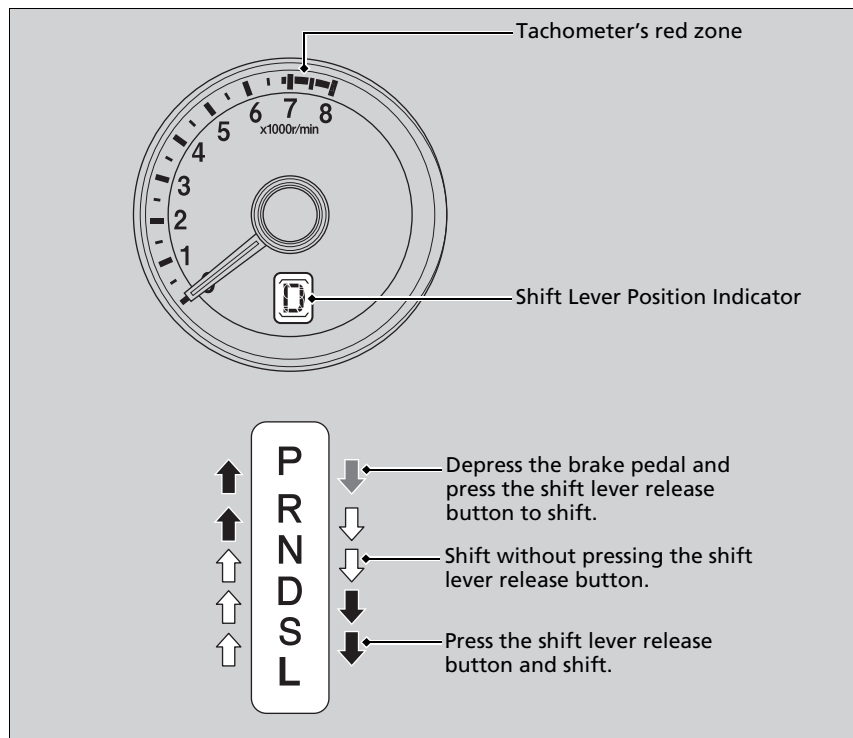
You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in [P].

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, a blinking **D** indicator indicates a transmission problem. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

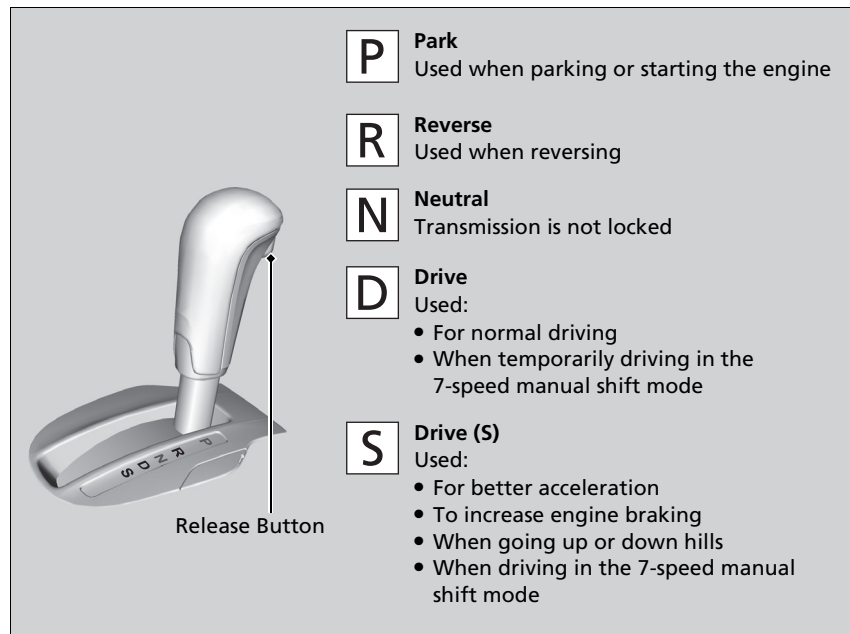
It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is depressed while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.

Continuously variable transmission models with paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



▶▶ Shift lever positions

Models without keyless access system

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [O] and remove the key unless the shift lever is in [P].

Models with keyless access system

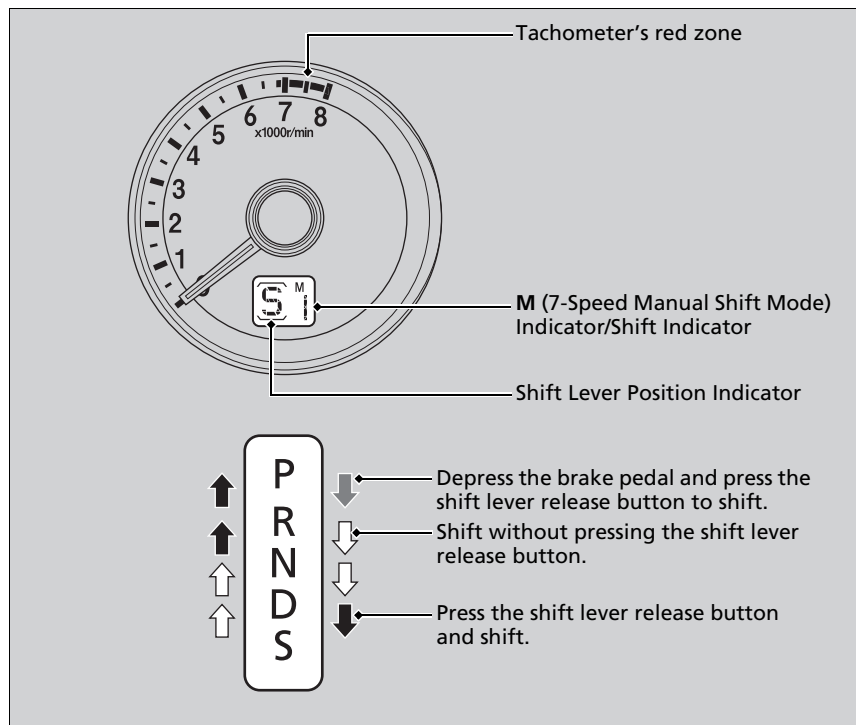
You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in [P].

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, a blinking **D** indicator indicates a transmission problem.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is depressed while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the shift lever is in **[D]**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.

You can cancel this mode by pulling the **[+]** paddle shifter for a few seconds.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the shift lever is in **[S]**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

You can cancel this mode by pulling the **[+]** paddle shifter for a few seconds.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

⌘ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:

Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.

Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.

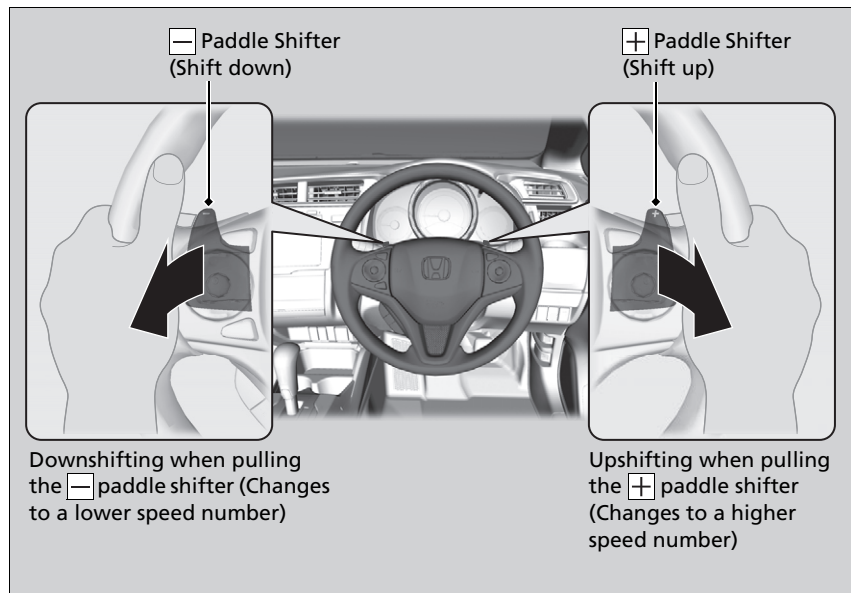
When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal **[D]** driving mode.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from **[S]** to **[D]**. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator will turn off.



►► 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.

To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.

Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

Manual transmission models

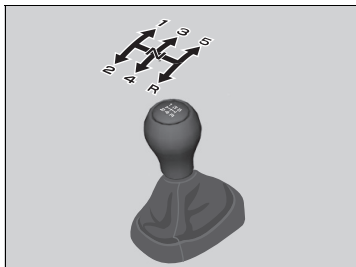
Petrol models

Shifting

Shift Lever Operation

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into **[R]**, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not “grind.”



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

Reverse Lockout

Your vehicle’s lockout mechanism stops you from accidentally shifting into **[R]** from the 5th gear. Always shift to **[N]** first, then to **[R]**.

Shifting

NOTICE

Do not shift to **[R]** before the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Shifting to **[R]** before stopping can damage the transmission.

NOTICE

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

There is a metallic part on the shift lever. If you leave the vehicle parked outside for a long time on a hot day, be careful before moving the shift lever. Because of heat, the shift lever may be extremely hot. If the outside temperature is low, the shift lever may feel cold.

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

Manual transmission models

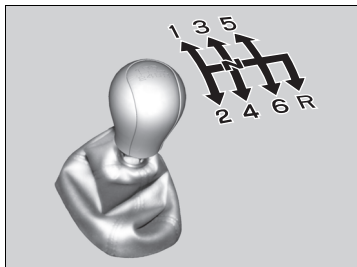
Diesel models

Shifting

Shift Lever Operation

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into **[R]**, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not “grind.”



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

Shifting

NOTICE

Do not shift to **[R]** before the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Shifting to **[R]** before stopping can damage the transmission.

NOTICE

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

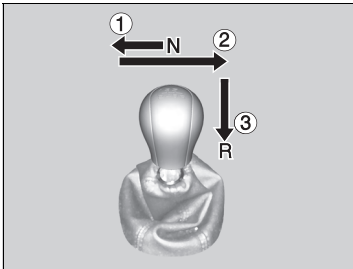
There is a metallic part on the shift lever. If you leave the vehicle parked outside for a long time on a hot day, be careful before moving the shift lever. Because of heat, the shift lever may be extremely hot. If the outside temperature is low, the shift lever may feel cold.

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has a lockout mechanism that stops you from accidentally shifting into **R** from a forward gear while the vehicle is moving at a certain speed.

If you cannot shift to **R** when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:



1. Depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever all the way to the left, and shift to **R**.
2. If you still cannot shift into **R**, apply the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY **I** or LOCK **0**.
3. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into **R**.
4. Keep depressing the clutch pedal and start the engine.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you have to go through this procedure repeatedly.

ECON Button *



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.

The ECON mode helps you to improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission, climate control system*, and cruise control*.

» ECON Button *

Models with climate control system

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

Cruise Control *

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control:
Desired speed in a range above
roughly 40 km/h ~

Always keep sufficient distance
between you and the vehicle in
front of you.

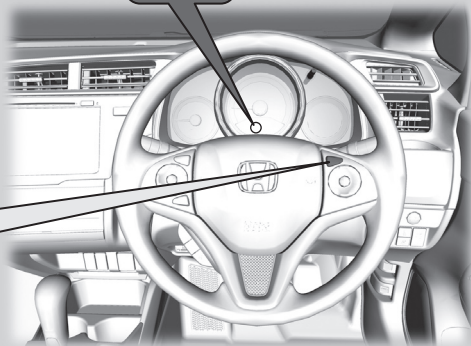
Continuously variable transmission models

- Shift positions for cruise control:
In **D** or **S**.



How to use

- Press the **CRUISE** button on
the steering wheel.



CRUISE
MAIN

CRUISE MAIN is on in the
instrument panel.
Cruise control is ready to use.

⚠ Cruise Control *

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead
to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling
on open motorways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed
when driving uphill or downhill.

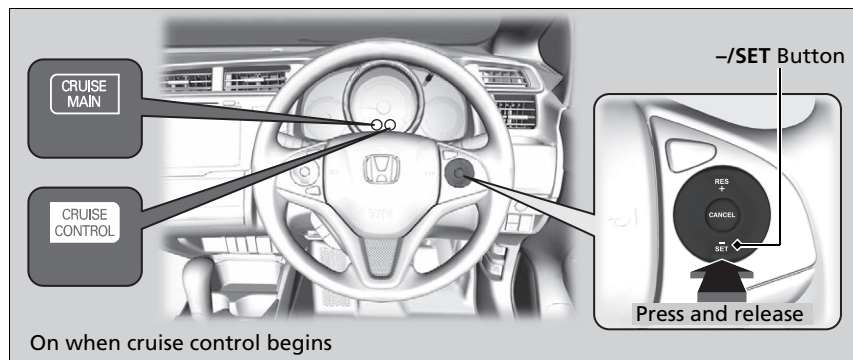
When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE**
button.

Manual transmission models

When the engine speed slows down, try to
downshift.

You can maintain the set speed if you change gear
within five seconds.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

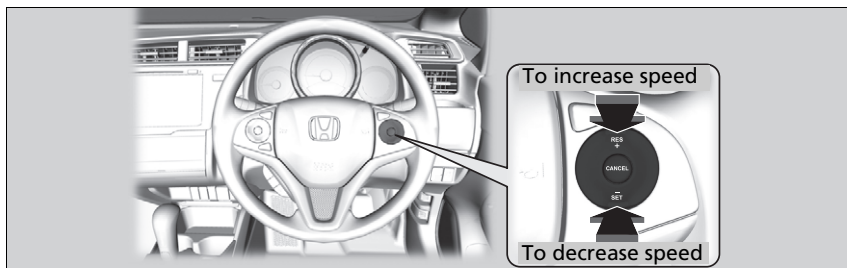


Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

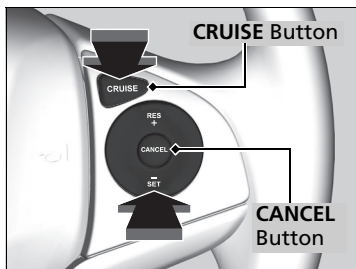
■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

- Depress the clutch pedal for five seconds or more.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **-/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

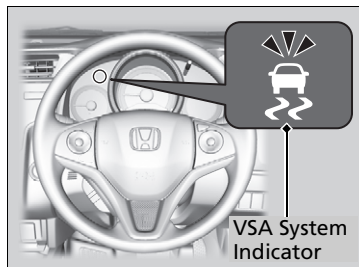
- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System*

VSA helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System*

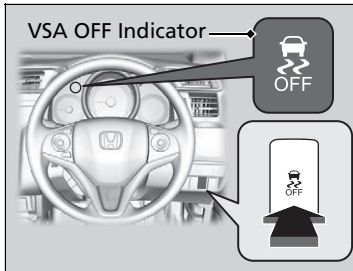
The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.


The Main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

■ VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

▣ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System*

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

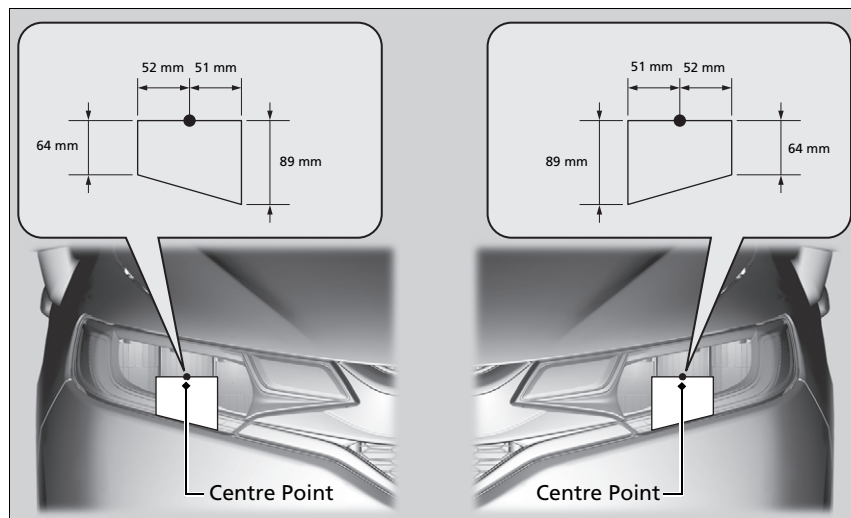
You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting Headlight Distribution *

Models with LED type headlight

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.



1. Prepare for two rectangular pieces of masking tape, measuring 89 mm wide and 103 mm long.
► Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

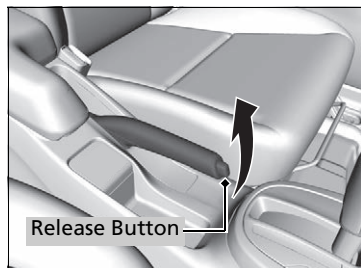
►► Adjusting Headlight Distribution *

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details.

Brake System

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.

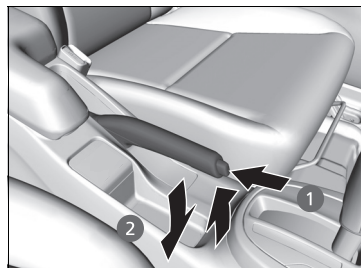


To apply:

Pull the lever fully up without pressing the release button.

To release:

1. Pull the lever slightly, and press and hold the release button.
2. Lower the lever down all the way, then release the button.



Parking Brake

NOTICE

Release the parking brake fully before driving. The rear brakes and axle can be damaged if you drive with the parking brake applied.

If you start driving without fully releasing the parking brake, a buzzer sounds as a warning.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at the front, and drum brakes in the rear wheels. A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system * increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS)* helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 406

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 405

☒ Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear/speed position. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

» Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Models with vehicle stability assist (VSA) system

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

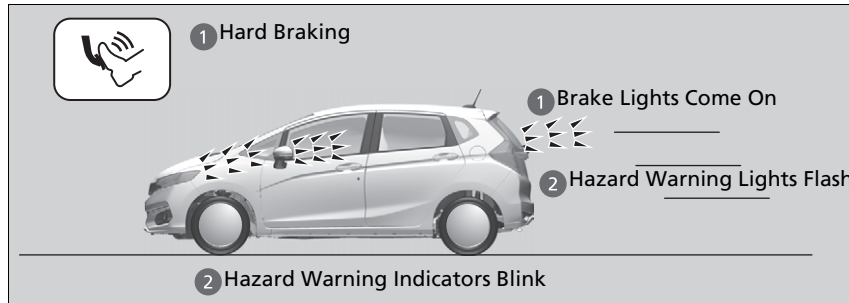
When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Models with vehicle stability assist (VSA) system

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

» Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period of the during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Apply the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

3. Change the shift position to **P**.

Manual transmission models

3. Move the shift lever to **R** or **1**.

Diesel models

4. Keep idling the engine for about 10 seconds.

All models

5. Turn off the engine.

Always set the parking brake firmly, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

» Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

» When Stopped

Continuously variable transmission models

WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged. A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death. Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the gear position indicator.

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.

- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

Diesel models

The engine idling may be prohibited in some countries. Check and follow your local legal requirements.

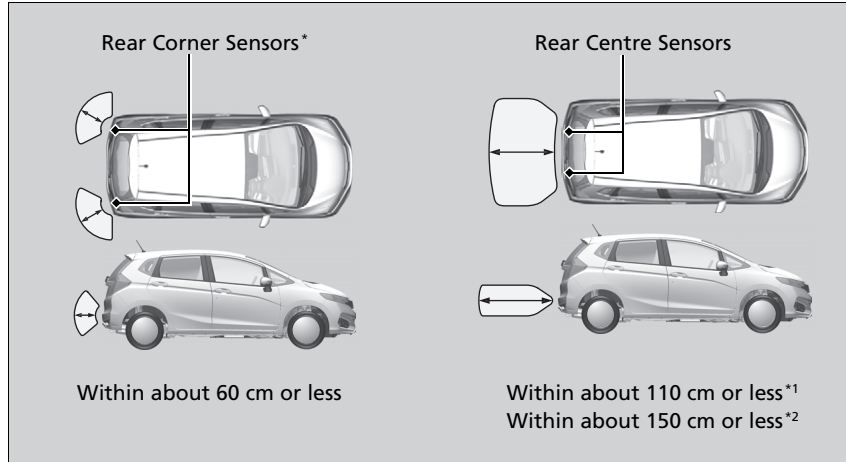
All models

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

The corner* and centre sensors monitor obstacles behind your vehicle, and the beeper, multi-information display*, and audio/information screen* let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



*1: Except Malaysia models

*2: Malaysia models

* Not available on all models

⚠ Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

■ Parking sensor system on and off

Except Malaysia models



Except Malaysia models

With the ignition switch in ON **[II]***1, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The rear centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **[R]**.

Malaysia models

The sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **[R]**.

Manual transmission models

You also need to release the parking brake.

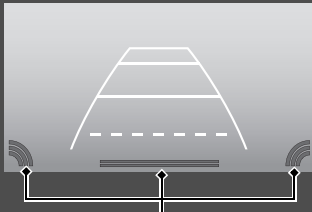
►► Parking sensor system on and off

The parking sensor system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you start the engine.

*1 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

Models with multi-view rear camera

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Audio/information screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	About 110-60 cm	Blinks in Yellow*1	 <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>
Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Blinks in Amber	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Blinks in Red	

*1: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

Models without multi-view rear camera

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator*	Multi-information display*
	Corner Sensors* ¹	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	About 110-60 cm* ¹ About 150-100 cm* ²	Blinks* ³	
Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-45 cm* ¹ About 100-50 cm* ²	Blinks	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm* ¹	Blinks	
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less* ¹ About 50 cm or less* ²	Blinks	

*1: Except Malaysia models

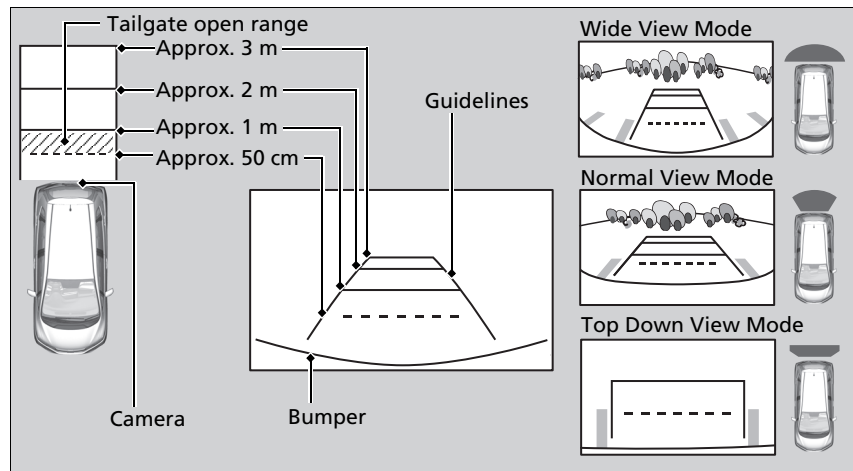
*2: Malaysia models

*3: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into **R**.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



You can view three different camera angles on the audio/information screen. Press the **LIST/SELECT** selector knob to switch the angle.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions, such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures, may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

➤ **Customized Features*** P. 280

Fixed Guideline

On: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into **R**.

Off: Guidelines do not appear.

Dynamic Guideline

On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

Off: Guidelines do not move.

You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display.

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the angle.



: Wide view



: Normal view



: Top down view

- If the last used viewing mode was Wide or Normal, the same mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If Top down view was last used before you turned off the engine, Wide View mode is selected next time you turn the ignition switch to ON **II***1 and put the transmission into **R**.

Except South African models

- If Top down view was last used more than 10 seconds after you put the transmission out of **R**, Wide View mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into **R**.

*1 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Petrol models

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Indonesian models

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of a petrol with a research octane less than 88 can lead to engine damage.

Models for other countries

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

» Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

Diesel models

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Automotive Diesel Fuel

Use the automotive diesel fuel specified with a cetane number 51 or higher and up to 350 ppm of sulfur.

Select the proper fuel of clean and good quality according to the regional and climate condition. Use of improper fuel can reduce engine power.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

» Fuel Information

NOTICE

Serious damage may occur if petrol is used in diesel engines.

Your vehicle is not designed to use Biodiesel (pure or high concentration more than 7 % vol). Consult a dealer for more information.

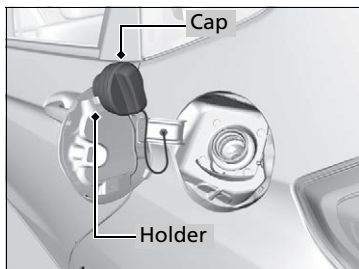
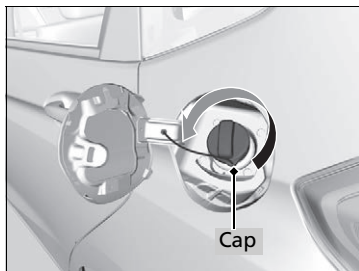
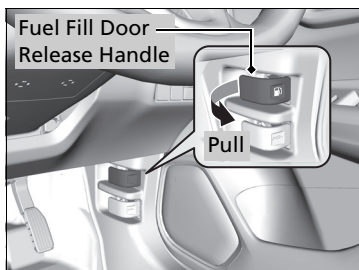
NOTICE

Not using of the recommended automotive diesel fuel can cause the decreased engine performance.

Never use the heating oil and marine diesel fuel.

We recommend to replace the fuel filter before starting to drive if you have parked your vehicle for an extended period. The fuel filter may become clogged earlier than usual.

How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the dashboard at the driver's side.
▶ The fuel fill door opens.
4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the filler nozzle fully.
▶ When the tank is full, the fuel nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

⚠ WARNING

Fuel is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

Diesel models

Check if you have picked up the right nozzle. When you cannot insert the filler nozzle even though it is for diesel fuel, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO₂ emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

📖 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 423

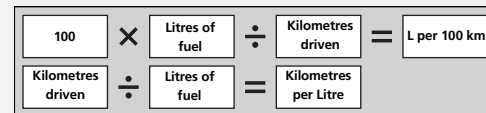
- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

📖 **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 434, 435

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance	420
Safety When Performing Maintenance.....	421
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service	422

Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)	429
---	-----

Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet.....	430
Opening the Bonnet.....	433
Petrol models	
Recommended Engine Oil	434
Diesel models	
Recommended Engine Oil	435

Oil Check.....	436
Adding Engine Oil.....	439
Engine Coolant	440
Transmission Fluid.....	444
Brake/Clutch* Fluid.....	445
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	446
Fuel Filter	446
Replacing Light Bulbs	447
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades	460
Checking and Maintaining Tyres	
Checking Tyres	466
Wear Indicators	467
Tyre Service Life	467

Tyre and Wheel Replacement	468
Tyre Rotation.....	469
Snow Traction Devices	470
Battery	471

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Button Battery	473
------------------------------------	-----

Cooling System*/Climate Control System*

Maintenance	476
--------------------------	-----

Cleaning

Interior Care	478
Exterior Care	480

Accessories and Modifications

Accessories	483
Modifications.....	483

* Not available on all models

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 423

Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
 - **Brake/Clutch* Fluid** P. 445
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 466
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
 - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 447
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 460

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
 - Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
 - Operate the engine only when there is sufficient ventilation.

Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
 - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

▶▶ Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

Diesel models

NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the Service Book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the Service Book, refer to the following maintenance schedule.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Petrol models

Except South African models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil ^{*3}	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe ^{*1}	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter ^{*3}	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe ^{*1}	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Clean air cleaner element ^{*5}		Every 10,000 km No clean at replace									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance		Every 120,000 km ^{*4}									
Replace fuel filter ^{*2}	Normal				•				•		
	Severe ^{*5}	Every 40,000 km or 2 years									
Replace spark plugs	Nickel type ^{*6}	Every 40,000 km									
	Iridium type ^{*7}	Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belts			•		•		•		•		•

*1: Refer to page 425 for replacement information under severe conditions.

*2: Refer to page 446 for replacement information under severe driving conditions.

*3: Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to the local warranty booklet that came with your vehicle.

*4: Sensory Method. Adjust the valves during services 120,000 km if there are noisy.

*5: Indian models

*6: Indian and Indonesian models

*7: Except Indian and Indonesian models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000		20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine coolant	At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years											
Replace transmission fluid*1	MT	Normal	Every 120,000 km or 6 years									
		Severe			•			•			•	
	CVT			•		•		•		•		•
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 10,000 km or 6 months											
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years											
Check parking brake adjustment	• • • • • • • • • • • •											
Replace dust and pollen filter	• • • • • • • • • • • •											
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Every 10,000 km											
Visually inspect the following items:												
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots	Every 10,000 km or 6 months											
Suspension components												
Driveshaft boots												
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
All fluid levels and condition of fluid												
Exhaust system												
Fuel lines and connections												

*1: Refer to page 425 for replacement information under severe conditions.

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B, D

⌘ Maintenance Schedule

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

- A. less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. in extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. with extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. with a loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. on muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

Diesel models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000 months	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil and oil filter	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe* ¹	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 20,000 km									
Replace fuel filter		Every 20,000 km									
Inspect drive belts			•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant						•			•		
Replace transmission fluid	MT Normal						•				
	Severe* ¹			•			•			•	

*1: Refer to page 428 for replacement information under severe conditions.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000 months	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
Inspect front and rear brakes		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace brake fluid		Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Check parking brake adjustment		Every 3 years									
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km									

Visually inspect the following items:

Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots	Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Suspension components										
Driveshaft boots										
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid										
Exhaust system										
Fuel lines and connections										

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B, D

» Maintenance Schedule

- The condition is considered as severe when you drive:
- A. less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
 - B. in extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
 - C. with extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
 - D. with a trailer towing*, or loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
 - E. on muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

Petrol models

Except South African models with keyless access system

Engine Oil Fill Cap

Brake/Clutch* Fluid
(Black Cap)

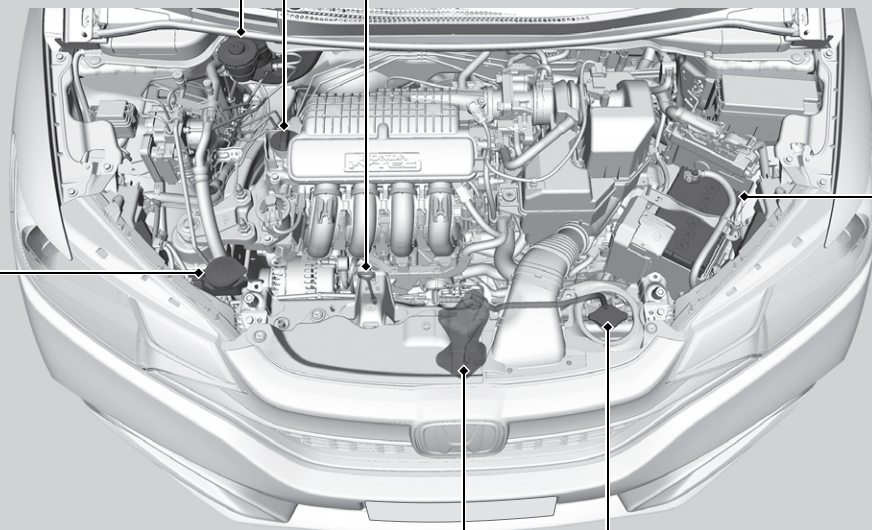
Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)

Engine Oil Dipstick
(Orange)

Battery

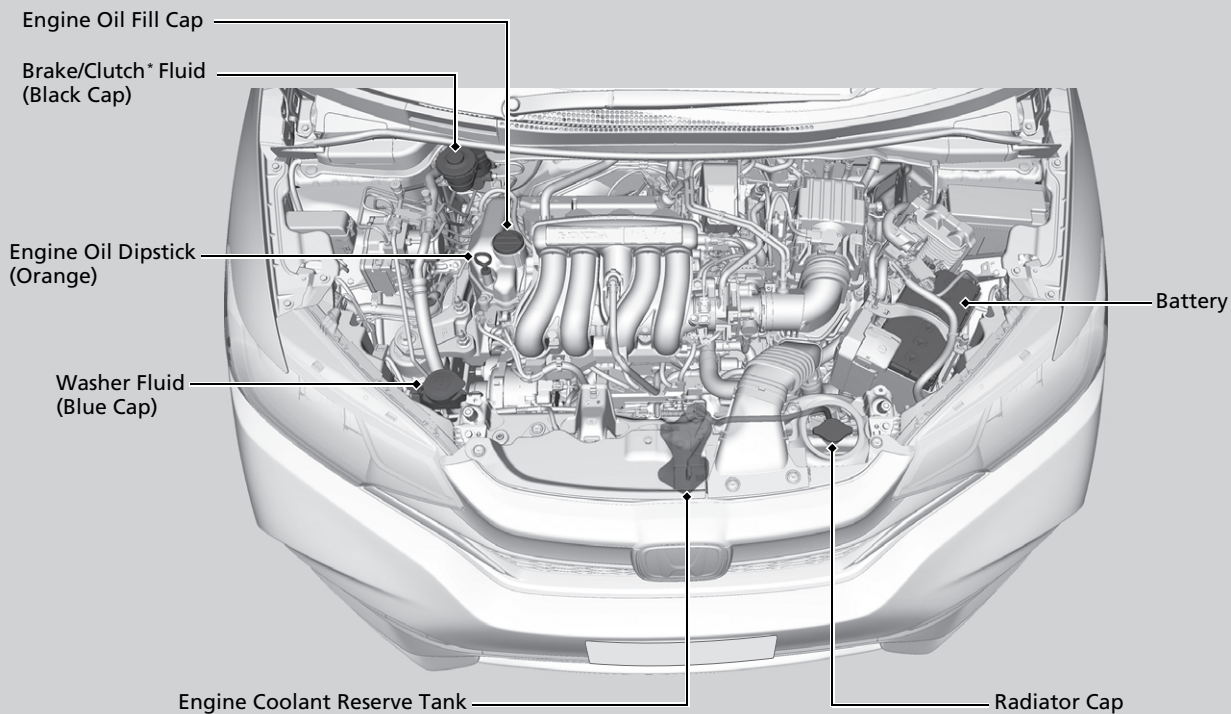
Engine Coolant Reserve Tank

Radiator Cap



Petrol models

South African models with keyless access system



* Not available on all models

Continued

Diesel models

Engine Oil Fill Cap

Brake/Clutch Fluid
(Black Cap)

Engine Oil Dipstick
(Orange)

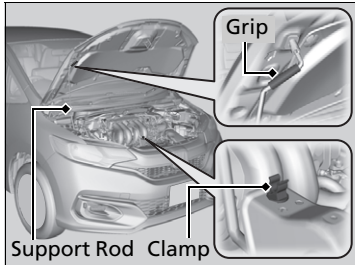
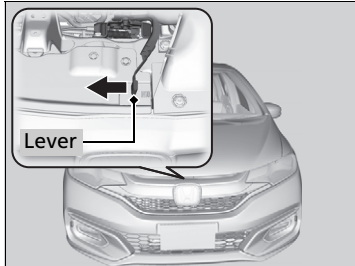
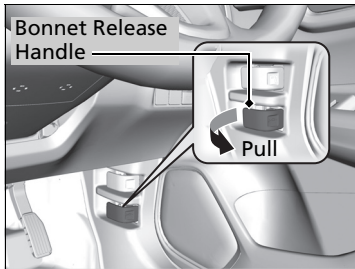
Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)

Battery

Radiator Cap

Engine Coolant Reserve Tank

Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
► The bonnet will pop up slightly.
3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.
4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

Opening the Bonnet

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised.
The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Diesel models

NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

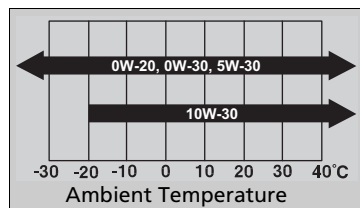
Petrol models

Recommended Engine Oil

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Except South African models with keyless access system

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil**
- **ACEA A5/B5**

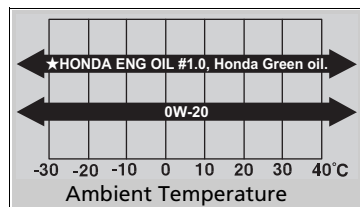


Use Genuine Honda Motor oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown here.

0W-20 oil is formulated to improve fuel economy.

South African models with keyless access system

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil**
- **ACEA A5/B5**



Use a Genuine Honda Motor oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

Honda ENG Oil #1.0 oil is formulated to improve fuel economy.

If Honda ENG Oil #1.0, Honda Green Oil, or 0W-20 is not available, use 5W-30 or 0W-30.

Honda ENG Oil #1.0, Honda Green Oil may not be available at the local store. Please contact a dealer.

►► Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

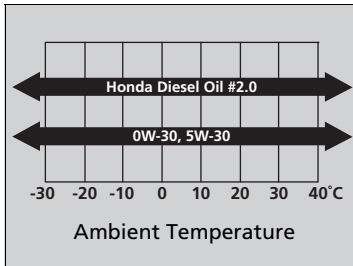
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Diesel models

Recommended Engine Oil

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

- **Honda Diesel Oil #2.0**
- **ACEA C2 or C3**



Use a commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

Honda diesel oil #2.0 is formulated to improve fuel economy.

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

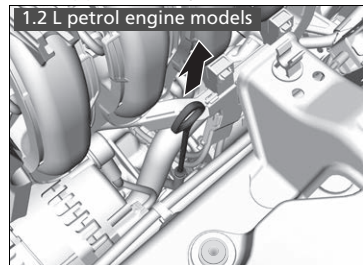
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Oil Check

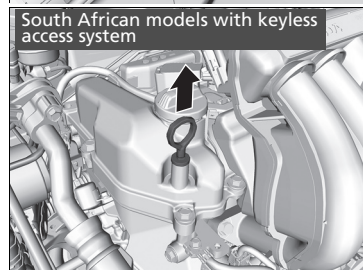
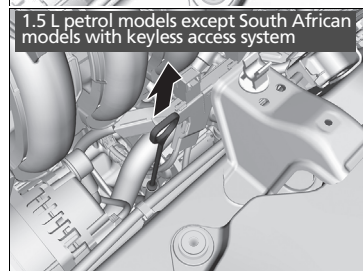
We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

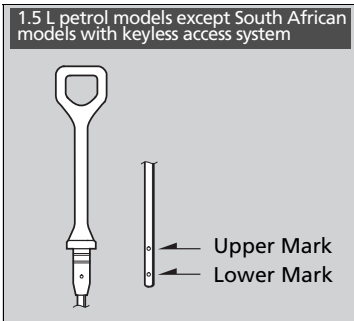
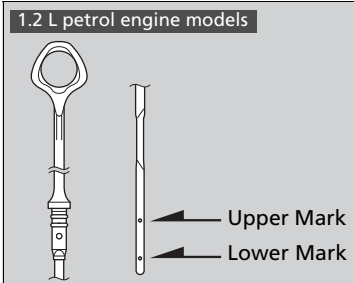
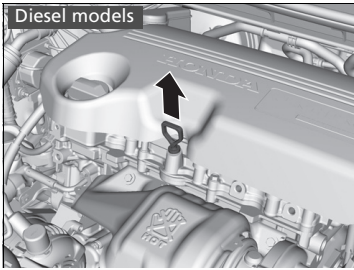


Oil Check

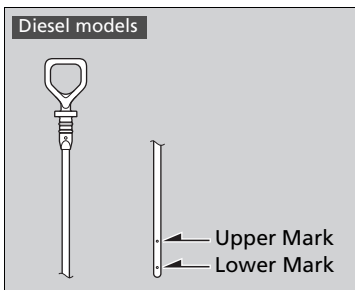
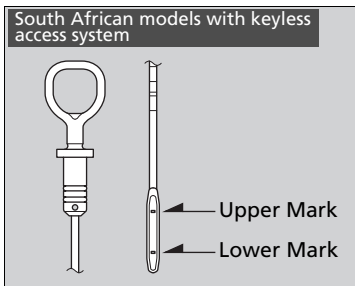
If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km.

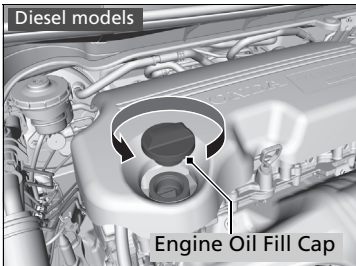
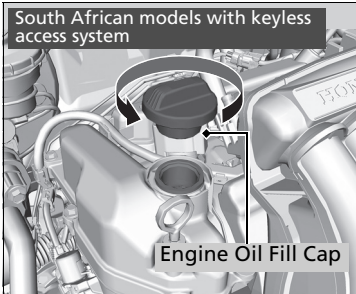
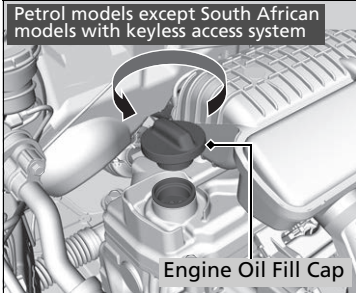
Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.



Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

Petrol models

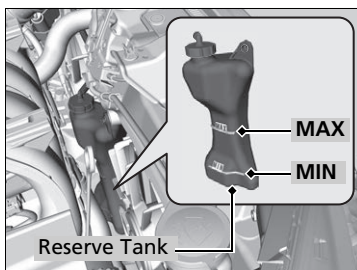
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

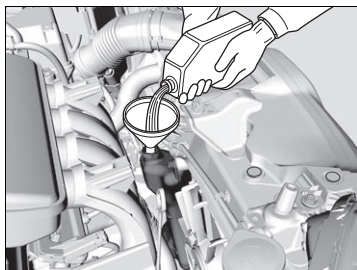
This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
 - If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.



3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠ WARNING

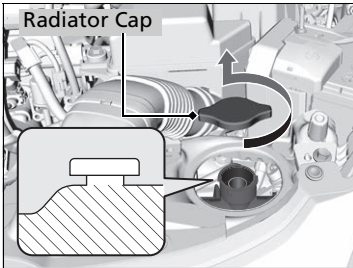
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Radiator



- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
- 2.** Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise to relieve any pressure in the cooling system. Do not push the cap down when turning.
- 3.** Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
- 4.** The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
- 5.** Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

»» Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Diesel models

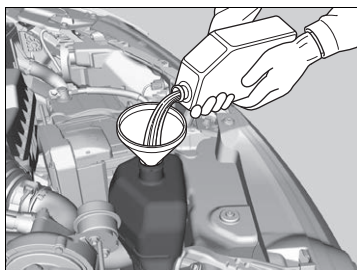
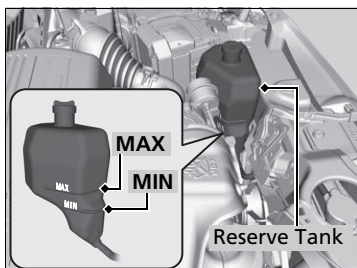
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.

2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.

► If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠ WARNING

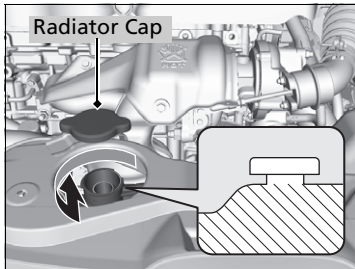
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Radiator



- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
- 2.** Turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to relieve any pressure in the cooling system. Do not push the cap down when turning.
- 3.** Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
- 4.** The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
- 5.** Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

» Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

Continuously variable transmission models

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission (CVT) fluid.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 423

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission (CVT) fluid yourself.

Manual transmission models

Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF)

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change manual transmission fluid.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 423

Do not attempt to check or change the manual transmission fluid yourself.

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HCF-2 transmission fluid with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Manual Transmission Fluid

If Honda MTF is not available, you may use the API certificated SAE 0 W-20 or 5 W-20 viscosity motor oil as a temporary measure.

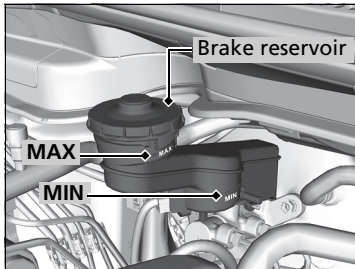
Replace with MTF as soon as possible. Motor oil does not contain the proper additives for the transmission and continued use can cause decreased shifting performance and lead to transmission damage.

Brake/Clutch * Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

Use the same fluid for both the brakes and clutch.

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reservoir tank.

Manual transmission models

The brake fluid reserve tank is also used for your vehicle's clutch fluid. As long as you keep the brake fluid level as instructed above, there is no need for checking the clutch fluid level.

» Brake/Clutch * Fluid

NOTICE

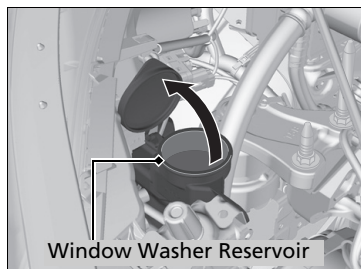
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

* Not available on all models

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Except South African models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 40,000 km, or 2 years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

South African models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 45,000 km, or three years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

All models

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

►► Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

Replacing Light Bulbs

Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Models with halogen type headlights

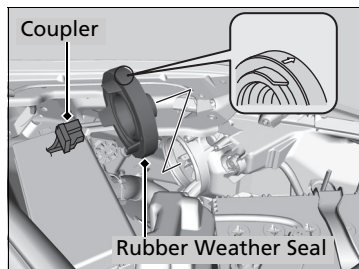
High/Low beam headlight: 60/55 W (H4*, H4 LL*, H4LL/HB2LL*
for halogen bulb type)

Models with LED type headlights

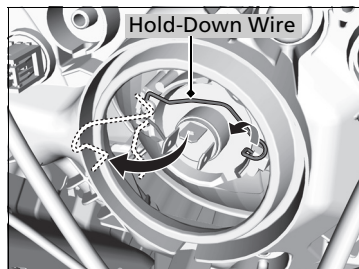
High beam headlight: LED type

Low beam headlight: LED type

High/Low Beam Headlight*



1. Remove the coupler.
2. Remove the rubber weather seal.



3. Remove the hold-down wire, then remove the bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.

Headlight Bulbs

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

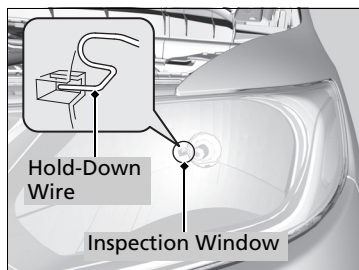
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

Models with LED type headlights

High beam and low beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

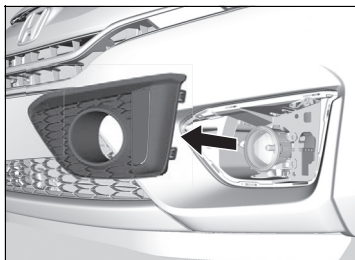
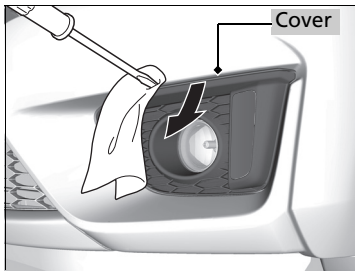
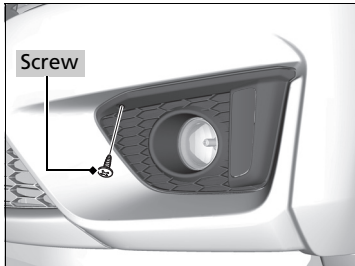


5. Reinstall the hold-down wire. Hook the end of the wire on the knob in the slot.
 - You can see if the hold-down wire is in the right place from the inspection window.
6. Reinstall the rubber weather seal.
7. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Fog Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Fog Light: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)



Models with halogen type headlights

1. Remove the screw using a Phillips-head screwdriver.
2. Pry on the edge between the bumper and the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
 - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

►► Fog Light Bulbs*

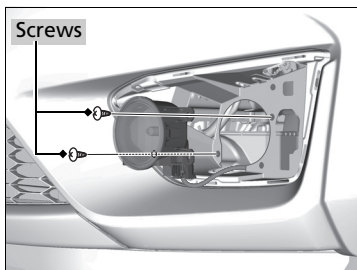
NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

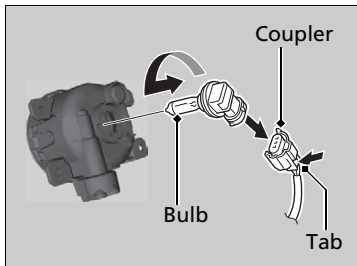
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

* Not available on all models

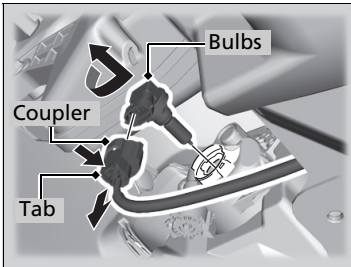
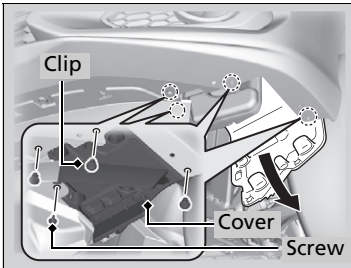
Continued



3. Remove the screws using a Phillips-head screwdriver.
4. Remove the fog light assembly.



5. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
6. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
7. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it to the right.
8. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.



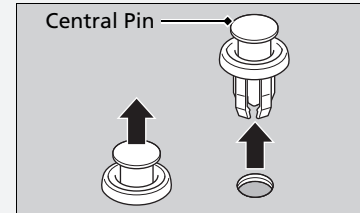
Models with LED type headlights

1. Remove the screws using a Phillips-head screwdriver and remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver.
2. Pull the under part of the inner fender cover down.
3. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
4. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
5. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it to the right.
6. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

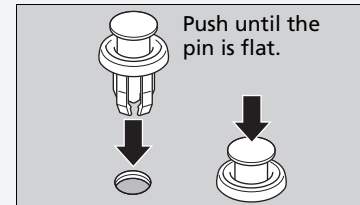
►► Fog Light Bulbs*

Holding clip

Insert the clip with the central pin raised, and push until it is flat.



Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the central pin to remove the clip.

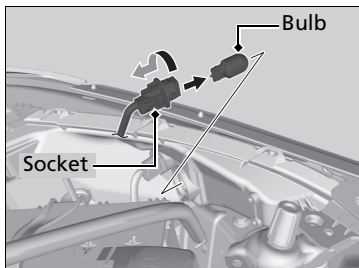


* Not available on all models

Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb.
3. Insert a new bulb.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Light Bulbs

Fender type

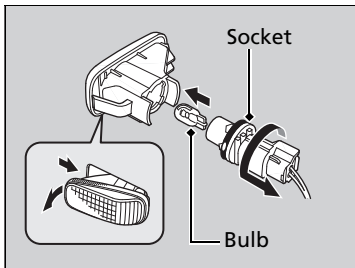
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Except South African models

Side Turn Signal Light: 5 W (Amber)

South African models

Side Turn Signal Light: 5 W



1. Push the front of the side turn signal assembly towards the rear of the vehicle until it pops out of the body.
2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Door mirror type

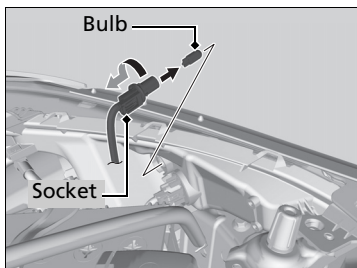
Door mirror side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Models with bulb type position lights

Position Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Position Light: 5 W



1. Turn the socket to the left and remove it, then remove the old bulb.
2. Insert a new bulb.

Models with LED type Position Lights/Daytime Running Lights

Position Lights/Daytime Running Lights

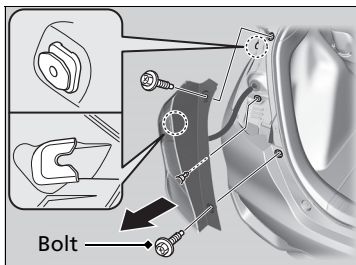
Position Lights/Daytime Running Lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Back-Up Light and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

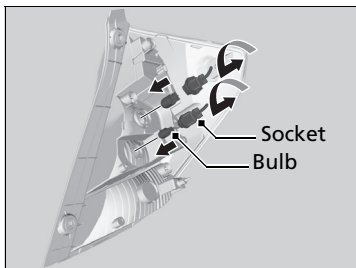
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Back-Up Light: 16 W

Rear Turn Signal Light: 21W (Amber)



1. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the bolts.
2. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



3. Turn the socket to the left and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.
5. Slide the light assembly onto the guide on the body.

Brake/Taillights

Brake/taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

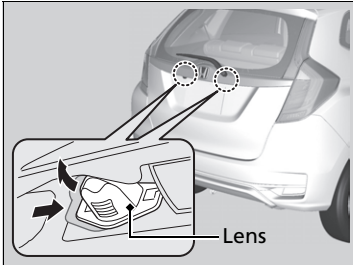
Daytime Running Lights*

Daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

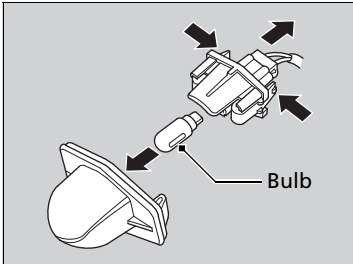
Rear Licence Plate Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Rear Licence Plate Light: 5 W



1. Push the lens on the left and pull out the lens and the socket attached to it.



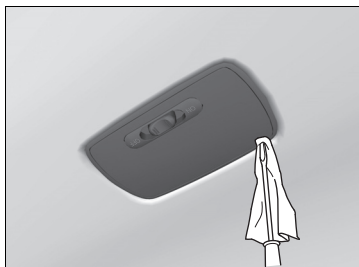
2. Remove the licence plate light assembly by squeezing the tabs on both sides of the socket.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Other Light Bulbs

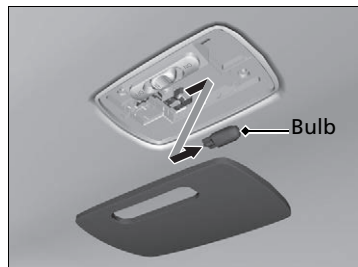
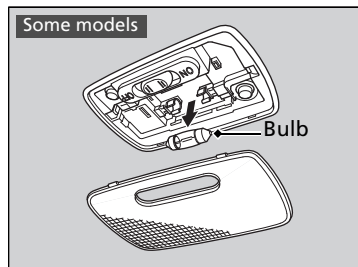
■ Ceiling Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Ceiling Light: 8 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

■ Map Light Bulbs*

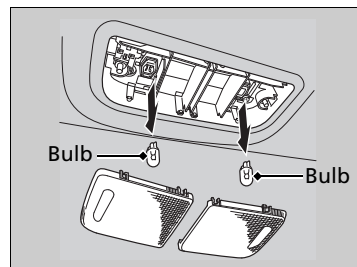
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Map Light: 8 W

Models without colour audio system

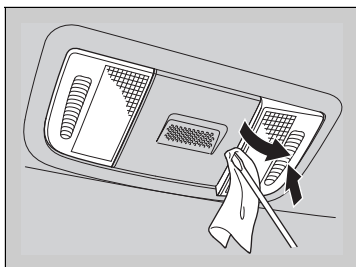


1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

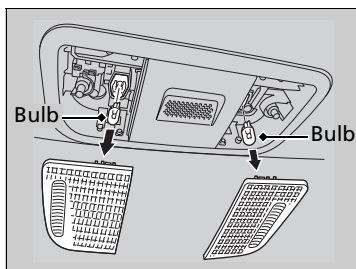


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Models with colour audio system



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

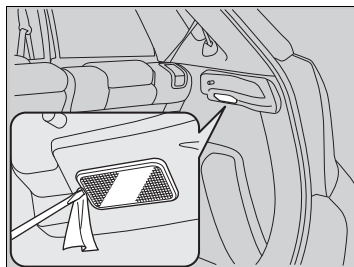


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

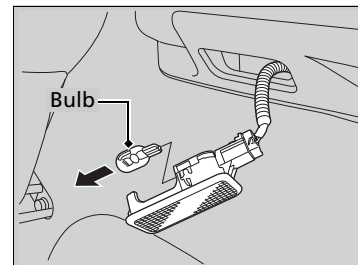
Luggage Area Light Bulb *

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Luggage Area Light: 5 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



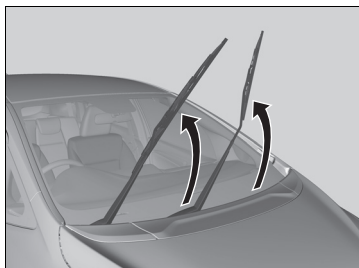
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

* Not available on all models

Checking Wiper Blades

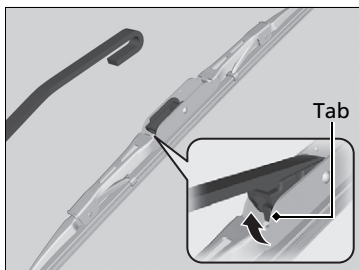
If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



Except South African models with keyless access system

1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

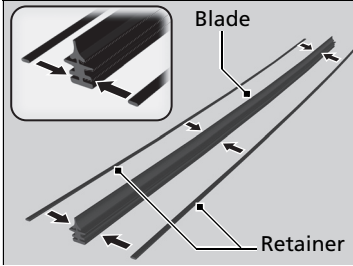
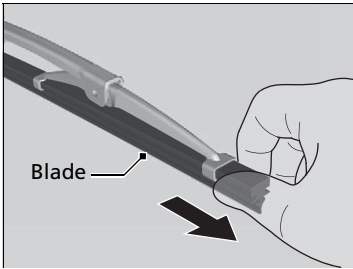


2. Push the lock tab in, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.



3. Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.

4. Remove the retainers from the wiper blade that has been removed, and mount to a new wiper blade.

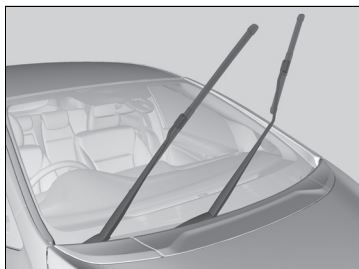
► Correctly align the wiper blade protrusion and the retainer grooves.

5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.

► The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.

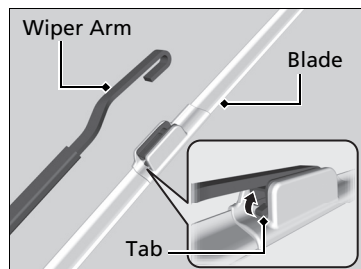
6. Slide the wiper blade onto the wiper arm securely.

7. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

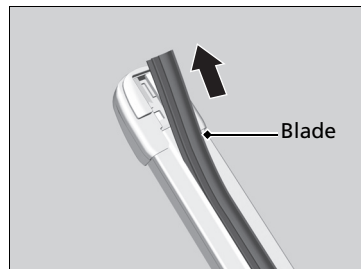


South African models with keyless access system

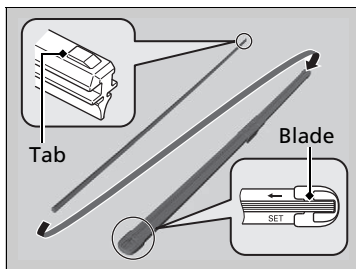
1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.



2. Press and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

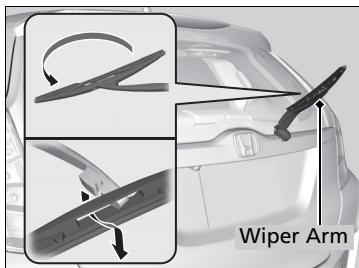


3. Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.

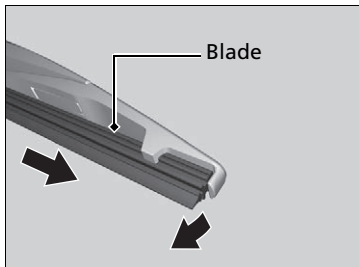


4. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.
 - The tab on the blade should fit in the indent of the top of the wiper holder.
5. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm securely.
6. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber*



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.

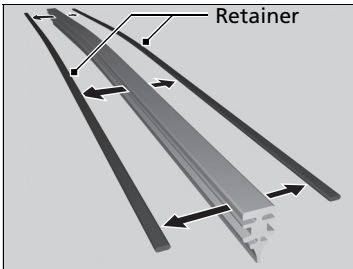


3. Slide the wiper blade out from the end with the indent.

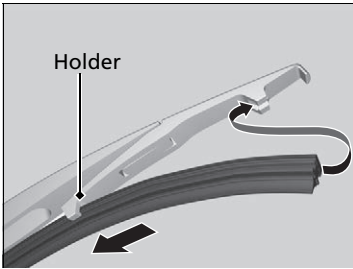
►► Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber*

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.



4. Remove the retainers from the wiper blade that has been removed, and mount to a new rubber blade.



5. Slide the wiper blade onto the holder.
 - Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 kgf/cm², 1-2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems. Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

➤ **Wear Indicators** P. 467

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

ⓘ Checking Tyres

⚠ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

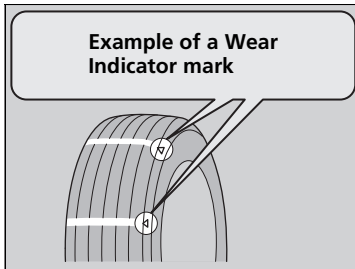
Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 kgf/cm², 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)* system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

► Tyre and Wheel Replacement

WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

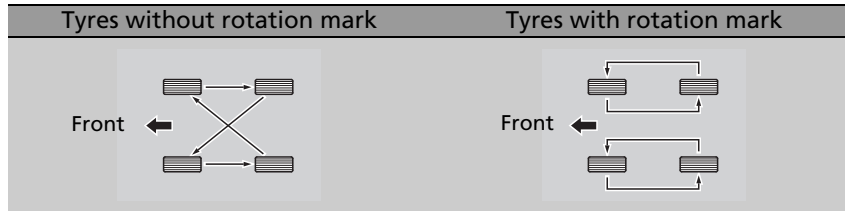
Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Your vehicle's tyre rotation pattern

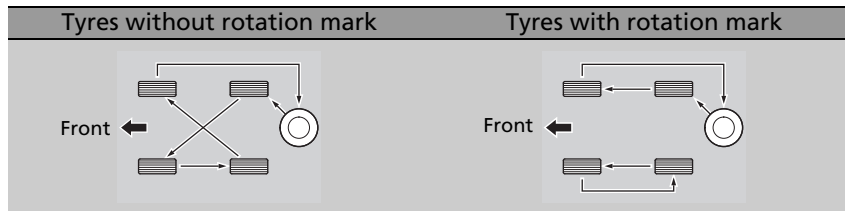
Models with a compact/temporary spare tyre

Rotate the tyres as shown here.



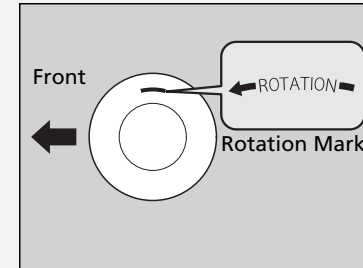
Models with a full-size spare tyre

When the spare tyre is also rotated, rotate the tyres as shown here.



⚠ Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
175/70 R14	—
175/65 R15	RUD-matic classic 4716674*2
185/55 R16	RUD-matic classic 48479

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

*2: Except Indian models

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

► Snow Traction Devices

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

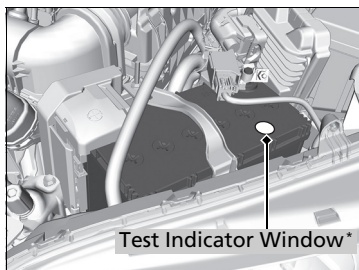
Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

Checking the Battery



On the battery with test indicator

Check the battery condition monthly. Look at the test indicator window and check the terminals for corrosion.

Petrol models with multi-information display

The battery condition is monitored by the sensor on the negative terminal. If there is a problem with the sensor, the warning message on multi-information display will let you know. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

On the battery without the test indicator

Check the battery condition monthly. Check the battery condition by looking at the fluid level. The upper and lower level marks are shown on the battery case. If the fluid level is below the lower mark, contact a dealer. Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

All models

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

➡ **Clock** P. 122

Battery

⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

* Not available on all models

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

» Battery

Models with test indicator window on the battery

The test indicator's colour information is on the battery.

The location of the test indicator window may vary depending on the model.

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

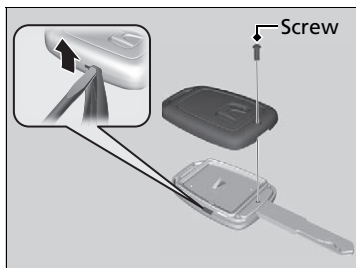
When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

Replacing the Button Battery

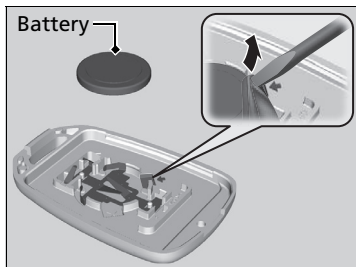
If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

Ignition Keys with Remote Transmitter*



Battery type: CR1620

1. Unscrew the cover with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.
2. Open the remote transmitter.
 - ▶ Wrap the small flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the transmitter.
3. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
4. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



Replacing the Button Battery

⚠ WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

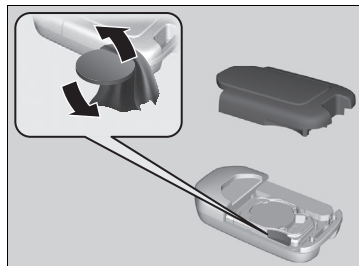
NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

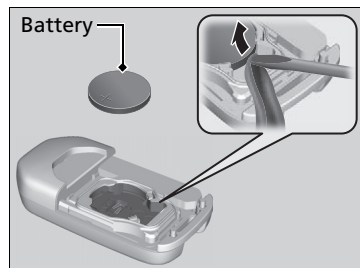
* Not available on all models

■ Retractable Key*



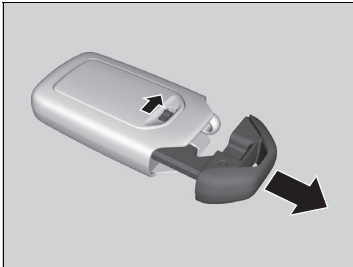
Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
 - Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the retractable key.



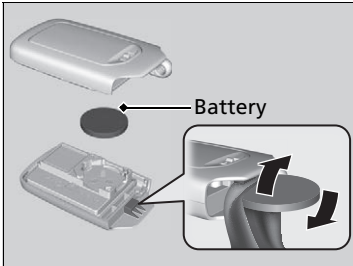
2. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

■ Keyless Remote *



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
 ► Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



* Not available on all models

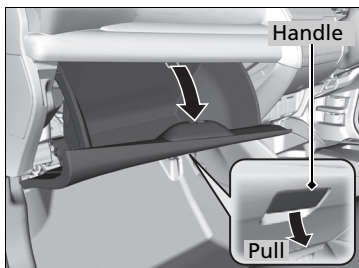
Dust and Pollen Filter

When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

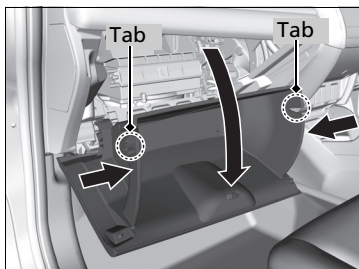
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 423

How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



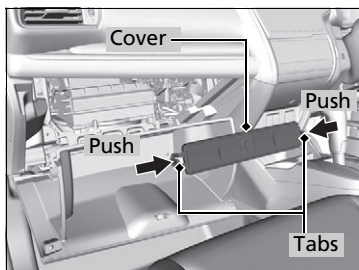
2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.

3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

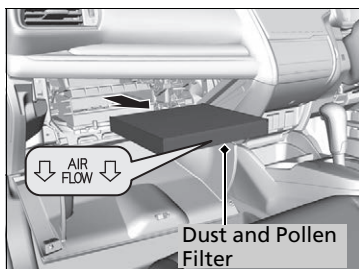
» Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.



5. Remove the filter from the case.
6. Install a new filter in the case.
 - Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

▣ Dust and Pollen Filter

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

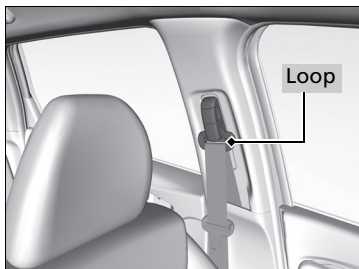
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.

Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window.

Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

■ Floor Mats*

The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

▣ Floor Mats*

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

▣ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discoloration or stains.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.

Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

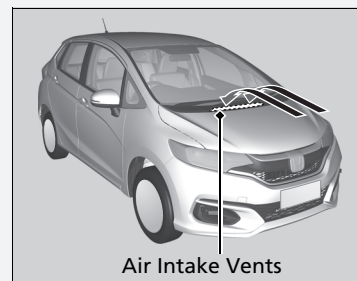
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Remove the audio antenna.
 - **Audio Antenna** P. 206
- Fold in the door mirrors.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

⌘ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels *

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

» Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

» Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

* Not available on all models

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.

 **Fuses** P. 507

- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Accessories and Modifications

WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.



Tools

Types of Tools..... 486

If a Tyre Goes Flat

Changing a Flat Tyre 487

Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine..... 494

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak..... 496

Emergency Engine Stop 497

Jump Starting..... 498

Shift Lever Does Not Move 501

Overheating

How to Handle Overheating..... 502

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On 504

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On 504

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 505

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On 505

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On..... 506

Diesel models

If the PGM-FI Indicator Comes On 506

Fuses

Fuse Locations 507

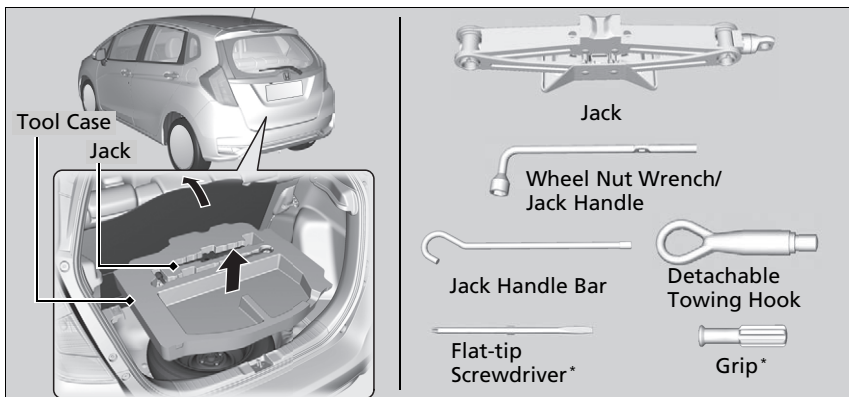
Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 524

Emergency Towing..... 525

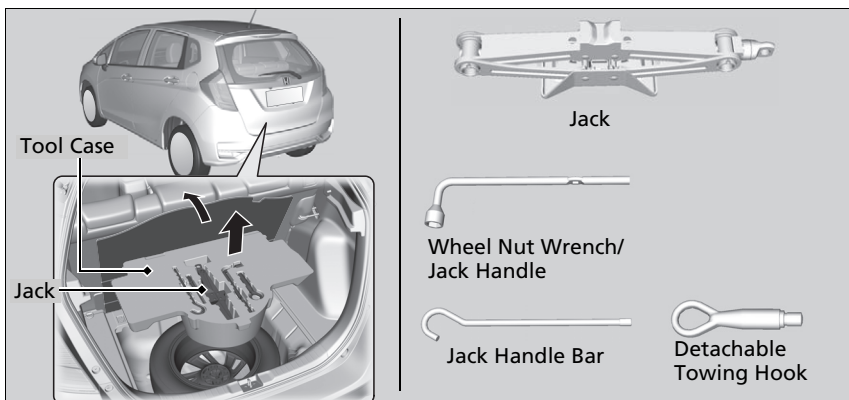
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate..... 528

Types of Tools

Models with a compact spare tyre



Models with a full-size/temporary spare tyre



Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre*/temporary spare tyre*/full-size spare tyre*. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, non-slippery surface, and apply the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **P**.

Manual transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **R**.

All models

3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***1.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Changing a Flat Tyre

Follow compact/temporary spare* precautions:

Compact spare tyre

Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure. Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm², 60 psi)

Temporary spare tyre

Check the air pressure of the temporary spare tyre every time you check the other full-size tyres. It should be inflated to the recommended air pressure on the label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

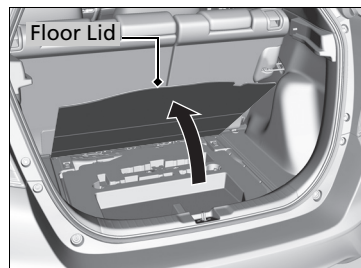
When driving with the compact/temporary spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h (120 km/h on Indian models). Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

The compact/temporary spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact/temporary spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

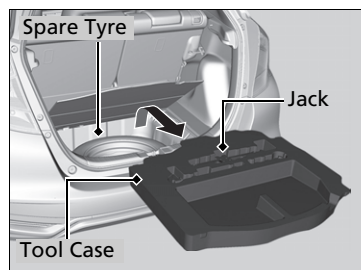
Do not mount tyre chains on a compact/temporary spare tyre.

If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact/temporary spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

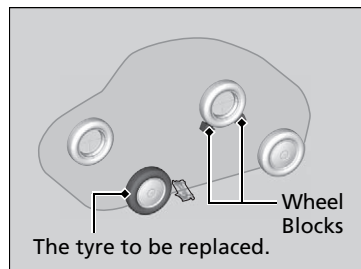
■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Open the luggage area floor lid.



2. Take the tool case out of the luggage area.
3. Take the wheel nut wrench, jack handle bar and jack out of the tool case.
4. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.



5. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

✎ Changing a Flat Tyre

A compact/temporary spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

Do not use more than one compact/temporary spare tyre at the same time.

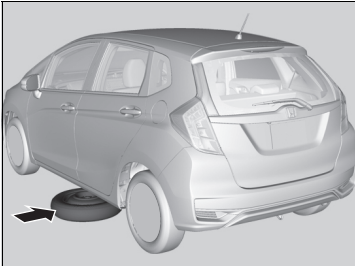
The compact/temporary spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact/temporary spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

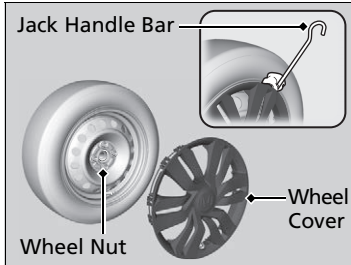
The shape of the tool case varies by model.

NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.



6. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



Models with wheel cover

7. Put the flat tip of the jack handle bar into the edge of the wheel cover. Carefully pry the edge and remove the cover.
 - Wrap a cloth around the flat tip of the jack handle bar to prevent scratches on the cover.

All models

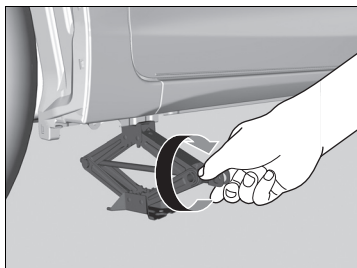
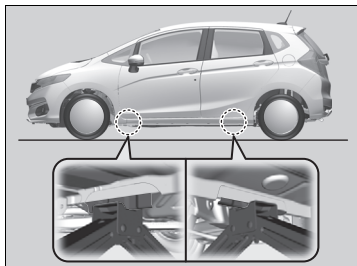
8. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.



Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre

Be careful not to hurt yourself when removing or storing the spare tyre.

How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
 - Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

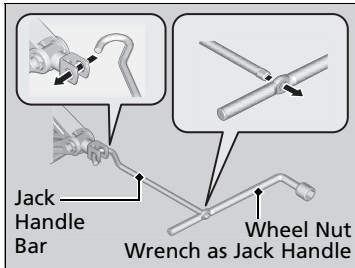
WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

For some countries

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.

1.	2.	3.

1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

How to Set Up the Jack

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

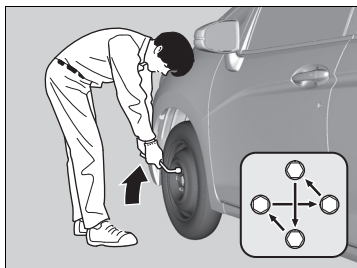
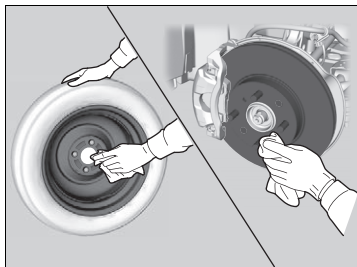
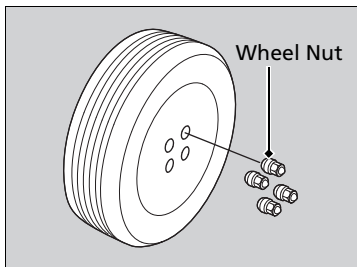
Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants. Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

■ Replacing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.
2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the spare tyre.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

Wheel nut torque:

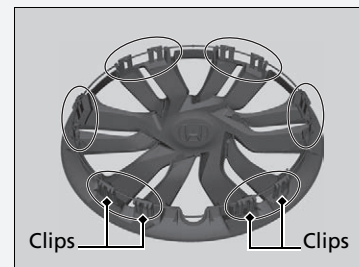
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

►► Replacing the Flat Tyre

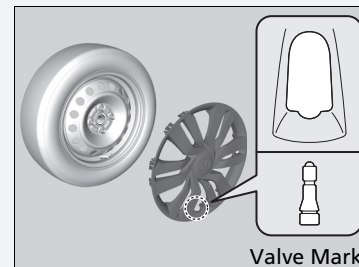
Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

Models with wheel cover

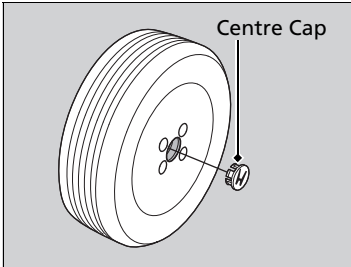
Make sure the wire support ring is hooked into the clips around the edge of the wheel cover.



Align the valve mark on the wheel cover to the tyre valve on the wheel, then install the wheel cover.

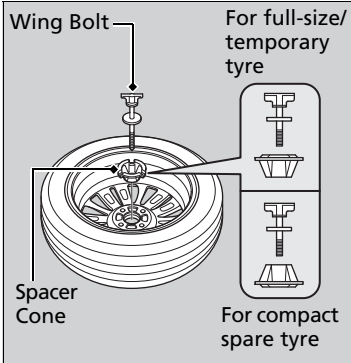


Storing the Flat Tyre



Models with aluminium wheels

1. Remove the centre cap.



Models with a compact spare tyre

2. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt.

All models

3. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
4. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.
5. Securely store the wheel nut wrench, jack handle bar and jack back in the tool case.
6. Store the case in the luggage area under the luggage floor lid.

Storing the Flat Tyre

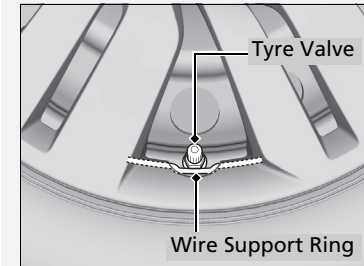
⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Models with wheel cover

Make sure the wire support ring is on the outer side of the tyre valve as shown.



Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

»Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

➤ **Jump Starting** P. 498

Models with keyless access system

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for more than 15 seconds.

Starter condition

Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.

The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.

Checklist

Check the brightness of the interior lights.

Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.

- If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all
➤ **Battery** P. 471
- If the interior lights come on normally
➤ **Fuses** P. 507

Models with keyless access system

- Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.
➤ **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 153

Starter condition	Checklist
The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	Review the engine start procedure. Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➤ Starting the Engine P. 379, 382
	Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. ➤ Immobilizer System P. 148
	Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➤ Fuel Gauge P. 108, 112
	Check the fuse. Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➤ Inspecting and Changing Fuses P. 524
	If the problem continues: ➤ Emergency Towing P. 525
	Diesel models Check the malfunction indicator lamp comes on, or the PGM-FI indicator comes on in the instrument panel under the following circumstances: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The fuel tank has been run dry. ➤ Malfunction Indicator Lamp P. 85 ➤ PGM-FI Indicator* P. 93
	Diesel models Have the fuel filter checked to drain off water. The water in fuel indicator comes on in the instrument panel. ➤ PGM-FI Indicator* P. 93

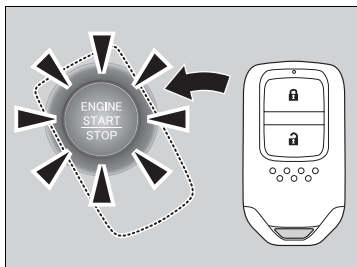
* Not available on all models

Models with keyless access system

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

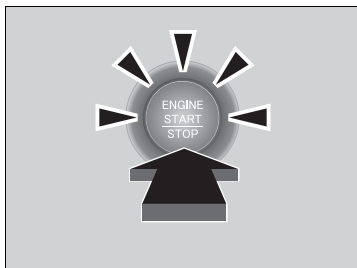
If the beeper sounds, the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start.

Start the engine as follows.



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.

► The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and the clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.

► If you do not depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Models with keyless access system

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button about for two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

Continuously variable transmission models

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped. To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, move the shift lever to **[P]** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

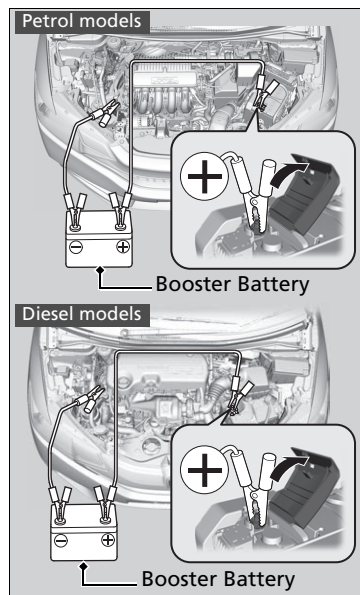
Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.

If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



1. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery \oplus terminal.
 - Remove the cover from the under-bonnet fuse box.
Engine Compartment Fuse Box
P. 512
2. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery \oplus terminal.
 - Use a 12 volt booster battery only.
 - When using the automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
3. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery \ominus terminal.

Jump Starting

⚠ WARNING

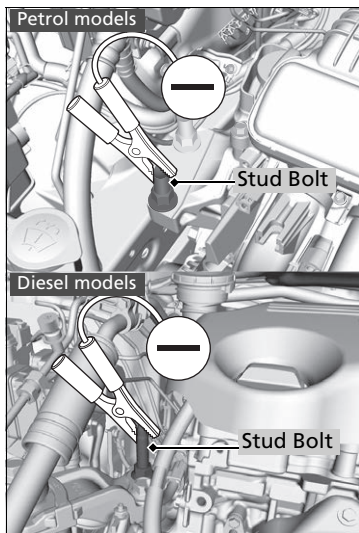
A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



4. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
5. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
6. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

Jump Starting

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's stud bolt.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

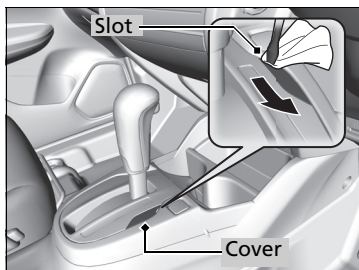
Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Continuously variable transmission models

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.

Models without keyless access system

2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.

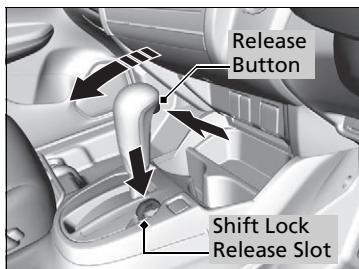
Models with shift lock release slot cover

3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.

All models

4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key in, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into **N**.

► The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.



How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The high temperature indicator comes on or the engine suddenly loses power.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
 - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.
 - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.

» How to Handle Overheating

WARNING

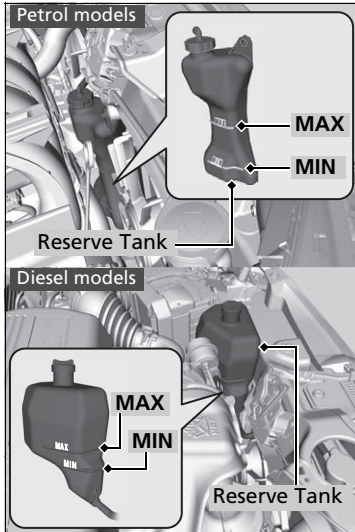
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the high temperature indicator on may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the high temperature indicator.

If the high temperature indicator is off, resume driving. If it stays on, contact a dealer for repairs.

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the high temperature indicator goes off.

► If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.

2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.

► If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

► If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

►► How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

➤ **Oil Check** P. 436

3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.

- ▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.
- ▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the heating and cooling system*/climate control system*, rear demister, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

➤ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

➤ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on if there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

Diesel models

- Comes on when air may have entered the fuel system.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

► If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h (31 mph) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator* come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

* Not available on all models

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.

If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Diesel models

If the PGM-FI Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on while the engine is running

There is a problem with the engine control system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on repeatedly

Avoid full-throttle acceleration and high speed driving. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

►► If the PGM-FI Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Continuously driving with this indicator on can damage the emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]*¹ and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

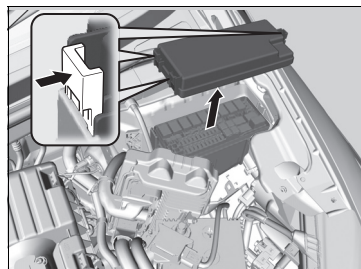
Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Fuse Box A

Models with fuse location marks

Located in the back side of the engine compartment on the left side. Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Headlight Low Beam Main	20 A
2		–	(30 A)
3		Hazard	10 A
4		DBW	15 A
5		Wiper	(30 A)
6		Stop	10 A
7		IGP	15 A
8		IG Coil	15 A
9		–	(10 A)
10		–	(20 A)
11	–	–	–
12		Main Fan	30 A
13		Starter SW*	(30 A)
14		MG Clutch	7.5 A
15		–	(7.5 A)
16	–	–	–
17* ²		Daytime Running Light*	(7.5 A)
17* ³	–	–	–
18		Horn	10 A
19		Fog Light*	(15 A)
20	–	–	–

		Circuit Protected	Amps
21		Back Up Main	15 A
22		Interior Light	7.5 A
23		Sub Fan	(30 A)
24	–	–	–
25		Starter	(7.5 A)
26		ST MG DIODE	(7.5 A)
27	–	–	–
28	–	–	–
29		Back Up	(10 A)
30		IGP LAF	(10 A)
31		IGPS	(7.5 A)
32		Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
33		Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A

*2: Models with Daytime Running Light

*3: Models without Daytime Running Light

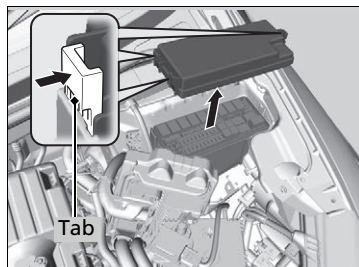
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

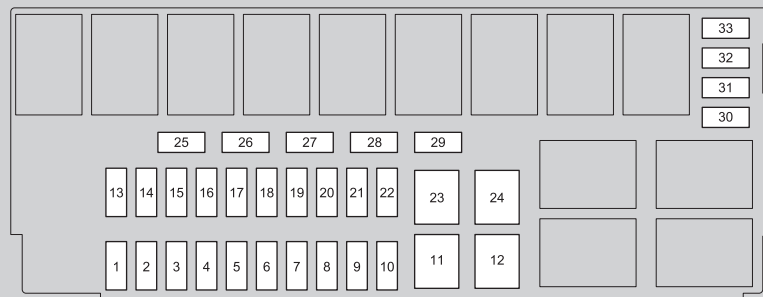
Models without fuse location marks

Located in the back side of the engine compartment on the left side. Push the tabs to open the box.

Locate the fuse in question by the following image and table.



Engine Compartment Fuse Box



Front

Petrol models
■ Circuit protected and fuse rating
Except models with keyless access system

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Headlight Low Beam Main	20 A
2	–	–
3	Hazard	10 A
4	DBW	(15 A)
5	–	–
6	Stop	10 A
7	IGP	15 A
8	IG Coil	15 A
9	–	–
10	–	–
11	–	–
12	Main Fan	30 A
13	–	–
14	MG Clutch	7.5 A
15	–	–
16	–	–
17	IGP2	10 A
18	Horn	10 A
19	Fog Lights*	15 A
20	–	–

	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	Back Up Main	15 A
22	Interior Lights	7.5 A
23	Sub Fan	30 A
24	–	–
25	–	–
26	ST MG	7.5 A
27	–	–
28	–	–
29	Back Up	10 A
30	IGP LAF	(10 A)
31	IGPS	7.5 A
32	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
33	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A

* Not available on all models

Models with keyless access system

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Headlight Low Beam Main	20 A
2	–	–
3	Hazard	10 A
4	DBW	15 A
5	Wiper	30 A
6	Stop	10 A
7	IGP	15 A
8	IG Coil	15 A
9	–	–
10	–	–
11	–	–
12	Main Fan	30 A
13	ST MG SW	30 A
14	MG Clutch	7.5 A
15	–	–
16	–	–
17	–	–
18	Horn	10 A
19	Fog Lights	15 A
20	–	–

	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	Back Up Main	15 A
22	Interior Lights	7.5 A
23	Sub Fan	30 A
24	–	–
25	Starter	7.5 A
26	–	–
27	–	–
28	–	–
29	Back Up	10 A
30	IGP LAF	10 A
31	IGPS	7.5 A
32	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
33	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A

Diesel models

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Headlight Low Beam Main	20 A
2	–	–
3	Hazard	10 A
4	–	–
5* ¹	Wiper	30 A
5* ²	–	–
6	Stop	10 A
7	IGP	20 A
8	IGP2	15 A
9	–	–
10	–	–
11	–	–
12	Main Fan	30 A
13* ¹	ST MG SW	30 A
13* ²	–	–
14	MG Clutch	7.5 A
15	–	–
16	–	–
17	–	–
18	Horn	10 A
19	Fog Lights*	(15 A)
20	Back Up FI-ECU	7.5 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	Back Up Main	15 A
22	Interior Lights	7.5 A
23	Sub Fan	30 A
24	–	–
25* ¹	Starter	7.5A
25* ²	–	–
26* ¹	–	–
26* ²	ST MG	7.5 A
27	IGP LAF	7.5 A
28	–	–
29	Back Up	10 A
30	–	–
31	–	–
32	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
33	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A

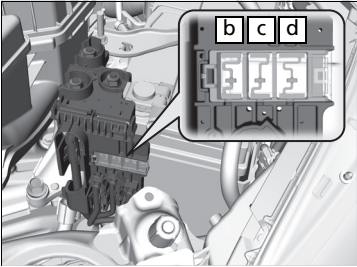
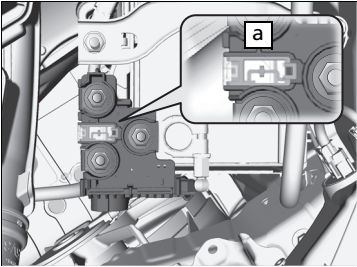
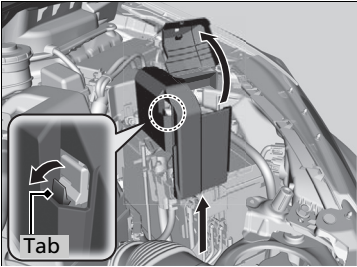
*1: Models with keyless access system

*2: Except models with keyless access system

* Not available on all models

■ Fuse Box B

Petrol models

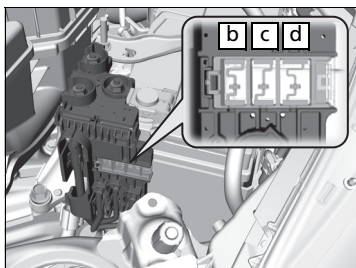
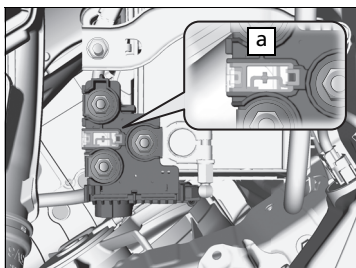
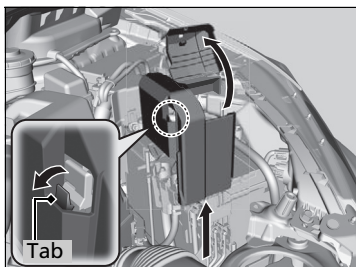


Pull up the cover on the ⊕ terminal, then remove it while pulling out the tab as shown.
Replacement of engine compartment fuses should be done by a dealer.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
a		Battery Main	100 A
b		RB Main 1	70 A
c		RB Main 2	80 A
d		CAP Main	70 A

Diesel models



Pull up the cover on the ⊕ terminal, then remove it while pulling out the tab as shown.

Locate the fuse in question by the following image and table.

Replacement of engine compartment fuses should be done by a dealer.

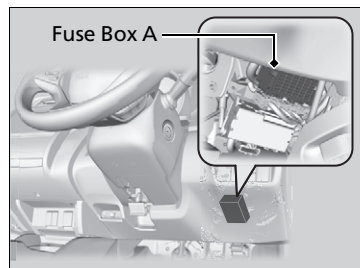
■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
a	Battery Main	100 A
b	RB Main 1	70 A
c	RB Main 2	80 A
d	Grow	60 A

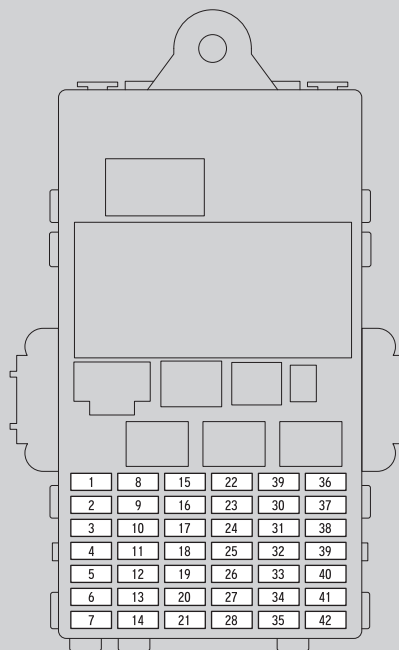
South African models

■ Interior Fuse Box

■ Fuse Box A



Located behind the instrument panel.
Locate the fuse in question by the following
image and table.



■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

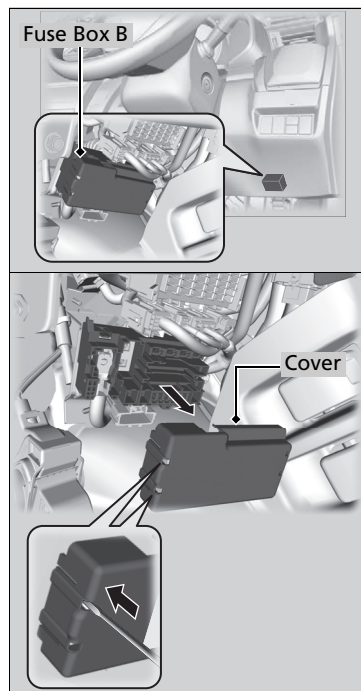
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Door Lock	20 A
2	–	–
3	Keyless Access System*	10 A
4	Left Side Door Unlock	15 A
5	Right Side Door Unlock	15 A
6	Driver Door Unlock	10 A
7	Driver Door Lock	10 A
8	Driver's Power Window	20 A
9	Passenger's Power Window	20 A
10	Rear Left Power Window	20 A
11	Rear Right Power Window	20 A
12	Left Side Door Lock	15 A
13	Right Side Door Lock	15 A
14	–	–
15	Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
16	STS*	7.5 A
17	–	–
18	–	–
19	–	–
20	–	–

	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	–	–
22	Washer	15 A
23	Rear Wiper Main*	10 A
24	A/C	7.5 A
25	Daytime Running Light*	7.5 A
26	Starter*	7.5 A
27	ABS/VSA	7.5 A
28	SRS	10 A
29	Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
30	ACG	10 A
31	Power Window	10 A
32	Fuel Pump	15 A
33	–	–
34	Meter	7.5 A
35	Mission SOL*	7.5 A
36	Front ACC Socket	20 A
37	ACC	7.5 A
38	ACC Key Lock*	7.5 A
39	Option	10 A
40	Rear Wiper*	10 A

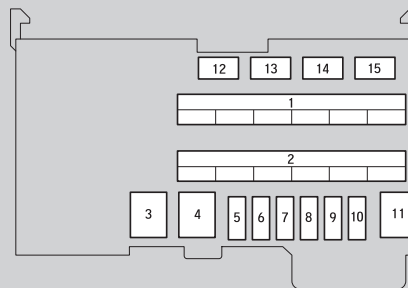
	Circuit Protected	Amps
41	–	–
42	–	–

* Not available on all models

■ Fuse Box B



Remove the cover by putting the flat-tip screwdriver into the side slot as shown. Locate the fuse in question by the following image and table.



Models without the keyless access system







■ Circuit protected and fuse rating












	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	EPS	60 A
	IG Main	50 A
	Fuse Box Main 2	50 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	Fuse Box Main 1	30 A
	Fuse Box Main 3	40 A
2	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–

	Circuit Protected	Amps
3	Heater	30 A
4	–	–
5	ABS/VSA FSR	30 A
6	–	–
7	–	–
8	–	–
9	Small Light	10 A
10	–	–
11	Rear Demister	30 A
12	–	–
13	–	–
14	A/C Blower SW	7.5 A
15	IG1 Main, Wiper	30 A

Models with the keyless access system

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

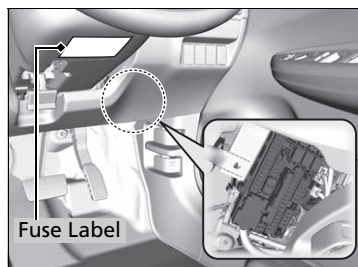
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	 EPS	70 A
	 IG Main	30 A
	 Fuse Box Main 2	50 A
	 ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	 Fuse Box Main 1	30 A
	 –	40 A
2	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–

	Circuit Protected	Amps
3	 Heater	30 A
4	 IG Main 2	30 A
5	 ABS/VSA FSR	30 A
6	 –	(10 A)
7	 –	(7.5 A)
8	 –	(7.5 A)
9	 Small Light	10 A
10	 Centre Accessory Socket*	(20 A)
11	 Rear Demister	30 A
12	–	–
13	 –	(10 A)
14	 –	(7.5 A)
15	–	–

Except South African models

Interior Fuse Box

Models with interior fuse box label



Located behind the instrument panel.
Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating












		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	DR	Driver's Power Window	(20 A)
2		Headlight High Main	(20 A)
3		ABS/VSA* FSR	(30 A)
4* ¹		Rear Wiper	(10 A)
4* ²		—	(10 A)
5		Small Light	(10 A)
6		Door Lock	(20 A)
7	—	—	—
8	—	—	—
9		—	(20 A)
10		Washer	(15 A)
11* ¹		Power Window DR and AS Auto	(20 A)
11* ²		—	(20 A)
12		HAC OP	(20 A)
13		Centre Accessory Socket*	(20 A)
14		—	(10 A)
15* ¹		Seat Heater*	(20 A)
15* ²		—	(20 A)
16* ¹		IG Main	(30 A)
16* ²	—	—	—
17	—	—	—
18	—	—	—
19* ¹		Keyless Access System*	(10 A)
19* ²	—	—	—
















		Circuit Protected	Amps
20	—	—	—
21	—	—	—
22		ABS/VSA* MTR	(40 A)
23		Heater Motor	(30 A)
24		Power Window Main	(40 A)
25* ¹		Ignition	(30 A)
25* ²		Ignition	(50 A)
26		Rear Demister	(30 A)
27		Electric Power Steering (EPS)	(60 A)
28		Front Wiper (Low)	(7.5 A)
29	—	—	—
30		IG2 A/C	(7.5 A)

*1: Models with keyless access system

*2: Models without keyless access system

* Not available on all models

		Circuit Protected	Amps
31 ^{*1}		Daytime Running Light*	(7.5 A)
31 ^{*2}		—	(7.5 A)
32		Left Headlight High Beam	(10 A)
33		Right Headlight High Beam	(10 A)
34		Right Side Door Lock	(15 A)
35		Left Side Door Lock	(15 A)
36		Right Side Door Unlock	(15 A)
37		Left Side Door Unlock	(15 A)
38		ACC	(7.5 A)
39		Accessory Power Socket	(20 A)
40		Rear Left Power Window	(20 A)

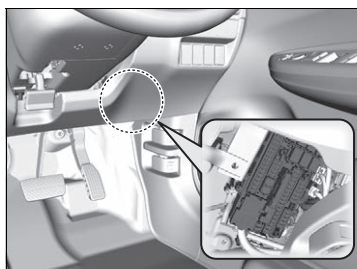
		Circuit Protected	Amps
41		Rear Right Power Window	(20 A)
42		Front Passenger's Power Window	(20 A)
43 ^{*1}	—	—	—
43 ^{*2}		ACC Main	(7.5 A)
44		Blower	(7.5 A)
45		MISS SOL *	(7.5 A)
46		Meter	(7.5 A)
47		Rear Wiper*	(10 A)
48		SRS	(10 A)
49	—	—	—
50 ^{*1}	—	—	—
50 ^{*2}		Front Wiper	(30 A)
51 ^{*1}		IG1 Starter	(7.5 A)
51 ^{*2}		—	(7.5 A)
52		IG1 Option	(10 A)
53		ABS/VSA *	(7.5 A)
54		ACG	(10 A)
55		Fuel Pump	(15 A)

*1 : Models with keyless access system

*2 : Models without keyless access system

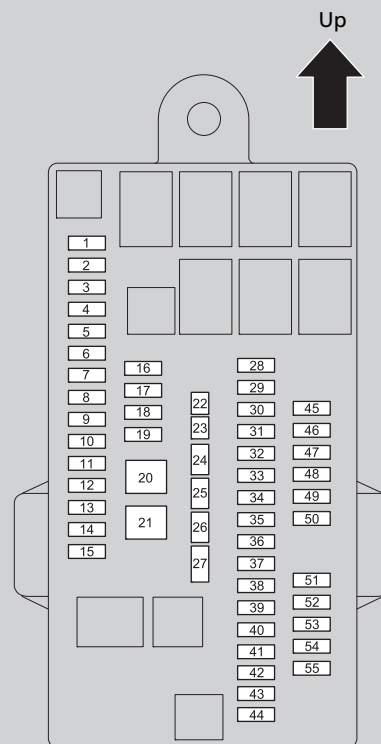
Models without interior fuse box label

Located behind the instrument panel.



Locate the fuse in question by the following image and table.

Interior Fuse Box



Petrol models

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Driver's Power Window	(20 A)
2	Headlight High Main	(20 A)
3	ABS FSR	(30 A)
4 ^{*1}	Rear Wiper	(10 A)
4 ^{*2}	–	–
5	Small Light	(10 A)
6	Door Lock	(20 A)
7	–	–
8	–	–
9	–	–
10	Washer	(15 A)
11	–	–
12	HAC OP	(20 A)
13	–	–
14	–	–
15	–	–
16 ^{*1}	IG Main2	(30 A)
16 ^{*2}	–	–
17	–	–
18	–	–
19 ^{*1}	Keyless Access System	(10 A)
19 ^{*2}	–	–
20	–	–

	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	–	–
22	ABS MTR	(40 A)
23	Heater Motor	(30 A)
24	Power Window Main	(40 A)
25 ^{*1}	Ignition Main	(30 A)
25 ^{*2}	Ignition Main	(50 A)
26	Rear Demister	(30 A)
27	Electric Power Steering (EPS)	(60 A)
28	Front Wiper (Low)	(7.5 A)
29	–	–
30	IG2 AC	(7.5 A)
31	–	–
32	Left Headlight High Beam	(10 A)
33	Right Headlight High Beam	(10 A)
34	Right Side Door Lock	(15 A)
35	Left Side Door Lock	(15 A)
36	Right Side Door Unlock	(15 A)
37	Left Side Door Unlock	(15 A)
38	ACC	(7.5 A)
39	Accessory Power Socket	(20 A)
40	Rear Left Power Window	(20 A)

	Circuit Protected	Amps
41	Rear Right Power Window	(20 A)
42	Front Passenger's Power Window	(20 A)
43	–	–
44	–	–
45 ^{*1}	MISS SOL *	(7.5 A)
45 ^{*2}	–	–
46	Meter	(7.5 A)
47	Rear Wiper	(10 A)
48	SRS	(10 A)
49	–	–
50 ^{*1}	–	–
50 ^{*2}	Front Wiper	(30 A)
51 ^{*1}	IG1 Starter	(7.5 A)
51 ^{*2}	–	–
52	–	–
53	ABS	(7.5 A)
54	ACG	(10 A)
55	Fuel Pump	(15 A)

*1 : Models with keyless access system

*2 : Models without keyless access system

Diesel models

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Driver's Power Window	(20 A)
2	Headlight High Main	(20 A)
3	ABS FSR	(30 A)
4* ¹	Rear Wiper	(10 A)
4* ²	–	–
5	Small Light	(10 A)
6	Door Lock	(20 A)
7	–	–
8	–	–
9	–	–
10	Washer	(15 A)
11	–	–
12	HAC OP	–
13	–	–
14	–	–
15	–	–
16* ¹	IG Main2	(30 A)
16* ²	–	–
17	–	–
18	–	–
19* ¹	Keyless Access System	(10 A)
19* ²	–	–
20	–	–

	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	–	–
22	ABS MTR	(40 A)
23	Heater Motor	(30 A)
24	Power Window Main	(40 A)
25* ¹	Ignition Main	(30 A)
25* ²	Ignition Main	(50 A)
26	Rear Demister	(30 A)
27	Electric Power Steering (EPS)	(60 A)
28	Front Wiper (Low)	(7.5 A)
29* ¹	–	–
29* ²	ST MG Switch	(7.5 A)
30	IG2 AC	(7.5 A)
31* ¹	–	–
31* ²	Blower	(7.5 A)
32	Left Headlight High Beam	(10 A)
33	Right Headlight High Beam	(10 A)
34	Right Side Door Lock	(15 A)
35	Left Side Door Lock	(15 A)
36	Right Side Door Unlock	(15 A)
37	Left Side Door Unlock	(15 A)
38	ACC	(7.5 A)
39	Accessory Power Socket	(20 A)
40	Rear Left Power Window	(20 A)

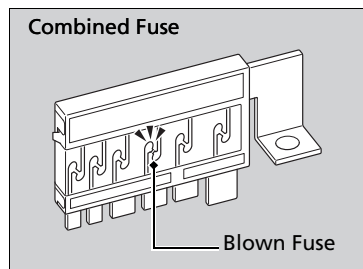
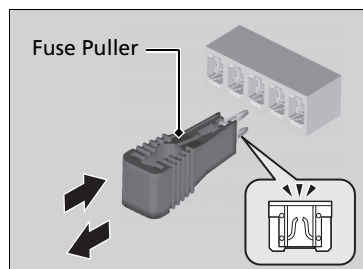
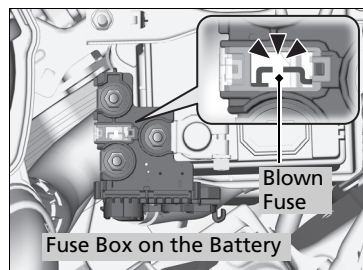
	Circuit Protected	Amps
41	Rear Right Power Window	(20 A)
42	Front Passenger's Power Window	(20 A)
43	–	–
44	–	–
45	–	–
46	Meter	(7.5 A)
47	Rear Wiper*	(10 A)
48	SRS	(10 A)
49	FI ECU	(7.5 A)
50* ¹	–	–
50* ²	Front Wiper	(30 A)
51* ¹	IG1 Starter	(7.5 A)
51* ²	–	–
52	–	–
53	ABS	(7.5 A)
54	ACG	(10 A)
55	Fuel Pump	(15 A)

*1: Models with keyless access system

*2: Models without keyless access system

* Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]*1. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuses on the battery in the engine compartment.
 - If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
 - If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller* and replace it with a new one.
5. Check the large fuse in the vehicle interior.
 - If the fuse is blown, use a phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.

► Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Models with fuse box label

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

► **Fuse Locations** P. 507

Models without fuse box label

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller* on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

»Emergency Towing

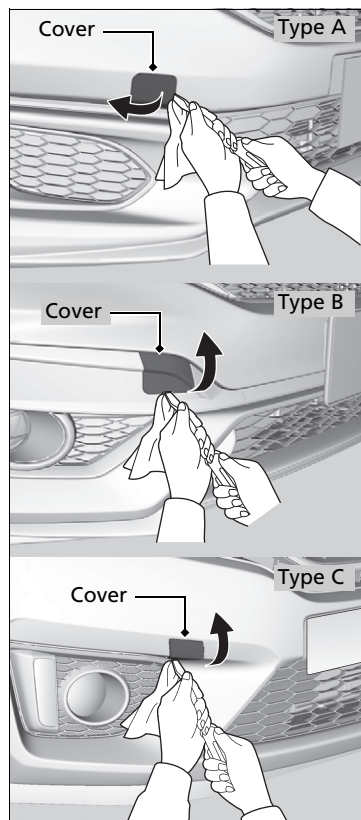
NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

■ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:



1. Check the ground underneath the vehicle around where the transmission housing is for a fluid leak.
► If you find a leak, call a professional towing service and have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
2. Put cloth on the edge of the cover. Carefully pry with a small flat-tip screwdriver or a metal fingernail file to remove the cover.
► The detachable towing hook mounts on the anchor in the front bumper.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

► If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

Towing a vehicle is prohibited by law in some countries. Check and follow the legal requirements of the country you are driving before towing your vehicle.

If you cannot follow the exact procedure, do not tow your vehicle with the front wheels on the ground.

If you cannot turn on the engine, you may experience the following while your vehicle is being towed.

- Braking may become difficult since the brake system's power assist is disabled.
- Steering wheel becomes heavy as the power steering system is disabled.

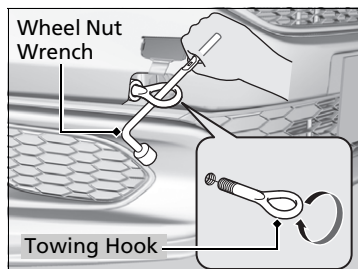
Manual transmission models

- Turning the ignition switch to LOCK [0]^{*1} locks the steering wheel.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 80 km, and keep the speed below 55 km/h.

Going down a long slope heats up the brakes. This may prevent the brakes from working properly. If your vehicle needs to be towed on an incline, call a professional towing service.

Make sure to use the properly-designed and attached towing equipment.



3. Take the towing hook and the wheel nut wrench out of the luggage area.
4. Screw the towing hook into the hole, and tighten it with the wheel nut wrench securely.
5. Hook the towing device to the towing hook.
6. Start the engine.
 - ▶ If it is difficult to turn on the engine, put the ignition switch in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II***1.

Manual transmission models

7. Shift to **N**.

Continuously variable transmission models

7. Depress the brake pedal.
8. Shift to **D** and hold for five seconds, then to **N**.

All models

9. Release the parking brake.

▶▶ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

NOTICE

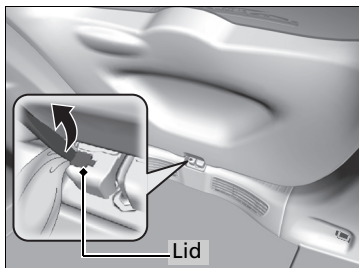
Continuously variable transmission models

If you cannot shift the transmission or turn on the engine, will damage the transmission. Your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

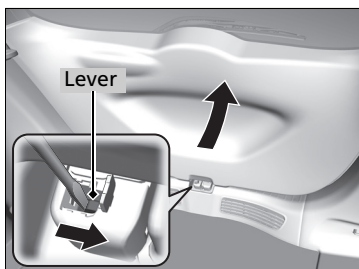
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

What to Do When Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1. Wrap a cloth around the flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the lid as shown in the image, and open the lid.



Models with keyless access system

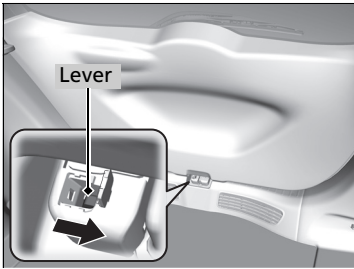
2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while sliding the lever to the right.

When You Cannot Open the Tailgate

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have your vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.



Models without keyless access system

- 2.** Slide the lever to unlock the tailgate.
- 3.** Open the tailgate.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications	532
Identification Numbers	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number	540
Devices that Emit Radio Waves*	542

1.5 L petrol engine models

Vehicle Specifications

Model	Jazz
Curb Weight ^{*1}	1,049 – 1,070 kg ^{*4} 1,091 – 1,102 kg ^{*6}
Curb Weight ^{*2}	1,067 – 1,088 kg ^{*3} 1,069 – 1,090 kg ^{*4} 1,096 – 1,120 kg ^{*6}
Maximum permissible weight ^{*5}	1,490 kg
Maximum permissible weight ^{*6}	See the certification plate on the passenger's doorjamb.
Maximum permissible axle weight ^{*6}	See the certification plate on the passenger's doorjamb.

- *1: Manual transmission models
 *2: Continuously variable transmission models
 *3: Malaysian models
 *4: Indonesian models
 *5: Except South African models
 *6: South African models

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder SOHC ^{*3} Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC ^{*4}	
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.4 mm ^{*3} 73.0 x 89.5 mm ^{*4}	
Displacement	1,497 cm ³ ^{*3} 1,498 cm ³ ^{*4}	
Compression ratio	10.3 : 1 ^{*3} 11.5 : 1 ^{*4}	
Spark Plugs	NGK	FR6F-11K ^{*1}
		DIFR6D13 ^{*2}
	DENSO	DILZKAR7C11S ^{*4}
		DK20PR-D13 ^{*2} DXE22HCR11S ^{*4}

- *1: Indonesian models
 *2: Except Indonesian models and South African models with keyless access system
 *3: Except South African models with keyless access system
 *4: South African models with keyless access system

Fuel

Fuel:	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number of 91 or higher
Type	
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

Battery

Capacity/Type	27AH(5)/30AH(20) ^{*1}
	28AH(5)/35AH(20) ^{*2}
	32AH(5)/40AH(20) ^{*3}

- *1: Indonesian models
 *2: Except Indonesian models and South African models with keyless access system
 *3: South African models with keyless access system

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.0 L
---------------	-------

Light Bulbs

Headlights (High/Low Beam) ^{*1}	60/55W (H4 [*] , H4 LL [*] , H4LL/HB2LL [*])
Headlights (Low Beam) ^{*2}	LED
Headlights (High Beam) ^{*2}	LED
Fog Lights [*]	35W (H8)
Position Lights ^{*1}	5W
Position Lights/Daytime Running Lights ^{*2}	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Daytime Running Lights [*]	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors) [*]	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Front Fenders) [*]	5W
Brake/Taillights	LED
Tailgate Guide Light [*]	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Licence Plate Lights	5W
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
	Map lights [*] 8W
	Ceiling Light 8W
	Luggage Area Light 5W

- *1: Models with halogen type headlights
 *2: Models with LED type headlights

Brake/Clutch Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid*

Specified	Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid	
Capacity	Change	3.4 L

■ Manual Transmission Fluid*

Specified	Honda MTF	
Capacity	Change	1.4 L ^{*1} 1.5 L ^{*2}

*1: Indonesian and Malaysian models

*2: Except Indonesian and Malaysian models

■ Engine Oil

Recommended ^{*1}	Genuine Honda Motor Oil API service SM or higher grade ACEA A5/B5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30	
	Genuine Honda Motor Oil API service SM or higher grade ACEA A5/B5 HONDA ENG OIL #1.0, Honda Green oil, 0W-20	
Capacity ^{*1}	Change	3.4 L
	Change including filter	3.6 L
Capacity ^{*2}	Change	3.1 L
	Change including filter	3.3 L

*1: Except South African models with keyless access system

*2: South African models with keyless access system

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2	
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water	
Capacity ^{*3}	4.10 L ^{*1}	
	3.98 L ^{*2} (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank)	
Capacity ^{*1*4}	4.57 L ^{*6}	
	3.55 L ^{*7} (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank)	
Capacity ^{*2*4}	4.45 L ^{*6}	
	3.63 L ^{*7} (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank)	
Capacity ^{*5}	3.78 L	
	(change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank)	

*1: Continuously variable transmission models

*2: Manual transmission models

*3: Except South African models

*4: South African models without keyless access system

*5: South African models with keyless access system

*6: When extracting from engine

*7: When extracting from radiator

■ Tyre

Regular	Size ^{*1}	175/65 R15 84T 185/55 R16 83H 185/55 R16 83V*
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Compact Spare*	Size	T135/80D15 99M* T135/80D15 100M*
	Pressure (kPa (kgf/cm ² [psi]))	420 (4.2 [60])
Temporary Spare*	Size ^{*1}	175/65 R15 84T
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Spare* (Full-size tyre)	Size ^{*1}	175/65 R15 84T 185/55 R16 83H
	Pressure	Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Wheel Size	Regular	15 x 5 1/2J ^{*2} 16 x 6J ^{*3}
	Compact Spare*	15 x 4T
	Temporary Spare*	15 x 5 1/2J ^{*2}
	Spare*	15 x 5 1/2J ^{*2}
	(Full-size tyre)	16 x 6J ^{*3}

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

*2: Models with 175/65 R15

*3: Models with 185/55 R16

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Drum ^{*1}
	Disc ^{*2}
Parking	Hand brake

*1: Except South African models with keyless access system

*2: South African models with keyless access system

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	405 - 455 g

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length		3,955 mm ^{*5}
		4,035 mm ^{*6}
		4,051 mm ^{*7}
Width		1,694 mm
Height		1,524 mm
		1,668 mm ^{*7} (at the top of micro antenna)
Wheelbase		2,530 mm
Track ^{*3}	Front	1,492 mm ^{*1}
		1,476 mm ^{*2}
	Rear	1,481 mm ^{*1}
		1,466 mm ^{*2}
Track ^{*4}	Front	1,493 mm ^{*1}
		1,477 mm ^{*2}
	Rear	1,481 mm ^{*1}
		1,465 mm ^{*2}

*1: Models with 175/65 R15 tyres

*2: Models with 185/55 R16 tyres

*3: Except South African models

*4: South African models

*5: Except Indonesian RS models and South African models with keyless access system

*6: Indonesian RS models

*7: South African models with keyless access system

■ Max. Towing Weight^{*1}

Trailer with brakes	1,000 kg ^{*2}
	800 kg ^{*3}
Trailer without brakes	450 kg
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	95 kg ^{*2}
	80 kg ^{*3}

*1: South African models without keyless access system

*2: Manual transmission models

*3: Continuously variable transmission models

1.2 L petrol engine models

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	Jazz	
Curb Weight ^{*1}		1,042 – 1,044 kg ^{*3}
		1,075 – 1,078 kg ^{*4}
Curb Weight ^{*2}		1,065 – 1,066 kg ^{*3}
		1,096 kg ^{*4}
Maximum permissible weight ^{*3}		1,490 kg
Maximum permissible weight ^{*4}	See the certification plate on the passenger's doorjamb.	
Maximum permissible axle weight ^{*3}	Front	810 kg
	Rear	690 kg
Maximum permissible axle weight ^{*4}	See the certification plate on the passenger's doorjamb.	

*1: Manual transmission models

*2: Continuously variable transmission models

*3: Except South African models

*4: South African models

■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder SOHC	
Bore x Stroke	73 x 71.6 mm	
Displacement	1,199 cm ³	
Compression ratio	10.1 : 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	BKR6E-11

■ Fuel

Fuel:	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number of 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

■ Battery

Capacity/Type	27AH(5)/30AH(20) ^{*1}
	28AH(5)/35AH(20) ^{*2}

*1: Bhutan, Indian and Nepal models

*2: Except Bhutan, Indian and Nepal models

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.0 L
---------------	-------

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (High/Low Beam)	60/55W (H4*, H4 LL*, H4LL/ HB2LL*)
Fog Lights*	35W (H8)
Position Lights	5W
Front Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Front Fenders)*	5W (Amber) ^{*1} 5W ^{*2}
Brake/Taillights	LED
Tailgate Guide Light*	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Licence Plate Lights	5W
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map lights	8W
Ceiling Light	8W
Luggage Area Light	5W

*1: Indian models

*2: South African models

■ Brake/Clutch Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

* Not available on all models

Continued

535

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid *

Specified	Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid	
Capacity	Change	3.4 L

■ Manual Transmission Fluid *

Specified	Honda MTF	
Capacity	Change	1.5 L

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Genuine Honda Motor Oil API service SM or higher grade ACEA A5/B5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30	
	Change	3.0 L
Capacity	Change including filter	3.2 L

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2	
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water	
Capacity* ¹ ³	4.54 L ⁵	
	3.52 L ⁶ (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank)	
Capacity* ² ³	4.42 L ⁵	
	3.60 L ⁶ (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank)	
Capacity* ¹ ⁴	4.57 L ⁵	
	3.55 L ⁶ (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank)	
Capacity* ² ⁴	4.45 L ⁵	
	3.63 L ⁶ (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank)	

*1: Continuously variable transmission models

*2: Manual transmission models

*3: Bhutan, Indian and Nepal models

*4: Except Bhutan, Indian and Nepal models

*5: When extracting from engine

*6: When extracting from radiator

■ Tyre

Regular	Size* ¹	175/65 R15 84T
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Temporary Spare *	Size* ¹	175/70 R14 84T
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Spare * (Full-size tyre)	Size* ¹	175/65 R15 84T
	Pressure	Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Wheel Size	Regular	15 x 5 1/2J
	Temporary Spare *	14 x 5 1/2J
	Spare * (Full-size tyre)	15 x 5 1/2J

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

Indian model only

The tyres fitted in the vehicles meet the requirement of the BIS and they comply with the requirements under the central motor vehicles rules (CMVR), 1989.

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Disc* ¹
	Ventilated disc* ²
Rear	Drum
Parking	Hand brake

*1: Except South African models

*2: South African models

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	405 - 455 g

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	3,955 mm	
Width	1,694 mm	
Height	1,524 mm* ¹	
	1,544 mm* ²	
Wheelbase	2,530 mm	
Track	Front	1,493 mm* ¹
		1,492 mm* ²
	Rear	1,481 mm

*1: South African models

*2: Except South African models

■ Max. Towing Weight*¹

Trailer with brakes	1,000 kg* ²
	800 kg* ³
Trailer without brakes	450 kg
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	95 kg* ²
	80 kg* ³

*1: South African models

*2: Manual transmission models

*3: Continuously variable transmission models

Diesel models

Vehicle Specifications

Model	Jazz	
Curb Weight	1,145 - 1,155 kg	
Maximum Permissible Weight	1,550 kg ^{*1}	
	1,560 kg ^{*2}	
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	Front	845 kg ^{*1}
	Rear	850 kg ^{*2}
Axle Weight	Front	710 kg
	Rear	710 kg

*1: Models without climate control system

*2: Models with climate control system

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC
Bore x Stroke	76.0 x 82.5 mm
Displacement	1,498 cm ³
Compression ratio	16.0 : 1

Fuel

Fuel:	Automotive Diesel Fuel
Type	
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

Battery

Capacity/Type	36AH(5)/47AH(20)
	38AH(5)/47AH(20)

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.0 L
---------------	-------

Light Bulbs

Headlights	60/55 W (H4*, H4 LL*)
Fog Lights*	35 W (H8)
Front Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)
Position Lights	5 W
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Front Fender)*	5 W (Amber)
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)*	LED
Brake/Taillights	LED
Tailgate Guide Light*	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16 W
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Lights	5 W
Interior Lights	
Map Lights*	8 W
Ceiling Light	8 W
Luggage Area Light	5 W

Brake/Clutch Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda MTF
Capacity	Change 1.9 L

Engine Oil

Recommended	Honda Diesel Oil #2.0	
	ACEA C2 or C3 0W-30, 5W-30	
Capacity	Change	3.7 L
	Change including filter	4.2 L

Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2	
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water	
Capacity	4.24 L (change including the remaining 0.45 L in the reserve tank)	

■ Tyre

Regular	Size*1	175/65 R15 84T
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Temporary Spare	Size*1	175/70 R14 84T
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Wheel Size	Regular	15 x 5 1/2J
	Temporary Spare	14 x 5 1/2J

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

The tyres fitted in the vehicles meet the requirement of the BIS and they comply with the requirements under the central motor vehicles rules (CMVR), 1989.

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Disc
Rear	Drum
Parking	Hand Brake

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	405 - 455 g

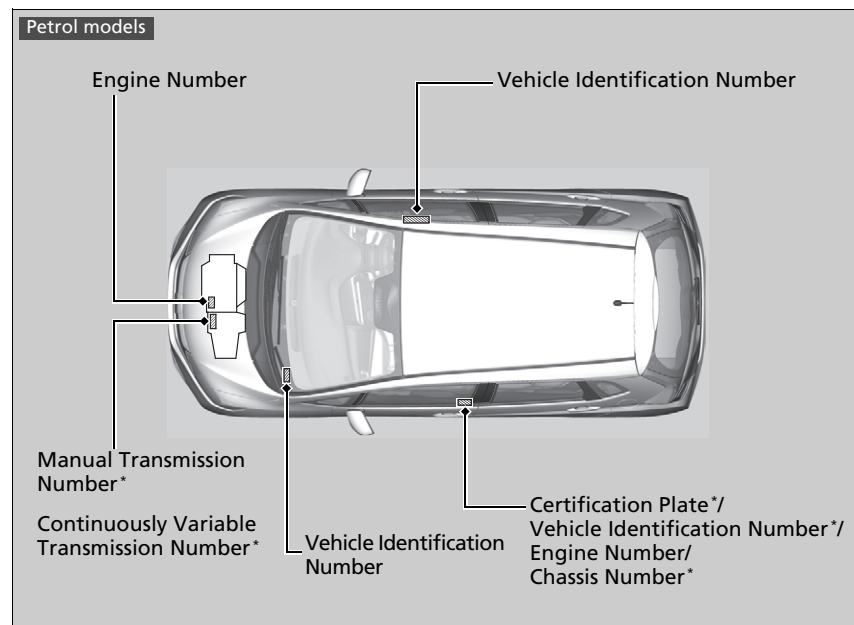
■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	3,955 mm
Width	1,694 mm
Height	1,544 mm
Wheelbase	2,530 mm
Track	Front 1,492 mm
	Rear 1,481 mm

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

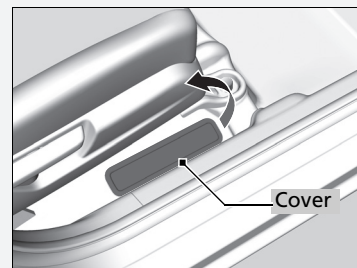
Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.

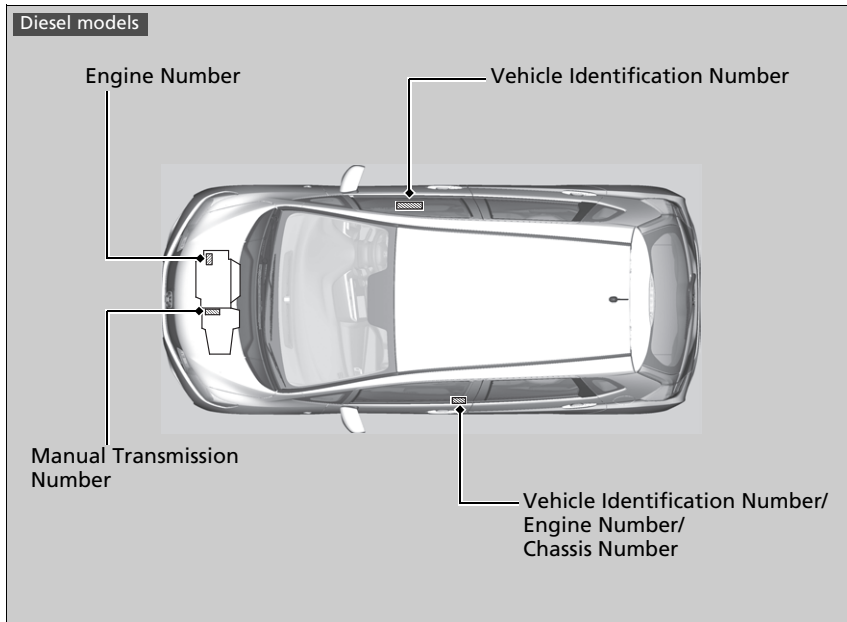
The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.



Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number









The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.





Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

	Remote Transmitter*	Immobilizer System*	Keyless Access System*	Hands-Free Telephone System*
South African models				
				
				

Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 391

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 405

Accessories and Modifications 483

Accessory Power Socket(s) 189

Adding

Coolant 440, 442

Engine Oil 439

Washer 446

Additives, Engine Oil 434, 435

Adjusting

Clock 122

Front Seats 169

Head Restraint Positions 178

Headlight Distribution 402

Headlights 161

Mirrors 168

Rear Seats 173

Steering Wheel 167

Temperature 108, 112

Adjusting Headlight Distribution 402

Air Conditioning System

(Climate Control System) 195

Changing the Mode 195, 196

Defrosting the Windscreen and

Windows 196

Dust and Pollen Filter 476

Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 195, 196

Sensors 199

Using Automatic Climate Control 195

Air Conditioning System

(Heating and Cooling System) 192

Cooling 194

Defrosting the Windscreen and

Windows 194

Heating 193

Air Pressure 466, 533, 536, 539

Airbags 49

After a Collision 58

Airbag Care 58

Event Data Recorder 1

Front Airbags (SRS) 51

Indicator 57, 88

Sensors 49

Side Airbags 54

Side Curtain Airbags 56

AM/FM Radio 211, 233, 254

Ambient Meter 105

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 405

Indicator 89

Armrest 182

Audio Antenna 206

Audio Remote Controls 207

Audio System 202

Adjusting the Sound 210, 231, 252

Auxiliary Input Jack 205

Error Messages 274

General Information 276

iPod 218, 238, 260

MP3/WMA/AAC 221, 241, 257, 263

Recommended CDs 276

Recommended Devices 278

Remote Controls 207

USB Flash Drives 279

USB Port 203

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 140

Auxiliary Input Jack 205

Average Fuel Economy 107, 111

Average Speed 112

B

Battery 471

Charging System Indicator 86, 504

Jump Starting 498

Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 471

Maintenance (Replacing) 473

Belts (Seat) 36

Beverage Holders 187

Bluetooth® Audio 225, 244, 266

Booster Seats (For Children) 79

Brake System 403

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 405

Brake Assist System 406

Fluid 445

Foot Brake 404

Indicator 84, 505

Parking Brake 403

Brake System Indicator (Amber) 84

Brake System Indicator (Red) 84

Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)	164
Bulb Replacement	447
Back-Up Light	455
Brake/Taillights	456
Fog Lights	449
Front Turn Signal Lights	452
Headlights	447
High-Mount Brake Light	456
Interior Lights	458
Luggage Area Light	459
Position Light	454
Rear Licence Plate Light	457
Rear Turn Signal Light	455
Side Turn Signal Lights	453
Bulb Specifications	532, 535, 538

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas	81
Carrying Luggage	371, 373
CD Player	214, 235, 257
Certification Label	540
Changing Bulbs	447
Charging System Indicator	86, 504
Child Restraint System	59
Booster Seats	79
Child Restraint System for Infants	63
Child Restraint System for Small Children	65
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt	72

Larger Children	78
Rear-facing Child Restraint System	63
Selecting a Child Restraint System	66
Using a Tether	77
Child Safety	59
Childproof Door Locks	139
Childproof Door Locks	139
Cleaning the Exterior	480
Cleaning the Interior	478
Climate Control System	195
Changing the Mode	195
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	196
Dust and Pollen Filter	476
Recirculation and Fresh Air Mode	196
Sensors	199
Using Automatic Climate Control	195
Clock	122
Coat Hook	190
Compact Spare Tyre	487, 533
Console Compartment	186
Continuously Variable Transmission	386
Creeping	386
Fluid	444
Kickdown	386
Operating the Shift Lever	388, 390
Shift Lever Does Not Move	501
Shifting	387, 389
Controls	121
Coolant (Engine)	440, 442
Adding to the Radiator	441, 443

Adding to the Reserve Tank	440, 442
Overheating	502

Creeping (Continuously Variable

Transmission)	386
Cruise Control	397
Indicator	97
Cup Holders	187
Customized Features	113, 280
Customizing the Auto Door Locking/ Unlocking Setting	141

D

Daytime Running Lights	160
Dead Battery	498
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	194, 196
Devices that Emit Radio Waves	542
Dimming	
Headlights	158
Dipstick (Engine Oil)	436
Directional Signals (Turn Signals)	157
Display Button	248
Door and Tailgate Open Indicator	89
Door Mirrors	168
Doors	126
Auto Door Locking	140
Auto Door Unlocking	140
Door and Tailgate Open Indicator	35, 89
Keys	126

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	137
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	130
Lockout Prevention System	136
Driving	369
Braking	403
Continuously Variable Transmission	386
Cruise Control	397
Shifting Gear	387, 389, 393, 394
Starting the Engine	379, 382
Dust and Pollen Filter	476

E

Eco Assist System	9
ECON Button	396
Elapsed Time	111
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	
Indicator	92, 506
Emergency Stop Signal	407
Emergency Towing	525
Engine	
Coolant	440, 442
Jump Starting	498
Oil	434, 435
Starting	379, 382
Switch Buzzer	152
Engine Coolant	440, 442
Adding to the Radiator	441, 443
Adding to the Reserve Tank	440, 442

Overheating	502
Engine Oil	434, 435
Adding	439
Checking	436
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	85, 504
Recommended Engine Oil	434, 435
Engine Start/Stop Button	153
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System	92, 506
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)	81
Exterior Care (Cleaning)	480
Exterior Mirrors	168

F

Features	201
Filter	
Dust and Pollen	476
Flat Tyre	487
Floor Mats	479
Fluids	
Brake	445
Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)	444
Engine Coolant	440, 442
Manual Transmission	444
Windscreen Washer	446
Fog Light Indicator	95
Folding Down the Rear Seats	174
Foot Brake	404

Front Airbags (SRS)	51
Front Seats	169
Adjusting	169
Fuel	415
Economy	418
Gauge	108, 112
Information	415, 416
Instant Fuel Economy	107, 112
Low Fuel Indicator	88
Range	107, 111
Recommendation	415, 416
Refueling	415, 416
Fuel Economy	418
Fuel Fill Cap	417
Fuel Fill Door	417
Fuse Box	
Engine Compartment	507
Interior	514, 519
Fuses	507
Inspecting and Changing	524
Locations	507

G

Gasoline (Fuel)	415, 416
Instant Fuel Economy	107, 112
Low Fuel Indicator	88
Gauges	105
Gear Shift Lever Positions	
Continuously Variable Transmission	387, 389

Manual Transmission	393, 394
Glass (care)	478
Glove Box	186
Glow Plugs Indicator	93

H

Halogen Bulbs	447
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT)	
System	300, 327, 350
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History	361
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History	342
Call History	318
Caller's ID Information	315, 340
Cellular Phonebook	317
HFT Buttons	300, 327, 350
HFT Menus	303, 330, 353
HFT Status Display	302, 329, 351
Limitations for Manual Operation	352
Making a Call	321, 345, 364
Options During a Call	326, 349, 367
Phone Setup	307, 334, 356
Receiving a Call	325, 348, 367
Ring Tone	340, 360
Speed Dial	319, 343, 362
To Clear the System	316, 341
Hazard Warning Button	4
HDMI™ Port	204
Head Restraint Positions	178

Headlights	158
Adjuster	161
Aiming	447
Dimming	158
Operating	158
Heating and Cooling System	192
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) ...	300, 327, 350
High Temperature Indicator (Red)	91
High-Beam Indicator	95

I

Identification Numbers	540
Engine and Transmission	540
Vehicle Identification	540
Ignition Switch	152
Illumination Control	164
Knob	164
Immobilizer System	148
Indicator	96
Indicators	84
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	89
Brake System (Amber)	84
Brake System (Red)	84
Charging System	86
CRUISE CONTROL	97, 398
CRUISE MAIN	97, 397, 398
Door and Tailgate Open	35, 89
ECON Mode	96, 396
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	92
Fog Light	95
Glow Plugs	93
Hazard Warning	95
High Temperature (Red)	91
High-Beam	95
Immobilizer System	96
Keyless Access System	97
Light Control	95
Lights On	95
Low Fuel	88
Low Oil Pressure	85
Low Temperature (Blue)	91
M (7-speed manual shift mode)/Shift	87
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	85
Parking Brake and Brake System	84
PGM-FI	93
Rotate Wheel	98
Seat Belt Reminder	86
Security System Alarm	97
Shift Lever Position	87
Shift to Park	98
Starter System	98
Supplemental Restraint System	88
System Message	92
Transmission	87
Turn Signal	95
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System	90
VSA OFF	90
Water in Fuel	94
Instant Fuel Economy	107, 112
Instrument Panel	83
Brightness Control	164

Interior Lights.....	183
Interior Rearview Mirror	168

J

Jump Starting.....	498
--------------------	-----

K

Key Number Tag	128
Keyless Access System	130
Indicator	97
Keyless Lockout Prevention.....	136
Keys.....	126
Keys.....	126
Lockout Prevention	136
Number Tag.....	128
Rear Door Won't Open	139
Remote Transmitter	133
Types and Functions.....	126
Won't Turn	28
Kickdown (Continuously Variable Transmission).....	386

L

Language (HFL/HFT).....	285
Light Switches	158
Lights	158, 447
Bulb Replacement	447
Fog Lights	160
High-Beam Indicator	95

Interior	183
Light Control Indicator.....	95
Lights On Indicator	95
Turn Signals.....	157
Load Limit	373
Locking/Unlocking.....	126
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking	140
Childproof Door Locks	139
From Inside.....	137
From Outside.....	130
Keys	126
Using a Key	135
Lockout Prevention System.....	136
Low Battery Charge.....	504
Low Fuel Indicator	88
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength	129
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	85, 504
Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)	91
Lower Anchorages.....	69
Lubricant Specifications	
Chart.....	533, 536, 538
Luggage (Load Limit)	373

M

M (7-Speed manual shift mode)	
Indicator	87
Maintenance.....	419
Battery	471
Brake Fluid	445
Cleaning.....	478

Climate Control.....	476
Coolant.....	440, 442
Oil.....	436
Precautions	420
Radiator	441, 443
Remote Transmitter.....	473
Replacing Light Bulbs	447
Safety.....	421
Transmission Fluid	444
Tyres	466
Under the Bonnet.....	430
Malfunction Indicator Lamp.....	85, 505
Manual Transmission	393, 394
Map Lights.....	184
Maximum Permissible	
Weight	373, 532, 535
Meters, Gauges.....	105
Mirrors	168
Adjusting	168
Door	168
Exterior	168
Interior Rearview	168
Modifications (and Accessories)	483
MP3.....	214, 221, 235, 241, 257, 263
Multi-Information Display	109
Multi-View Rear Camera.....	413

N

Numbers (Identification).....	540
-------------------------------	-----

O

Odometer.....	107, 111
Oil (Engine).....	434, 435
Adding.....	439
Checking.....	436
Low Oil Pressure Indicator.....	85, 504
Recommended Engine Oil.....	434, 435
Viscosity.....	434, 435
Opening/Closing.....	
Bonnet.....	433
Power Windows.....	150
Tailgate.....	144
Outside Temperature.....	
Adjusting.....	108
Outside Temperature Display.....	112
Overheating.....	502

P

Parking Brake.....	403
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator.....	84, 505
Parking Sensor System.....	409
Petrol.....	415
Economy.....	418
Gauge.....	108, 112
Information.....	415, 416
Refueling.....	415
PGM-FI Indicator.....	93, 506
Power Windows.....	150
Precautions While Driving.....	385

Rain.....	385
Pregnant Women.....	46
Preset List.....	213
Preset Memory.....	212, 233, 255
Puncture (Tyre).....	487

R

Radiator.....	441, 443
Radio (AM/FM).....	211, 233, 254
Range.....	107, 111
Rear Demister Button.....	166
Rear Seats (Folding Down).....	174
Rearview Mirror.....	168
Refueling.....	415
Diesel.....	416
Fuel Gauge.....	108, 112
Low Fuel Indicator.....	88
Petrol.....	415, 532, 535
Regulations.....	542
Remote Transmitter.....	133
Replacement.....	
Battery.....	473
Bulbs.....	447
Fuses.....	507, 514, 519
Tyres.....	468
Wiper Blade Rubber.....	460, 464
Resetting a Trip Meter.....	107, 111
Rotate Wheel Indicator.....	98

S

Safe Driving.....	31
Safety Check.....	35
Safety Labels.....	82
Safety Message.....	0
Seat Belt Reminder Indicator.....	86
Seat Belts.....	36
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor.....	45
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners.....	40
Checking.....	47
Fastening.....	41
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt.....	72
Pregnant Women.....	46
Reminder.....	39
Warning Indicator.....	39, 86
Seats.....	169
Adjusting.....	169
Front Seats.....	169
Rear Seats.....	173
Security System.....	148
Immobilizer System Indicator.....	96
Security System Alarm Indicator.....	97
SEL/RESET Button.....	110
Select Lever.....	24, 387, 389, 393, 394
Select/Reset Knob.....	106
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	66
Selector Knob (Audio).....	209, 227
Setting the Clock.....	122
Shift Indicator.....	87
Shift Lever.....	24, 387, 389, 393, 394

Operation	24, 388, 390, 393, 394
Releasing	501
Won't Move	501
Shift Lever Position	
Indicator	87, 388, 390
Shift to Park Indicator	98
Shifting (Continuously Variable Transmission)	387, 389
Shifting (Manual Transmission)	393, 394
Shoulder Anchor	45
Side Airbags	54
Side Curtain Airbags	56
Spare Tyre	487, 533, 536, 539
Spark Plugs	532, 535
Specifications	532
Specified Fuel	415, 416, 532, 535, 538
Speedometer	105
SRS Airbags (Airbags)	51
Start/Stop Button	153
Starter System Indicator	98
Starting the Engine	379, 382
Does Not Start	494
Engine Switch Buzzer	152
Jump Starting	498
Station List	234, 256
Steering Wheel	167
Adjusting	167
Stopping	408
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	51
Indicator	88

Switches	
(Around the Steering Wheel)	4, 5, 152
System Message Indicator	92

T

Tachometer	105
Tailgate	144
Door and Tailgate Open Indicator	89
Temperature	
Outside Temperature	108
Outside Temperature Display	112
Temperature Sensor	112, 199
Tie-down Anchors	190
Time (Setting)	122
Tools	486
Towing a Trailer	374
Equipment and Accessories	376
Load Limits	374
Towing Your Vehicle	
Emergency	525
Transmission	387, 389, 393, 394
Continuously Variable	387, 389
Fluid	444
Manual	393, 394
Number	540
Shift Lever Position Indicator	87, 388, 390
Transmission Indicator	87
Trip Meter	107, 111
Troubleshooting	485
Blown Fuse	507, 514

Brake Pedal Vibrates	28
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door	29
Emergency Towing	525
Engine Won't Start	494
Noise When Braking	30
Overheating	502
Puncture/Flat Tyre	487
Rear Door Won't Open	29
Shift Lever Won't Move	501
Warning Indicators	84
Turn Signals	157
Indicators (Instrument Panel)	95
Tyres	466
Air Pressure	466, 533, 536, 539
Checking and Maintaining	466
Inspection	466
Puncture (Flat Tyre)	487
Rotation	469
Spare Tyre	487, 533, 536, 539
Tyre Chains	470
Wear Indicators	467
Winter	470

U

Unlocking the Doors	130
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside	16, 137
USB Flash Drives	279
USB Port(s)	203
Using the Keyless Access System	130

V

Vanity Mirrors	7
Vehicle Identification Numbers	540
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	400
Off Button	401
Off Indicator	90
System Indicator	90
Ventilation	192, 196
Viscosity (Oil).....	434, 435, 533, 536, 538
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)	400

W

Warning and Information	
Messages	99, 100
Warning Indicator On/Blinking.....	504
Warning Labels	82
Water in Fuel Indicator	94
Watts	532, 535, 538
Wear Indicators (Tyre)	467
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle).....	491
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate.....	528
Window Washers.....	162
Adding/Refilling Fluid.....	446
Switch	162
Windows (Opening and Closing).....	150
Windscreen	162
Cleaning.....	478
Defrosting/Defogging	194, 196
Washer Fluid.....	446
Wiper Blades	460

Wipers and Washers.....	162
Winter Tyres	470
Tyre Chains	470
Wipers and Washers.....	162
Checking and Replacing	
Wiper Blades	460, 464
WMA	214, 221, 235, 241, 257, 263
Worn Tyres.....	466

